

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS
CHINESE-ENGLISH

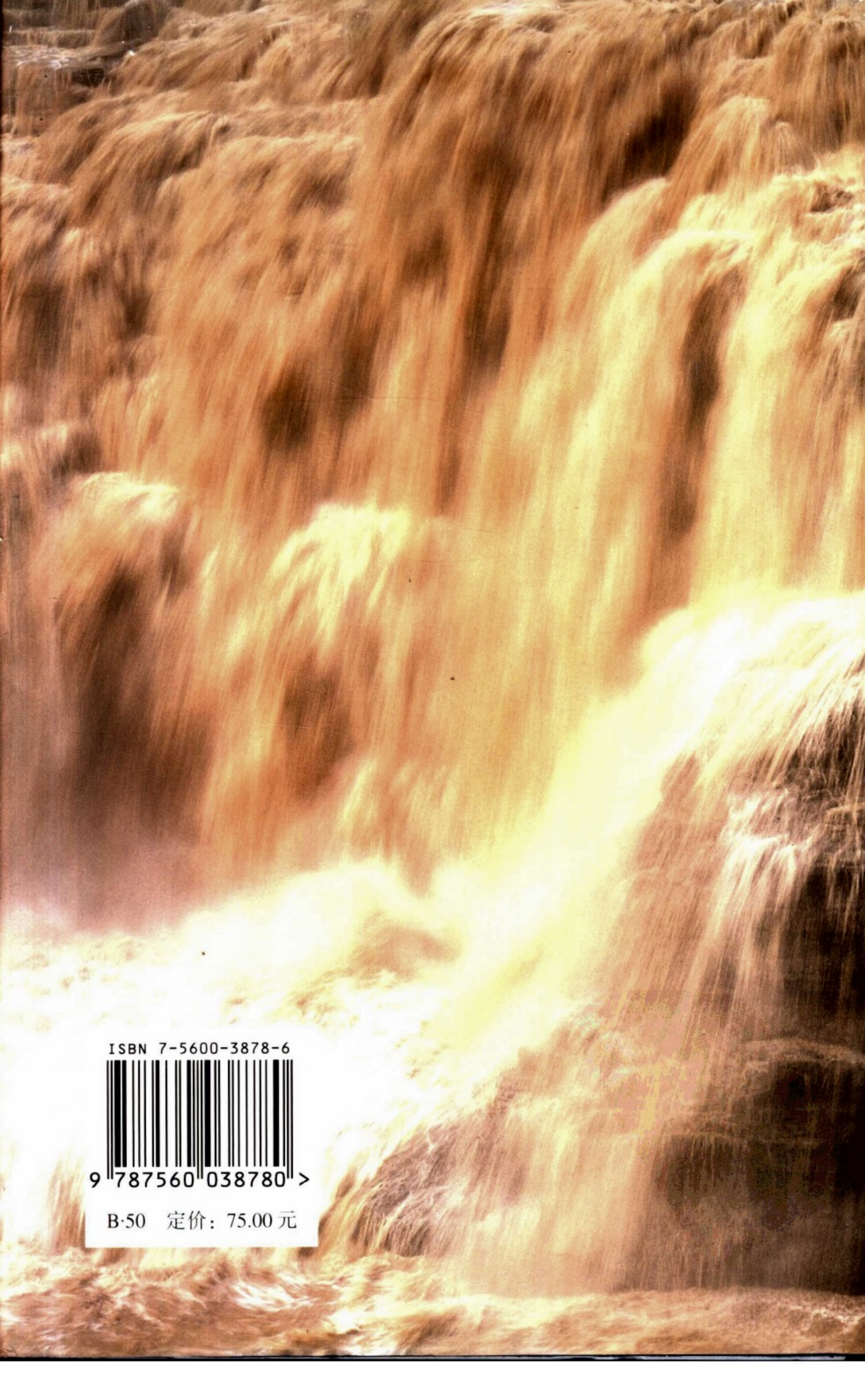
大中华文库

汉英对照

邯郸记

THE HANDAN DREAM

大中华文库
汉英对照
PDF



ISBN 7-5600-3878-6



9 787560 038780 >

B·50 定价：75.00 元

华北水利水电学院图书馆



207448341

汉英对照

H319.4

T210

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

Chinese-English

邯郸记

The Handan Dream



(明) 汤显祖 著

汪榕培 英译

徐朔方 笺校

Written by Tang Xianzu

Translated by Wang Rongpei

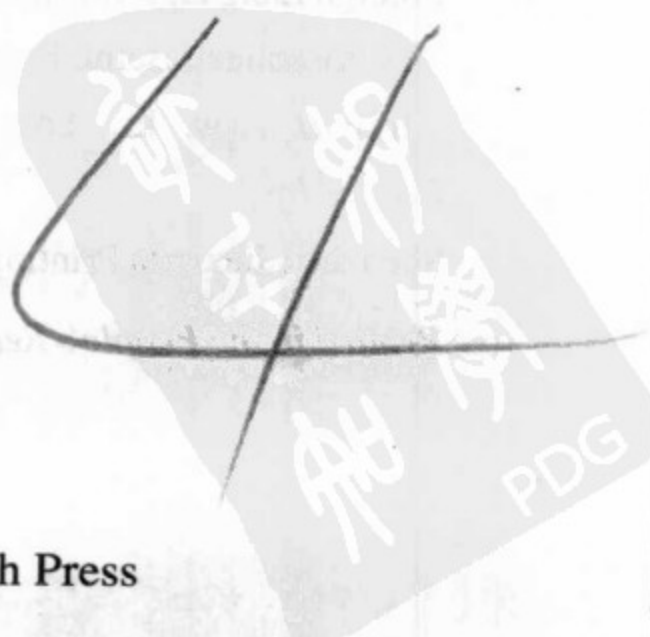
Annotated by Xu Shuofang

2AP67/01

外语教学与研究出版社

Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press

· 744834



(京)新登字 155 号

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

邯郸记/(明)汤显祖著;汪榕培英译;徐朔方笺校. —北京:外语教学与研究出版社,2003

(大中华文库)

ISBN 7-5600-3878-6

I. 邯… II. ①汤… ②汪… ③徐… III. 英语—对照读物, 戏剧—汉、英 IV. H319.4:I

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字(2003)第 118224 号

邯郸记

(明) 汤显祖 著

汪榕培 英译

徐朔方 笺校

* * *

责任编辑: 章思英

出版发行: 外语教学与研究出版社

社 址: 北京市西三环北路 19 号 (100089)

网 址: <http://www.fltrp.com>

印 刷: 深圳佳信达印务有限公司

开 本: 640×960 1/16

印 张: 38.75

版 次: 2003 年 12 月第 1 版 2003 年 12 月第 1 次印刷

书 号: ISBN 7-5600-3878-6/H·1931

印 数: 1—2000 册

定 价: 75.00 元

* * *

如有印刷、装订质量问题出版社负责调换

制售盗版必究 举报查实奖励 (010)68917826

版权保护办公室举报电话: (010)68917519





总 序

杨牧之

《大中华文库》终于出版了。我们为之高兴，为之鼓舞，但也倍感压力。

当此之际，我们愿将郁积在我们心底的话，向读者倾诉。

一

中华民族有着悠久的历史 and 灿烂的文化，系统、准确地将中华民族的文化经典翻译成外文，编辑出版，介绍给全世界，是几代中国人的愿望。早在几十年前，西方一位学者翻译《红楼梦》，书名译成《一个红楼上的梦》，将林黛玉译为“黑色的玉”。我们一方面对国外学者将中国的名著介绍到世界上去表示由衷的感谢，一方面为祖国的名著还不被完全认识，甚而受到曲解，而感到深深的遗憾。还有西方学者翻译《金瓶梅》，专门摘选其中自然主义描述最为突出的篇章加以译介。一时间，西方学者好像发现了奇迹，掀起了《金瓶梅》热，说中国是“性开放的源头”，公开地在报刊上鼓吹中国要“发扬开放之传统”。还有许多资深、友善的汉学家译介中国古代的哲学著作，在把中华民族文化介绍给全世界的工作方面作出了重大贡献，但或囿于理解有误，或缘于对中国文字认识的局限，质量上乘的并不多，常常是隔靴搔痒，说不到点子上。大哲学家黑格尔曾经说过：中国有最完



备的国史。但他认为中国古代没有真正意义上的哲学，还处在哲学史前状态。这么了不起的哲学家竟然作出这样大失水准的评论，何其不幸。正如任何哲学家都要受时间、地点、条件的制约一样，黑格尔也离不开这一规律。当时他也只能从上述水平的汉学家译过去的文字去分析、理解，所以，黑格尔先生对中国古代社会的认识水平是什么状态，也就不难想象了。

中国离不开世界，世界也缺少不了中国。中国文化摄取外域的新成分，丰富了自己，又以自己的新成就输送给别人，贡献于世界。从公元5世纪开始到公元15世纪，大约有一千年，中国走在世界的前列。在这一千多年的时间里，她的光辉照耀全世界。人类要前进，怎么能不全面认识中国，怎么能不认真研究中国的历史呢？

二

中华民族是伟大的，曾经辉煌过，蓝天、白云、阳光灿烂，和平而兴旺；也有过黑暗的、想起来就让人战栗的日子，但中华民族从来是充满理想，不断追求，不断学习，渴望和平与友谊的。

中国古代伟大的思想家孔子曾经说过：“三人行，必有我师焉。择其善者而从之，其不善者而改之。”孔子的话就是要人们向别人学习。这段话正是概括了整个中华民族与人交往的原则。人与人之间交往如此，在与周边的国家交往中也是如此。

秦始皇第一个统一了中国，可惜在位只有十几年，来不及作更多的事情。汉朝继秦而继续强大，便开始走出去，了



解自己周边的世界。公元前 138 年，汉武帝派张骞出使西域。他带着一万头牛羊，总值一万万钱的金帛货物，作为礼物，开始西行，最远到过“安息”（即波斯）。公元前 36 年，班超又率 36 人出使西域。36 个人按今天的话说，也只有一个排，显然是为了拜访未曾见过面的邻居，是去交朋友。到了西域，班超派遣甘英作为使者继续西行，往更远处的大秦国（即罗马）去访问，“乃抵条支而历安息，临西海以望大秦”（《后汉书·西域传》）。“条支”在“安息”以西，即今天的伊拉克、叙利亚一带，“西海”应是今天的地中海。也就是说甘英已经到达地中海边上，与罗马帝国隔海相望，“临大海欲渡”，却被人劝阻而未成行，这在历史上留下了遗憾。可以想见班超、甘英沟通友谊的无比勇气和强烈愿望。接下来是唐代的玄奘，历经千难万险，到“西天”印度取经，带回了南亚国家的古老文化。归国后，他把带回的佛教经典组织人翻译，到后来很多经典印度失传了，但中国却保存完好，以至于今天，没有玄奘的《大唐西域记》，印度人很难编写印度古代史。明代郑和“七下西洋”，把中华文化传到东南亚一带。鸦片战争以后，一代又一代先进的中国人，为了振兴中华，又前赴后继，向西方国家学习先进的科学思想和文明成果。这中间有我们的领导人朱德、周恩来、邓小平；有许许多多大科学家、文学家、艺术家，如郭沫若、李四光、钱学森、冼星海、徐悲鸿等。他们的追求、奋斗，他们的博大胸怀，兼收并蓄的精神，为人类社会增添了光彩。

中国文化的形成和发展过程，就是一个以众为师，以各国人民为师，不断学习和创造的过程。中华民族曾经向周边国家和民族学习过许多东西，假如没有这些学习，中华民族决不可能创造出昔日的辉煌。回顾历史，我们怎么能够不对



伟大的古埃及文明、古希腊文明、古印度文明满怀深深的感激?怎么能够不对伟大的欧洲文明、非洲文明、美洲文明、澳洲文明,以及中国周围的亚洲文明充满温情与敬意?

中华民族为人类社会曾作出过独特的贡献。在15世纪以前,中国的科学技术一直处于世界遥遥领先的地位。英国科学家李约瑟说:“中国在公元3世纪到13世纪之间,保持着一个西方所望尘莫及的科学知识水平。”美国耶鲁大学教授、《大国的兴衰》的作者保罗·肯尼迪坦言:“在近代以前时期的所有文明中,没有一个国家的文明比中国更发达,更先进。”

世界各国的有识之士千里迢迢来中国观光、学习。在这个过程中,中国唐朝的长安城渐渐发展成为国际大都市。西方的波斯、东罗马,东亚的高丽、新罗、百济、南天竺、北天竺,频繁前来。外国的王侯、留学生,在长安供职的外国官员,商贾、乐工和舞士,总有几十个国家,几万人之多。日本派出“遣唐使”更是一批接一批。传为美谈的日本人阿部仲麻吕(晁衡)在长安留学的故事,很能说明外国人与中国的交往。晁衡学成仕于唐朝,前后历时五十余年。晁衡与中国的知识分子结下了深厚的友情。他归国时,传说在海中遇难身亡。大诗人李白作诗哭悼:“日本晁卿辞帝都,征帆一片远蓬壶。明月不归沉碧海,白云愁色满苍梧。”晁衡遇险是误传,但由此可见中外学者之间在中国长安交往的情谊。

后来,不断有外国人到中国来探寻秘密,所见所闻,常常让他们目瞪口呆。《希腊纪事》(希腊人波桑尼阿著)记载公元2世纪时,希腊人在中国的见闻。书中写道:“赛里斯人用小米和青芦喂一种类似蜘蛛的昆虫,喂到第五年,虫肚子胀裂开,便从里面取出丝来。”从这段对中国古代养蚕技术的



描述，可见当时欧洲人与中国人的差距。公元9世纪中叶，阿拉伯人来到中国。一位阿拉伯作家在他所著的《中国印度闻见录》中记载了曾旅居中国的阿拉伯商人的见闻：

——一天，一个外商去拜见驻守广州的中国官吏。会见时，外商总盯着官吏的胸部，官吏很奇怪，便问：“你好像总盯着我的胸，这是怎么回事？”那位外商回答说：“透过你穿的丝绸衣服，我隐约看到你胸口上长着一个黑痣，这是什么丝绸，我感到十分惊奇。”官吏听后，失声大笑，伸出胳膊，说：“请你数数吧，看我穿了几件衣服？”那商人数过，竟然穿了五件之多，黑痣正是透过这五层丝绸衣服显现出来的。外商惊得目瞪口呆，官吏说：“我穿的丝绸还不算是最好的，总督穿的要更精美。”

——书中关于茶(他们叫干草叶子)的记载，可见阿拉伯国家当时还没有喝茶的习惯。书中记述：“中国国王本人的收入主要靠盐税和泡开水喝的一种干草税。在各个城市里，这种干草叶售价都很高，中国人称这种草叶叫‘茶’，这种干草叶比苜蓿的叶子还多，也略比它香，稍有苦味，用开水冲喝，治百病。”

——他们对中国的医疗条件十分羡慕，书中记载道：“中国人医疗条件很好，穷人可以从国库中得到药费。”还说：“城市里，很多地方立一石碑，高10肘，上面刻有各种疾病和药物，写明某种病用某种药医治。”

——关于当时中国的京城，书中作了生动的描述：中国的京城很大，人口众多，一条宽阔的长街把全城分为两半，大街右边的东区，住着皇帝、宰相、禁军及皇家的总管、奴婢。在这个区域，沿街开凿了小河，流水潺潺；路旁，葱茏的树木整然有序，一幢幢宅邸鳞次栉比。大街左边的西区，



住着庶民和商人。这里有货栈和商店，每当清晨，人们可以看到，皇室的总管、宫廷的仆役，或骑马或步行，到这里来采购。

此后的史籍对西人来华的记载，渐渐多了起来。13世纪意大利旅行家马可·波罗，尽管有人对他是否真的到过中国持怀疑态度，但他留下一部记述元代事件的《马可·波罗游记》却是确凿无疑的。这部游记中的一些关于当时中国的描述使得西方人认为是“天方夜谭”。总之，从中西文化交流史来说，这以前的时期还是一个想象和臆测的时代，相互之间充满了好奇与幻想。

从16世纪末开始，由于航海技术的发展，东西方航路的开通，随着一批批传教士来华，中国与西方开始了直接的交流。沟通中西的使命在意大利传教士利玛窦那里有了充分的体现。利玛窦于1582年来华，1610年病逝于北京，在华20余年。除了传教以外，做了两件具有历史象征意义的事，一是1594年前后在韶州用拉丁文翻译《四书》，并作了注释；二是与明代学者徐光启合作，用中文翻译了《几何原本》。

西方传教士对《四书》等中国经典的粗略翻译，以及杜赫德的《中华帝国志》等书对中国的介绍，在西方读者的眼前展现了一个异域文明，在当时及稍后一段时期引起了一场“中国热”，许多西方大思想家的眼光都曾注目中国文化。有的推崇中华文明，如莱布尼兹、伏尔泰、魁奈等，有的对中华文明持批评态度，如孟德斯鸠、黑格尔等。莱布尼兹认识到中国文化的某些思想与他的观念相近，如周易的卦象与他发明的二进制相契合，对中国文化给予了热情的礼赞；黑格尔则从他整个哲学体系的推演出发，认为中国没有真正意义上的哲学，还处在哲学史前的状态。但是，不论是推崇还



是批评，是吸纳还是排斥，中西文化的交流产生了巨大的影响。随着先进的中国科学技术的西传，特别是中国的造纸、火药、印刷术和指南针四大发明的问世，大大改变了世界的面貌。马克思说：“中国的火药把骑士阶层炸得粉碎，指南针打开了世界市场并建立了殖民地，而印刷术则变成了新教的工具，变成对精神发展创造必要前提的最强大的杠杆。”英国的哲学家培根说：中国的四大发明“改变了全世界的面貌和一切事物的状态”。

三

大千世界，潮起潮落。云散云聚，万象更新。中国古代产生了无数伟大科学家：祖冲之、李时珍、孙思邈、张衡、沈括、毕升……，产生了无数科技成果：《齐民要术》、《九章算术》、《伤寒杂病论》、《本草纲目》……，以及保存至今的世界奇迹：浑天仪、地动仪、都江堰、敦煌石窟、大运河、万里长城……。但从15世纪下半叶起，风水似乎从东方转到了西方，落后的欧洲只经过400年便成为世界瞩目的文明中心。英国的牛顿、波兰的哥白尼、德国的伦琴、法国的居里、德国的爱因斯坦、意大利的伽利略、俄国的门捷列夫、美国的费米和爱迪生……，光芒四射，令人敬仰。

中华民族开始思考了。潮起潮落究竟是什么原因？中国人发明的火药，传到欧洲，转眼之间反成为欧洲列强轰击中国大门的炮弹，又是因为什么？

鸦片战争终于催醒了中国人沉睡的迷梦，最先“睁眼看世界”的一代精英林则徐、魏源迈出了威武雄壮的一步。曾国藩、李鸿章搞起了洋务运动。中国的知识分子喊出“民主



与科学”的口号。中国是落后了，中国的志士仁人在苦苦探索。但落后中饱含着变革的动力，探索中孕育着崛起的希望。“向科学进军”，中华民族终于又迎来了科学的春天。

今天，世界毕竟来到了 21 世纪的门槛。分散隔绝的世界，逐渐变成联系为一体的世界。现在，全球一体化趋势日益明显，人类历史也就在愈来愈大的程度上成为全世界的历史。当今，任何一种文化的发展都离不开对其它优秀文化的汲取，都以其它优秀文化的发展为前提。在近现代，西方文化汲取中国文化，不仅是中国文化的传播，更是西方文化自身的创新和发展；正如中国文化对西方文化的汲取一样，既是西方文化在中国的传播，同时也是中国文化在近代的转型和发展。地球上所有的人类文化，都是我们共同的宝贵遗产。既然我们生活的各个大陆，在地球史上曾经是连成一气的“泛大陆”，或者说是一个完整的“地球村”，那么，我们同样可以在这个以知识和学习为特征的网络时代，走上相互学习、共同发展的大路，建设和开拓我们人类崭新的“地球村”。

西学仍在东渐，中学也将西传。各国人民的优秀文化正日益迅速地为中国文化所汲取，而无论西方和东方，也都需要从中国文化中汲取养分。正是基于这一认识，我们组织出版汉英对照版《大中华文库》，全面系统地翻译介绍中国传统文化典籍。我们试图通过《大中华文库》，向全世界展示，中华民族五千年的追求，五千年的梦想，正在新的历史时期重放光芒。中国人民就像火后的凤凰，万众一心，迎接新世纪文明的太阳。

1999 年 8 月



PREFACE TO THE *LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS*

Yang Muzhi

The publication of the *Library of Chinese Classics* is a matter of great satisfaction to all of us who have been involved in the production of this monumental work. At the same time, we feel a weighty sense of responsibility, and take this opportunity to explain to our readers the motivation for undertaking this cross-century task.

1

The Chinese nation has a long history and a glorious culture, and it has been the aspiration of several generations of Chinese scholars to translate, edit and publish the whole corpus of the Chinese literary classics so that the nation's greatest cultural achievements can be introduced to people all over the world. There have been many translations of the Chinese classics done by foreign scholars. A few dozen years ago, a Western scholar translated the title of *A Dream of Red Mansions* into "A Dream of Red Chambers" and Lin Daiyu, the heroine in the novel, into "Black Jade." But while their endeavours have been laudable, the results of their labours have been less than satisfactory. Lack of knowledge of Chinese culture and an inadequate grasp of the Chinese written language have led the translators into many errors. As a consequence, not only are Chinese classical writings widely misunderstood in the rest of the world, in some cases their content has actually been distorted. At one time, there was a "Jin Ping Mei craze" among Western scholars, who thought that they had uncovered a miraculous phenomenon, and published theories claiming that China was the "fountainhead of eroticism," and that a Chinese "tradition of permissiveness" was about to be laid bare. This distorted view came about due to the translators of the *Jin Ping Mei* (*Plum in the Golden Vase*) putting one-sided stress on the



raw elements in that novel, to the neglect of its overall literary value. Meanwhile, there have been many distinguished and well-intentioned Sinologists who have attempted to make the culture of the Chinese nation more widely known by translating works of ancient Chinese philosophy. However, the quality of such work, in many cases, is unsatisfactory, often missing the point entirely. The great philosopher Hegel considered that ancient China had no philosophy in the real sense of the word, being stuck in philosophical "prehistory." For such an eminent authority to make such a colossal error of judgment is truly regrettable. But, of course, Hegel was just as subject to the constraints of time, space and other objective conditions as anyone else, and since he had to rely for his knowledge of Chinese philosophy on inadequate translations it is not difficult to imagine why he went so far off the mark.

China cannot be separated from the rest of the world; and the rest of the world cannot ignore China. Throughout its history, Chinese civilization has enriched itself by absorbing new elements from the outside world, and in turn has contributed to the progress of world civilization as a whole by transmitting to other peoples its own cultural achievements. From the 5th to the 15th centuries, China marched in the front ranks of world civilization. If mankind wishes to advance, how can it afford to ignore China? How can it afford not to make a thoroughgoing study of its history?

2

Despite the ups and downs in their fortunes, the Chinese people have always been idealistic, and have never ceased to forge ahead and learn from others, eager to strengthen ties of peace and friendship.

The great ancient Chinese philosopher Confucius once said, "Whenever three persons come together, one of them will surely be able to teach me something. I will pick out his good points and emulate them; his bad points I will reform." Confucius meant by this that we should always be ready to learn from others. This maxim encapsulates the principle the Chinese people have always followed in their dealings with other peoples, not only on an individual basis but also at the level of state-to-state relations.

After generations of internecine strife, China was unified by Emperor



Qin Shi Huang (the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty) in 221 B.C. The Han Dynasty, which succeeded that of the short-lived Qin, waxed powerful, and for the first time brought China into contact with the outside world. In 138 B.C., Emperor Wu dispatched Zhang Qian to the western regions, i.e. Central Asia. Zhang, who traveled as far as what is now Iran, took with him as presents for the rulers he visited on the way 10,000 head of sheep and cattle, as well as gold and silks worth a fabulous amount. In 36 B.C., Ban Chao headed a 36-man legation to the western regions. These were missions of friendship to visit neighbours the Chinese people had never met before and to learn from them. Ban Chao sent Gan Ying to explore further toward the west. According to the "Western Regions Section" in the *Book of Later Han*, Gan Ying traveled across the territories of present-day Iraq and Syria, and reached the Mediterranean Sea, an expedition which brought him within the confines of the Roman Empire. Later, during the Tang Dynasty, the monk Xuan Zang made a journey fraught with danger to reach India and seek the knowledge of that land. Upon his return, he organized a team of scholars to translate the Buddhist scriptures, which he had brought back with him. As a result, many of these scriptural classics which were later lost in India have been preserved in China. In fact, it would have been difficult for the people of India to reconstruct their own ancient history if it had not been for Xuan Zang's *A Record of a Journey to the West in the Time of the Great Tang Dynasty*. In the Ming Dynasty, Zheng He transmitted Chinese culture to Southeast Asia during his seven voyages. Following the Opium Wars in the mid-19th century, progressive Chinese, generation after generation, went to study the advanced scientific thought and cultural achievements of the Western countries. Their aim was to revive the fortunes of their own country. Among them were people who were later to become leaders of China, including Zhu De, Zhou Enlai and Deng Xiaoping. In addition, there were people who were to become leading scientists, literary figures and artists, such as Guo Moruo, Li Siguang, Qian Xuesen, Xian Xinghai and Xu Beihong. Their spirit of ambition, their struggles and their breadth of vision were an inspiration not only to the Chinese people but to people all over the world.

Indeed, it is true that if the Chinese people had not learned many



things from the surrounding countries they would never have been able to produce the splendid achievements of former days. When we look back upon history, how can we not feel profoundly grateful for the legacies of the civilizations of ancient Egypt, Greece and India? How can we not feel fondness and respect for the cultures of Europe, Africa, America and Oceania?

The Chinese nation, in turn, has made unique contributions to the community of mankind. Prior to the 15th century, China led the world in science and technology. The British scientist Joseph Needham once said, "From the third century A.D. to the 13th century A.D. China was far ahead of the West in the level of its scientific knowledge." Paul Kennedy, of Yale University in the U.S., author of *The Rise and Fall of the Great Powers*, said, "Of all the civilizations of the pre-modern period, none was as well-developed or as progressive as that of China."

Foreigners who came to China were often astonished at what they saw and heard. The Greek geographer Pausanias in the second century A.D. gave the first account in the West of the technique of silk production in China: "The Chinese feed a spider-like insect with millet and reeds. After five years the insect's stomach splits open, and silk is extracted therefrom." From this extract, we can see that the Europeans at that time did not know the art of silk manufacture. In the middle of the 9th century A.D., an Arabian writer includes the following anecdote in his *Account of China and India*:

"One day, an Arabian merchant called upon the military governor of Guangzhou. Throughout the meeting, the visitor could not keep his eyes off the governor's chest. Noticing this, the latter asked the Arab merchant what he was staring at. The merchant replied, 'Through the silk robe you are wearing, I can faintly see a black mole on your chest. Your robe must be made out of very fine silk indeed!' The governor burst out laughing, and holding out his sleeve invited the merchant to count how many garments he was wearing. The merchant did so, and discovered that the governor was actually wearing five silk robes, one on top of the other, and they were made of such fine material that a tiny mole could be seen through them all! Moreover, the governor explained that the robes he was wearing were not made of the finest silk at all: silk of the highest



grade was reserved for the garments worn by the provincial governor.”

The references to tea in this book (the author calls it “dried grass”) reveal that the custom of drinking tea was unknown in the Arab countries at that time: “The king of China’s revenue comes mainly from taxes on salt and the dry leaves of a kind of grass which is drunk after boiled water is poured on it. This dried grass is sold at a high price in every city in the country. The Chinese call it ‘cha.’ The bush is like alfalfa, except that it bears more leaves, which are also more fragrant than alfalfa. It has a slightly bitter taste, and when it is infused in boiling water it is said to have medicinal properties.”

Foreign visitors showed especial admiration for Chinese medicine. One wrote, “China has very good medical conditions. Poor people are given money to buy medicines by the government.”

In this period, when Chinese culture was in full bloom, scholars flocked from all over the world to China for sightseeing and for study. Chang’an, the capital of the Tang Dynasty was host to visitors from as far away as the Byzantine Empire, not to mention the neighboring countries of Asia. Chang’an, at that time the world’s greatest metropolis, was packed with thousands of foreign dignitaries, students, diplomats, merchants, artisans and entertainers. Japan especially sent contingent after contingent of envoys to the Tang court. Worthy of note are the accounts of life in Chang’an written by Abeno Nakamaro, a Japanese scholar who studied in China and had close friendships with ministers of the Tang court and many Chinese scholars in a period of over 50 years. The description throws light on the exchanges between Chinese and foreigners in this period. When Abeno was supposedly lost at sea on his way back home, the leading poet of the time, Li Bai, wrote a eulogy for him.

The following centuries saw a steady increase in the accounts of China written by Western visitors. The Italian Marco Polo described conditions in China during the Yuan Dynasty in his *Travels*. However, until advances in the science of navigation led to the opening of east-west shipping routes at the beginning of the 16th century Sino-Western cultural exchanges were coloured by fantasy and conjecture. Concrete progress was made when a contingent of religious missionaries, men well versed in Western science and technology, made their way to China, ushering in an era of



direct contacts between China and the West. The experience of this era was embodied in the career of the Italian Jesuit Matteo Ricci. Arriving in China in 1582, Ricci died in Beijing in 1610. Apart from his missionary work, Ricci accomplished two historically symbolic tasks — one was the translation into Latin of the “Four Books,” together with annotations, in 1594; the other was the translation into Chinese of Euclid’s *Elements*.

The rough translations of the “Four Books” and other Chinese classical works by Western missionaries, and the publication of Père du Halde’s *Description Geographique, Historique, Chronologique, Politique, et Physique de l’Empire de la Chine* revealed an exotic culture to Western readers, and sparked a “China fever,” during which the eyes of many Western intellectuals were fixed on China. Some of these intellectuals, including Leibniz, held China in high esteem; others, such as Hegel, nursed a critical attitude toward Chinese culture. Leibniz considered that some aspects of Chinese thought were close to his own views, such as the philosophy of the *Book of Changes* and his own binary system. Hegel, on the other hand, as mentioned above, considered that China had developed no proper philosophy of its own. Nevertheless, no matter whether the reaction was one of admiration, criticism, acceptance or rejection, Sino-Western exchanges were of great significance. The transmission of advanced Chinese science and technology to the West, especially the Chinese inventions of paper-making, gunpowder, printing and the compass, greatly changed the face of the whole world. Karl Marx said, “Chinese gunpowder blew the feudal class of knights to smithereens; the compass opened up world markets and built colonies; and printing became an implement of Protestantism and the most powerful lever and necessary precondition for intellectual development and creation.” The English philosopher Roger Bacon said that China’s four great inventions had “changed the face of the whole world and the state of affairs of everything.”

3

Ancient China gave birth to a large number of eminent scientists, such as Zu Chongzhi, Li Shizhen, Sun Simiao, Zhang Heng, Shen Kuo and Bi





Sheng. They produced numerous treatises on scientific subjects, including *The Manual of Important Arts for the People's Welfare*, *Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art*, *A Treatise on Febrile Diseases* and *Compendium of Materia Medica*. Their accomplishments included ones whose influence has been felt right down to modern times, such as the armillary sphere, seismograph, Dujiangyan water conservancy project, Dunhuang Grottoes, Grand Canal and Great Wall. But from the latter part of the 15th century, and for the next 400 years, Europe gradually became the cultural centre upon which the world's eyes were fixed. The world's most outstanding scientists then were England's Isaac Newton, Poland's Copernicus, France's Marie Curie, Germany's Rontgen and Einstein, Italy's Galileo, Russia's Mendeleev and America's Edison.

The Chinese people then began to think: What is the cause of the rise and fall of nations? Moreover, how did it happen that gunpowder, invented in China and transmitted to the West, in no time at all made Europe powerful enough to batter down the gates of China herself?

It took the Opium War to wake China from its reverie. The first generation to make the bold step of "turning our eyes once again to the rest of the world" was represented by Lin Zexu and Wei Yuan. Zeng Guofan and Li Hongzhang started the Westernization Movement, and later intellectuals raised the slogan of "Democracy and Science." Noble-minded patriots, realizing that China had fallen behind in the race for modernization, set out on a painful quest. But in backwardness lay the motivation for change, and the quest produced the embryo of a towering hope, and the Chinese people finally gathered under a banner proclaiming a "March Toward Science."

On the threshold of the 21st century, the world is moving in the direction of becoming an integrated entity. This trend is becoming clearer by the day. In fact, the history of the various peoples of the world is also becoming the history of mankind as a whole. Today, it is impossible for any nation's culture to develop without absorbing the excellent aspects of the cultures of other peoples. When Western culture absorbs aspects of Chinese culture, this is not just because it has come into contact with Chinese culture, but also because of the active creativity and development of Western culture itself; and vice versa. The various cultures of

the world's peoples are a precious heritage which we all share. Mankind no longer lives on different continents, but on one big continent, or in a "global village." And so, in this era characterized by an all-encompassing network of knowledge and information we should learn from each other and march in step along the highway of development to construct a brand-new "global village."

Western learning is still being transmitted to the East, and vice versa. China is accelerating its pace of absorption of the best parts of the cultures of other countries, and there is no doubt that both the West and the East need the nourishment of Chinese culture. Based on this recognition, we have edited and published the *Library of Chinese Classics* in a Chinese-English format as an introduction to the corpus of traditional Chinese culture in a comprehensive and systematic translation. Through this collection, our aim is to reveal to the world the aspirations and dreams of the Chinese people over the past 5,000 years and the splendour of the new historical era in China. Like a phoenix rising from the ashes, the Chinese people in unison are welcoming the cultural sunrise of the new century.

August 1999



前 言

一、关于汤显祖

1. 汤显祖的生平及影响

汤显祖是中国明代末年一位富有传奇色彩的、具有思想家气质的文学家、戏曲家，字义仍，号若士，亦号海若，别署清远道人和玉茗堂主人。他于明世宗嘉靖二十九年八月十四日（公历1550年9月24日）出生于临川（今属江西）的一个书香人家，十二岁时的诗作即已显露才华，十四岁入学，二十一岁中举，三十四岁中进士，在南京先后任太常寺博士、詹事府主簿和礼部祀祭司主事。万历十九年（1591年），作著名的《论辅臣科臣疏》，批评神宗朱翊钧即位后的朝政，抨击宰辅张居正和申时行，因而被贬广东徐闻任典史，次年调任浙江遂昌知县，实行了一些开明的措施。他在任职五年后告归故里，打消仕进之念，专事写作，于万历四十四年六月十六日（公历1616年7月29日）在临川玉茗堂逝世。

汤显祖一生留下两千多篇诗、文、赋，主要创作成就在戏曲方面，代表作是《牡丹亭》（又名《还魂记》），它和《邯郸记》、《南柯记》、《紫钗记》合称“玉茗堂四梦”。他的作品《红泉逸草》、《问棘邮草》、《玉茗堂全集》，以及《紫箫记》和“四梦”，都有明清刻本传世。1962年出版了钱南扬和徐朔方整理的《汤显祖集》，1999年出版了徐朔方笺校的《汤显祖全集》。

尽管汤显祖几百年来一直受到文学界和戏剧界的重视，然

而“汤学”的逐渐形成却是20世纪的事情。20世纪的汤学研究（尤其是对其代表作《牡丹亭》的研究）大致可以分为前半世纪和后半世纪两个阶段。前半世纪的研究较多地继承了明清以来考辨本事、制曲度曲、曲辞鉴赏的传统，较少观念的更新和理论的说明。研究者仅有少数曲学专家和文学史家，前期有王国维、吴梅、王季烈、卢前等人，后期有俞平伯、郑振铎、赵景深、张友鸾、江寄萍、吴重翰等人。后半世纪的研究虽然曾经受到庸俗社会学和极左思潮的影响，但是在1957年前后围绕纪念汤显祖逝世三百四十周年纪念，还是形成了一个研究的小高潮。70年代后期以来，汤显祖研究逐步深入和发展。全国学术界在1982年以纪念汤显祖逝世三百六十六周年为契机，在汤显祖的故乡举行了隆重的纪念活动，并随之将汤显祖研究推上一个新阶段，论文和著作的数量都有大幅度的增加。2000年在大连和临川分别举行的汤显祖诞生四百五十周年国际学术讨论会和纪念会以其规模之大和论文之多标志着汤学研究已经达到一个崭新的高度，中国汤显祖研究会首届年会于2001年8月在浙江省的遂昌举行。

最近二十年出版的汤学研究著作主要有：徐朔方的《汤显祖年谱》（1980）、《论汤显祖及其他》（1983）、《汤显祖评传》（1993）和《汤显祖全集》（1999），黄文锡和吴凤雏的《汤显祖传》（1983），毛效同的《汤显祖研究资料汇编》（1984），江西文学研究所的《汤显祖研究论文集》（1984），龚重谟等的《汤显祖传》（1986），周育德的《汤显祖论稿》（1991），徐扶明的《牡丹亭研究资料考释》（1987）和《汤显祖与牡丹亭》（1985），邹元江的《汤显祖的情与梦》（1998），项兆丰的《汤显祖遂昌诗文全编》（2000），朱继平等的《汤显祖研究资料目录索引》（2000），邹自振的《汤显祖综论》（2001），纪勤的《汤显祖传》（2001）等。最值得一提的是20世纪末出版的《汤显祖全集》

(1999), 全书四册二千六百二十七页, 新收录“制艺”一卷和多篇佚文, 是目前为止内容覆盖最完整的汤显祖著作全集, 这本书出自汤显祖研究的耆老徐朔方先生。《汤显祖的情与梦》(1998)把汤显祖的生平、思想、人格、艺术、美学联系起来, 作全方位的研究, 这本书出自武汉大学哲学系的青年学者邹元江先生, 注重分析阐述了汤显祖的理学著作, 为汤显祖研究开辟了新的方向。由此可见, 参加汤显祖研究的人员已经形成一支老中青结合的梯队, 而研究的范围也有了新的拓展, 包括汤显祖的生平、剧本的蓝本探讨、思想意义和社会价值的评估、艺术形式和演出情况等诸多方面, 并开始从哲学、历史、美学等新的角度对汤显祖进行研究。正如叶长海先生提出的那样, 汤显祖研究已经名副其实地形成了“汤学”。

2. 汤显祖在国外

对于国外读者来说, 汤显祖的名字跟他的剧作《牡丹亭》是分不开的。早在17世纪初, 《牡丹亭》已经东传日本。据日本《御文库目录》所载, 1636年御文库即已收藏明刊本《牡丹亭记》(臧懋循改本)六本。岸春风楼翻译的《牡丹亭还魂记》于1916年由文教社出版; 宫原民平译注的《还魂记》由东京国民文库刊行会出版, 收入《国译汉文大成》第十卷(1920—1924)。另外, 还有岩城秀夫的译本《还魂记》。

日本著名戏曲史专家青本正儿在1916年出版的《中国近世戏曲史》中首次将汤显祖与莎士比亚相提并论。日本的岩城秀夫发表了长达四百一十一页的论文《汤显祖研究》(1986), 美国的白之撰写了论文《〈牡丹亭〉或〈还魂记〉》(1974)和《〈牡丹亭〉结构》(1980), 另外还有J. Y. H. Hu的论文《从冥府到人间: 〈牡丹亭〉结构分析》(1980)和夏志清的论文《汤显祖剧作的自我与社会》(1970)等。俄罗斯学者索罗金·马努辛也发表了不少研究汤显祖的论文, 例如, 1974年发表的

《论汤显祖的〈紫箫记〉》和《汤显祖的戏曲〈紫钗记〉》。

以博士论文而言,1974年汉堡大学Lily Tang Shang的博士论文《汤显祖的四梦》出版,1975年明尼苏达大学C. Wang Chen的博士论文《〈邯郸梦记〉的讽刺艺术》出版,华玮的博士论文《寻求“和”:汤显祖戏剧艺术研究》(1991)、荣赛星的博士论文《〈邯郸记〉评析》(1992),陈佳梅的博士论文《犯相思病的少女的梦幻世界:妇女对〈牡丹亭〉的反映(1598—1795)研究》(1996)等。此外,王益春的博士论文《梦与戏剧:16—17世纪之交中、英、西班牙之剧作》(1986)、周建渝的博士论文《才子佳人小说:17到19世纪中国一种叙述文学体裁的历史研究》(1995)和沈静的博士论文《传奇戏剧中文学的运用》(2000)亦述及汤显祖之作。史恺悌的博士论文《冯梦龙的“浪漫之梦”:〈牡丹亭〉的改编里抑遏的策略》(1990)则论及汤剧的流传,并于2002年出版了专著《舞台上的〈牡丹亭〉》。

二、关于《邯郸记》

1. 剧情梗概

八仙之一的吕洞宾从仙山下凡,要度一人来蓬莱山门作扫花使者。他经过邯郸地,见赵州桥头小店里有个书生,名卢生,精读经史,屡试不中,但相貌清奇,颇有仙分。在店小二为他们煮黄粱米饭时,吕洞宾送一瓷枕给卢生,卢生倚枕熟睡。

梦中,卢生跳入枕中,误闯崔家大院,崔小姐逼他成婚。婚后,崔小姐劝卢生入京应试。卢生贿赂朝中显宦,高中状元,被任命为翰林学士兼知制诰。卢生私自写了一道封自己夫人的制诰,被考官宇文融告发,贬为陕州知州。卢生到陕州凿石修路开河,用火烧、醋浇的方法,很快开通了河道。于是奏请皇帝乘舟游赏,皇帝大悦,称许卢生开河功大。

这时，边关急报吐蕃入侵，宇文融又荐卢生前往征战。卢生以御史中丞兼河西节度使之职，挂征西大元帅印，到了河西。他用反间计，让吐蕃王怀疑丞相悉那罗谋反，杀了悉那罗。卢生趁机进兵，打败了武将热龙莽，驱兵千里，到天山脚下，勒石纪功，班师回朝。皇帝升卢生为定西侯，加太子太保、兵部尚书同平章军国大事。

而宇文融诬奏卢生私通蕃将，欲图谋不轨。皇帝命人把卢生斩首。崔氏闻讯，携四个儿子到午门喊冤。皇帝免卢生不死，发配到广南鬼门关，崔氏被打入机坊做女工，儿子们被逐出京城。

三年后，崔氏织一幅回文锦诉冤，献给皇帝。这时，吐蕃归降唐朝，带西蕃十六国入京朝贺。热龙莽得知卢生衔冤，托其子向唐朝皇帝辩白。皇帝也恰好看到崔氏织的回文锦，明白卢生蒙冤，立即下令将宇文融问斩，召卢生回京，加封赵国公，官上柱国太师，赐御马田园等。崔氏封为赵国夫人，四个儿子都封官荫爵。

卢生又做丞相二十多年，年过八十，因纵欲得病，归天而去。一梦忽醒，黄粱米饭尚未煮熟。吕洞宾告诉他，崔氏是驴子所变，那些儿子是店里鸡犬所变。卢生翻然大悟，随吕洞宾去蓬莱仙山做桃花苑的扫花使者去了。

2. 《邯郸记》的故事原型

沈既济（约750—约797）的《枕中记》是唐代传奇中的精品，其中记述了有名的“黄粱美梦”的故事：

“唐朝开元七年，道士吕翁经过邯郸道，在旅店里遇见卢生，一起畅谈。卢生感叹一生贫困，钦羨富贵荣华。这时，店主人正蒸黄粱米饭，吕翁从囊中取出一青瓷枕头，让卢生倚枕入睡。

卢生梦中，进入瓷枕，回到家乡。不久，卢生娶清河崔氏

为妻，家境渐富。第二年，卢生中进士，任秘书省校书郎，转渭南县尉，屡迁监察御史、起居舍人，知制诰。三年后，出为同州太守，迁陕州太守，凿河八十里，百姓刻石纪德。又迁汴州太守，领河南道采访使，征为京兆尹。

这年，吐蕃悉抹逻及烛龙莽布支攻陷瓜沙，节度使王君奭被杀，皇帝命卢生任御史中丞、河西道节度，大破吐蕃，斩首七千级，开地九百里，边人立石于居延山，歌颂卢生。

卢生归朝后，转吏部侍郎，迁户部尚书兼御史大夫。因受宰相诬陷，贬为端州刺史。三年后，征为常侍，迁同中书门下平章事。与中书令萧嵩、侍中裴光庭同执大政十余年，号为贤相。又被诬陷与边将交结，图谋不轨。下狱。卢生要自杀，被妻子劝阻，贬往边地。

数年后，皇帝明白卢生冤情，征召为中书令，封燕国公。卢生有五子，都任显宦，与望族结亲，有孙十余人。历经五十余年，卢生家势鼎盛，纵情声色，家里良田高第，不可胜数。

卢生年逾八十，因病身亡。卢生忽然从梦中惊醒，见身仍在旅店中，主人黄粱米饭还未煮熟。于是翻然大悟：‘夫宠辱之道，穷达之运，得丧之理，死生之情，尽知之矣。’拜谢吕翁而去。”

《枕中记》的构思显然受到南朝宋刘义庆（403—444）的志怪小说集《幽明录》的影响，《幽明录》中有一篇标目为《杨林》的短文，写了这样一个故事：

“宋世焦湖庙有一柏枕，或云玉枕，枕有小坼。时单父县人杨林，为贾客，至庙企求。庙巫谓曰：‘君欲好婚否？’林曰：‘幸甚。’巫即遣林近枕边。因入坼中，遂见朱楼琼室，有赵太尉在其中。即嫁女与林。生六子，皆为秘书郎。历数十年，并无思归之志。忽如梦觉，犹在枕旁，林怅然久之。”

《枕中记》与《杨林》的主要相同之处在于：卢生和杨林

都经过高人指引入梦，梦中世界都在枕内，梦中都做了富贵人家的女婿，都在梦中经历了几十年时间，都生有多子并做了高官。小异之处在于：卢生是经过神仙道者指引，而杨林是经过庙巫指引；卢生的枕头是有窍的青瓷枕，而杨林的枕头是有坼的柏木枕或玉枕。大异之处在于：两人的身份不同，卢生是穷书生，杨林是商人。两人的梦的详简也不同，卢生做的是完整的人生富贵梦，而杨林做的仅是婚姻梦。

《枕中记》比《杨林》成熟得多，不仅梦境更为复杂，而且人物形象更为丰满，其思想深度和艺术魅力都优于《杨林》，影响也更为深远，在唐代就已经广为流传。由沈既济的《枕中记》中特有的情节“燕黍未熟”而来的“黄粱梦”、“黄粱一梦”、“黄粱美梦”、“一枕黄粱”等也逐渐成为汉语中的固定成语，“黄粱一梦”的故事几乎家喻户晓，元明以来多次被改编为剧本。

3. 以黄粱梦为题材的剧本

在汤显祖的《邯郸记》以前，已有多种以黄粱梦为题材的剧本问世，例如，元代马致远的杂剧《邯郸道省悟黄粱梦》、明代谷子敬的杂剧《邯郸道卢生枕中记》、车任远的南杂剧《邯郸梦》、苏汉英的传奇《吕真人黄粱梦境记》等，这些剧本都以钟离权度化吕洞宾为故事主线，都具有程度不一的全真道教色彩。

关于吕洞宾，《中国大百科全书》有如下记载：“吕洞宾，唐末、五代著名道士，号纯阳子，自称回道人。世称吕祖或纯阳祖师。为民间神话故事八仙之一……传说在长安遇钟离权，经过“十试”，乃授以延命之术，金液大丹之功，因得道法，不知所往。”

据道教经典记载，吕洞宾得道成仙以前，曾困顿于仕途，至长安酒肆，初遇钟离权，向其述说平生不得志之事，钟离权

遂以“黄粱一梦”感化。钟离权自己做饭，吕洞宾瞌睡，梦见自己荣华富贵。后来“忽被重罪籍没，家资分散，妻孥流岭南，路值风雪，仆马俱瘁，一身无聊，方兴浩叹，恍然梦觉。”钟离权在旁执炊，黄粱犹未熟。吕洞宾顿时感悟，遂拜钟离权为师，求其超度。这类故事显然脱胎于沈既济的《枕中记》，并且在民间也流传颇广。在河北省邯郸市的黄粱梦村甚至建有黄粱梦吕仙祠，里面有钟离、吕祖和卢生三个大殿，《枕中记》与全真教的神仙故事在这里合二为一了，吕洞宾在自己做完黄粱梦以后让卢生也去尝尝黄粱梦的味道。

《邯郸道省悟黄粱梦》是马致远和李时中、红字李二、花李郎合写的，每人写一折。马致远（1251？—1321？）是元代著名剧作家，与关（汉卿）、郑（光祖）、白（朴）齐名。他曾任行省官吏，晚年退出官场，归隐林下，过着酒中仙、尘外客、林间友的生活。

《邯郸道省悟黄粱梦》是神仙道化剧的一个典型，是传道度人类型的道教剧本中最为有名的一部，早在1838年就有法译本流传欧洲。该剧以全真道人钟离权借梦度化吕洞宾为主线，剧中，东华帝君派正阳子钟离权点化吕洞宾，钟离权在煮黄粱饭时让吕洞宾在梦中享受荣华富贵，又让他在梦中体会一下酒色财气的牵连，然后又让他经历一番颠沛流离的生活。一梦十八年，等到吕洞宾从梦中醒来时，钟离权针对梦中诸事启发吕洞宾要明了人生虚幻的道理。经过这一番梦事和钟离权的启迪，吕洞宾终于悟了大道，遁入玄门。这部剧本是以劝诫世人出世超凡、皈依大道为意旨的。

苏汉英的《吕真人黄粱梦境记》同样是讲述钟离权度化吕洞宾的故事，属于道教戏曲的范围。全剧除“开场”以外，分为三十二出。除第一出和最后两出以外，从第二出到第三十出共二十九出戏俱演梦中事，吕洞宾在梦中度过四十年，“四十

年荣枯得失，何尝不认为真，及至醒了，方知是梦。就如世上人，争名夺利，过了一生半世，也不自疑。直到眼花落地时节，才想旧日荣华富贵都已落空，才省得是个长梦。”（第三十一出）剧本以吕洞宾“擢入仙班，各驾祥云，同升上界”结束。

《吕真人黄粱梦境记》内容比《邯郸道省悟黄粱梦》丰富得多，但是两者有两点是共同的：第一，全剧以神仙道化为主旨，说教意味浓厚；第二，故事跟《枕中记》相距甚远，与其说剧本根据《枕中记》改编而来，不如说根据《道藏》中《吕纯阳集》的故事改编而来。

4. 《邯郸记》的成就和影响

《邯郸记》作于明万历二十九年（1601年），剧情跟《枕中记》的故事情节是基本一致的，但是，卢生的梦中经历在细节方面却大不相同，许多地方是汤显祖的创造，而正是这些细节的拓展提高了剧本的品位和价值。关于“结婚”，《枕中记》仅提及“数月，娶清河崔氏女”，《邯郸记》却写卢生误入崔宅以后，使女转告小姐旨意：“私休，不许你家去，收留你在这里，与小姐成其夫妻；官休，送你清河县去”，大户人家的横蛮一语道破。关于“应试”，《枕中记》仅提及“明年，举进士，登第”，《邯郸记》却写卢生“有家兄打圆就方”，“家兄者，钱也”，卢生通过贿赂买通了权贵，使“满朝勋贵相知，都保他文才第一”，得中了状元，科举制度的腐败由此可见一斑。关于“治河”，《枕中记》仅提及“自陕西凿河八十里，以济不通”，而《邯郸记》却写卢生以“盐蒸醋煮”的办法来对付“鸡脚山”和“熊耳山”，来讽刺当时的宰辅无能。关于“征西”，《枕中记》仅提及“大破戎虏，斩首七千级，开地九百里，筑三大城以遮要害”，而《邯郸记》却写卢生靠“御沟红叶之计”破吐蕃，建立荒诞无稽的“功业”。难怪汤显祖在《虞初志·枕中记》的评语里说：“举世方熟邯郸一梦，予故演付伶人以歌舞之”，明

确表示自己写《邯鄲记》是为了讽刺当时的朝政。

历代的戏剧评论家普遍给予《邯鄲记》高度的评价，例如，吴梅在《中国戏曲概论》中评论《邯鄲记》时写道：“直接了当，无一泛语。增一折不得，删一折不得……记中备述人世险诈之情，是明季宦途习气，足以考万历年间仕宦况味，勿粗鲁读过。”鲁迅肯定了《邯鄲记》对传播《枕中记》的作用：“明汤显祖又本《枕中记》以作《邯鄲记》传奇，其事遂大显于世。”（《唐宋传奇集稗边小缀》）有的评论家认为《邯鄲记》是明末的官场“百丑图”、明末的“官场现形记”，这种评论是毫不夸张的，帝王的昏聩无能、矜贵的互相倾轧、群臣的趋炎附势都在剧中刻画得淋漓尽致，因为在剧中融合着汤显祖在多年仕宦生涯中和对社会的观察中亲身感受到的情况。

《邯鄲记》的生命力在于它反映的是人间的“世情”和“矫情”（恶情、虚情），而卢生“一生耽搁了个‘情’字”。因此，《邯鄲记》反映的内容具有其普遍意义，超越时空的界限。卢生的身上既有丑恶的“矫情”，也有普通人的“世情”，所以卢生不是一个公式化的“坏人”，而是一个活生生的“世人”，心灵深处美丑并举、善恶交汇，这样的戏剧人物才能在戏曲舞台上具有长久的生命力。第二十九出“生寤”写得特别精彩，非常值得玩味，卢生在垂老之年还在忙着“彭祖采战之术”，美其名曰“图些寿算，看护子孙”，追求长生不老。卢生的丑态跟现代某些贪官污吏的骄奢淫逸、倒行逆施何其相似！

《邯鄲记》创作于1601年，也正是汤显祖被正式免官之年，因此不排除作者在官场失意之后，理想破灭，感叹人生短暂、世事无常、富贵易逝，也就是在遭遇“不意之忧、难言之事”（《邯鄲记》题词）以后，出现了一些出世入道的消极思想。其实，汤显祖一生都处于“情”和“理”的斗争之中，他的前期仕途生涯是“理”胜于“情”，他的后期弃官闲居是“情”胜



于“理”，而“情”一旦彻底战胜了“理”，“情”也就失去了依附，最终走向虚无。《邯郸记》展现了士大夫知识分子理想的幻灭，集中体现了现世的荒谬和人生的虚无，否定了卢生在现世中的荒谬人生，因为这样的人生是虚无的。

《邯郸记》在问世以后经常在舞台上演，清代雍正年间的蔡应龙写道：“夫《还魂》与《邯郸》之脍炙人口，所谓九州之大，六合之广，虽三尺稚子，无不憬然。”（《全琵琶重光记》附录〈摘锦弁言〉）《邯郸记》偶尔有全本演出，而折子戏《扫花》、《三醉》、《邯郸梦》、《云阳》、《法场》、《打番》（《番儿》）、《仙圆》等则更是经常在清代宫廷和民间演出。《邯郸记》直到当代还有改编演出，例如，1982年昆曲名家俞振飞还在演出折子戏《邯郸梦》，1986年文化部举办汤显祖逝世370周年纪念活动时江西省赣剧团演出了《邯郸梦记》，显示了作品强盛的生命力。

三、《邯郸记》的英译

1. 关于英译《邯郸记》

从1999年底开始，历时两年的《邯郸记》英译工作终于进入了尾声，经过两度修改，即将付梓。然而，我丝毫没有松了一口气的感觉，因为这是一项非常艰巨的工程，总感到还有不放心的地方。由于迄今为止尚无任何英译本问世，所以我的手边没有任何直接可供参考的资料。在遇到语言难点的时候，只能逐字逐句地查阅辞典及相关的书籍，或者向有关专家学者请教。在遇到引用前人诗句的时候，只能设法找到原诗，然后在原诗的字面意义和剧中的情景意义之间寻找一个折中的译法。在遇到背景知识问题的时候，只能就若干专题进行专门研究，力争理出个头绪。

为了对《邯郸记》故事的发生地有点感性的认识，我于

2001年9月和10月先后到河北省邯郸市和湖南省岳阳市进行了实地考察。邯郸市北十公里处竟然有一个黄粱梦村，村里的“吕仙祠”是一所有千年历史的道教宫观，建有钟离、吕祖、卢生三大殿。道教传说中钟离权度吕洞宾的故事和唐代传奇《枕中记》的故事在这里得到了完美的统一。卢生祠门口的对联是“睡到二三更时凡功名都成幻境，想到一百年后无少长俱是古人”。黑色的卢生塑像安卧在祠中，享受着他的黄粱美梦，卢生殿的四壁上彩绘着卢生一枕黄粱的传奇故事。

来到岳阳市自然为的是一睹岳阳楼的风采。岳阳楼巍然屹立在岳阳市的高丘上，金碧辉煌，熠熠生辉。岳阳楼下瞰洞庭，遥对君山，北望巫峡，南眺潇湘，视野开阔，气象万千。在岳阳楼的右侧，建有一所“三醉亭”，是根据吕洞宾三醉岳阳楼的故事而命名的。三醉亭一楼的正中有《洞宾醉酒》的画像，上书吕洞宾的诗句。楼上立有一个神龛，神门内真人一般大的吕洞宾塑像端坐其中，他一手举杯，一手持书，正在边饮酒边吟诗，神气活现，仿佛神仙下凡。探访两处古迹为翻译《邯郸记》增添了不少感性的认识。

跟以前一样，我为自己的译文制定了“传神达意”的目标，力争做到创造性地准确再现原剧的风采。以第六出“赠试”中卢生和崔氏对白时用的四句集唐诗为例：“不羨名公乐此身”，“风光别似武陵春”，“百花仙酝能留客”，“一面红妆恼杀人”。如果完全按照原诗的字面意义来英译，两人的对话就会变得不知所云，故而变通译为：

Miss Cui:

“You enjoy your life ignoring fame,

Lu Sheng:

As I enjoy Utopian life here best.

Miss Cui:

With flower-brewed wine to entertain the guest,



Lu Sheng:

I have a fairy beauty to my claim."

这样一来，原诗的“基本”意义没有走样，在剧中意思也能连贯下来，又保持了诗的节奏和韵律。又如，第十一出中有两句唱词：“山神前身为措大，又逢酸子措他来。”“措大”是穷酸的书生，“酸子”是醋，后一个“措”是动词，是“醋”的通假词，两个“措”字显然有双关的意思。我把这两行译为

The mountain god used to be a sour scholar,

But will soon suffer from vinegar.

译文中的“sour”跟中文的“穷酸”尽管意义不完全一致，但跟“vinegar”毕竟有点关联。这两个例子是我所谓的“创造性地准确再现原剧的风采”，至于读者是否认可，只能等待以后的评论了。

为使外国读者能够减少阅读《邯郸记》的英译本时可能遇到的障碍，下面谨就剧本中涉及的唐代历史、唐代官制、道教八仙和明代传奇的特点等问题分别作一简单介绍。至于剧本的台词和唱词中引经据典中众多的背景知识，就无法一一注释了。我翻译的时候，在不影响英语读者理解的前提下，尽可能地保持作者原有的意象，或者在原有意象后面加一诠释性的词语，否则就宁愿牺牲原有的意象而用英语的相应表达方式取代。

2. 《邯郸记》的背景知识

2.1. 《邯郸记》梦中故事的历史背景

汤显祖的剧本《邯郸记》取材于唐人沈既济的传奇《枕中记》，其剧情跟《枕中记》的故事情节是基本一致的，但是，卢生的梦中经历在细节方面却大不相同，许多地方是汤显祖根据《旧唐书》和《新唐书》记录的历史事实再创作的。

《邯鄲記》的梦中故事发生于唐玄宗皇帝开元年间。唐玄宗李隆基公元711—755年在位，使用“开元”为年号的时间为二十九年（公元713—741）。剧中的故事共延续五十四年，从卢生二十六岁到八十岁，都发生在开元年间，显然跟史实不完全相符。

剧中的宇文融、萧嵩和裴光庭确实同朝为官，《旧唐书》（卷九十九）有如下记载：“（开元）十七年，授宇文融、裴光庭宰相，又加（萧）嵩兼中书令。”王君奭抵御吐蕃的进犯时阵亡，以及吐蕃的大将热龙莽和丞相悉那逻在《旧唐书》和《新唐书》中均有记载。

吐蕃王朝是公元七至九世纪期间我国藏族政权，据有今西藏全部地区，盛时辖有青藏高原诸部，势力达到今新疆及河陇地区。尽管时有冲突，但吐蕃与唐的经济文化联系依然至为密切。

历来在评论《邯鄲記》一剧时，一向认为汤显祖在针砭时弊，影射明朝万历年间的政事。我们虽然并不排除汤显祖在《邯鄲記》中有针砭时弊的倾向，但是他再创作的许多情节还是有所本的。

2.2. 《邯鄲記》中涉及的道教八仙

《邯鄲記》有神仙道化梦幻剧的框架，其中涉及不少有关道教的人物和地点。

道教神仙的来源是多方面的，具有多元论的特征，大致可以分为道家哲学、自然属性、阴阳五行、祖先、圣贤、功臣、英雄、奇才英杰等八个方面。道教明确提出宇宙间有一个神仙世界，统领一切仙真鬼神的至上神是三清（元始天尊，灵宝天尊，道德天尊），统管天地的是玉皇大帝，掌管仙籍的是东王公（东华帝君）和西王母。关于神仙的洞府，《史记·封禅书》中说，海中有三神山，名叫蓬莱、方丈、瀛州。

道教中的八仙是传说中的八位神仙，属于来自奇才英杰的神仙。八仙指的是铁拐李、钟离权、张果老、蓝采和、何仙姑、吕洞宾、韩湘子和曹国舅，居住在蓬莱仙岛。八仙的故事多见于唐、宋、元、明文人的记载，元杂剧里出现较多，至明代吴元泰的《八仙出处东游记传》里，才确定为以上八人。

3. 明代传奇的基本特征

明代中叶到明末清初是“传奇”发展的黄金时期，万历年间汤显祖“临川四梦”的出现标志了其中的一个创作高潮。除了《牡丹亭》主要取自明代《燕居笔记》中的拟话本小说《杜丽娘慕色还魂》以外，其余三剧确实均取材于唐人传奇：《紫钗记》取材于唐人蒋防的传奇《霍小玉传》、《南柯记》取材于唐人李公佐的传奇《南柯太守传》、《邯郸记》取材于沈既济的传奇《枕中记》。

“传奇”是文学体制规范化和音乐体制格律化的长篇戏曲剧本，能够适应中国戏曲作为一种高度综合艺术的需要。从篇幅来看，传奇剧本的篇幅长，出数多，一本传奇通常少则二十余出，多则四五十出，有的甚至长到一百出。例如，汤显祖的《牡丹亭》就多达五十五出，《邯郸记》则只有三十出。这与它曲折复杂的情节、文武冷热相济的场子、唱念做打兼顾的综合特点是密切相关的。传奇不仅篇幅长、出数多，而且角色也多，例如，《邯郸记》使用了生、旦、净、末、丑、外、贴、老旦等八种行当扮演一百多个主要和次要角色，剧本中一般只注明行当而不注明角色的姓名。

从文学角度来看，明代传奇节奏缓慢、结构固定。第一出必然是“副末开场”（家门大意），末或副末登场唱两支曲子，表述作者的创作意图及剧情大意。第二、三出照例是“生旦家门”，通过唱词念白进行自我介绍，然后才是关目上来，故事情节依次展开。在每出戏的末尾，照例由角色念诵两句或四句

韵语，然后下场，作为“下场诗”，对本出戏的内容作一小结，表明本出戏已经结束，有时还可以为下出戏留置悬念。全剧结束的时候也是由在场的角色先独念，或先分念后合念四句七言下场诗为全剧作总结。传奇的语言典雅清丽，多用书面语言，少用方言、俗语和口语，甚至在对白中夹入诗词，例如，《邯鄲记》中采用了唐诗、集唐，以及菩萨蛮倒句、丑奴儿、好事近、西江月、长相思等词牌。

从艺术角度来看，传奇讲究格律，剧作家创作时必须遵循一定的音乐体制，运用各种宫调和曲牌。例如，在《邯鄲记》中就使用了渔家傲、破齐阵、柳摇金、赏花时、醉春风、红绣鞋等几十种曲牌，可以表达各种不同的感情。传奇是一种讲究唱念做打的综合艺术，融文字、音乐、舞蹈、美术、武术、杂技于一体，具有独特的表演程式。它讲究写意性，跟西方戏剧的写实性有较大的区别。

在英译《邯鄲记》的过程中，我又一次切身体会到从事古典文学作品英译的艰难，但是我有信心再通过四到五年的努力能够完成汤显祖“临川四梦”的翻译工作，为汤显祖走向世界尽到自己菲薄的努力。

汪榕培





INTRODUCTION

I. About Tang Xianzu

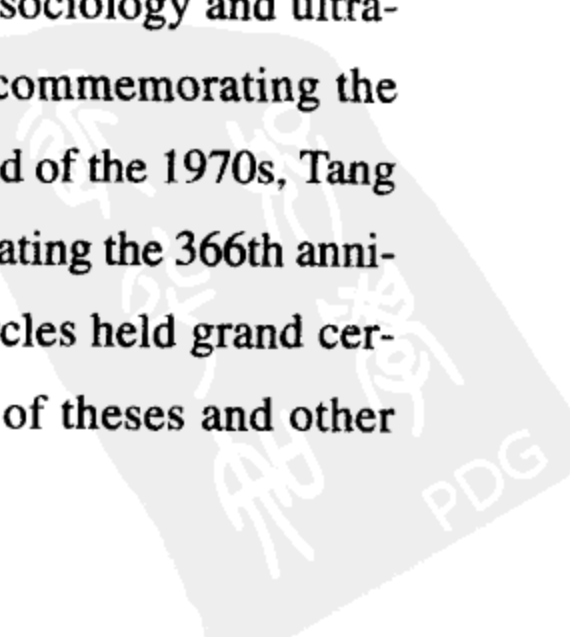
1. Tang Xianzu's Life and Influence

Tang Xianzu, alias Yireng, was a writer and dramatist and a profound thinker. He lived a legendary life at the end of the Ming Dynasty, styling himself Ruoshi, Hairuo, Qingyuan Taoist and Hermit of the Jade Tea Studio. Tang Xianzu was born in an intellectual family in Linchuan (in present-day Jiangxi Province) on September 24, 1550. At the age of 12, he was a known poet; when he was 14, he passed the imperial examination at the county level; when he was 21, he passed at the provincial level, but not until he was 34 did he pass at the national level. He served in Nanjing successively as adviser in the Court of Imperial Sacrifices, as secretary to the Office of Imperial Affairs and as administrative aide in the Sacrifice Bureau of the Ministry of Rites. In 1591, he wrote the famous *Memorial to Impeach the Ministers and Supervisors*, criticizing the court for its misadministration since the ascendance of Emperor Shenzong and impeaching prime ministers Zhang Juzheng and Shen Shixing. As a result, he was demoted to the position of clerk in Xuwen County, Guangdong Province. A year later, he was transferred to be the magistrate of Suichang County, Zhejiang Province, where he took some enlightened measures. After five years in office, he returned to his hometown, gave up all ideas of an official career and devoted himself to writing. On July 29, 1616, he died in the Jade Tea Studio in Linchuan.



Tang Xianzu has left behind more than 2,000 poems, essays and rhymed essays and, his chief achievement, dramas. His masterpieces *The Peony Pavilion* (also entitled *The Return of the Soul*), *The Handan Dream*, *The Nanke Dream* and *The Purple Hairpin* are known as the “Four Dreams of the Jade Tea Studio”. His *Leisurely Poems from the Red Spring Studio*, *Collected Poems by Tang Xianzu*, *The Complete Works of the Jade Tea Studio*, *The Purple Flute* and the “Four Dreams” have passed down through numerous printings in the Ming and Qing dynasties. The *Collected Works of Tang Xianzu* edited by Qian Nanyang and Xu Shuofang was published in 1962, and *The Complete Works of Tang Xianzu* annotated by Xu Shuofang was published in 1999.

Although Tang Xianzu was highly esteemed in literary and drama circles, “Tang Xianzu Studies” gradually came into being only in the 20th century. The studies of Tang Xianzu, especially of his representative work *The Peony Pavilion*, can be roughly divided into two stages — the first half and the second half of the 20th century. The studies in the first half of the 20th century inherited the tradition of the Ming and Qing dynasties in tracing the origin of the story, composing the music for it, singing the songs and appreciating the verse, but they lacked new ideas and elucidation. The researchers were confined to certain experts in drama and literary history circles, including Wang Guowei, Wu Mei, Wang Jilie and Lu Qian in the early period, and Yu Pingbo, Zheng Zhenduo, Zhao Jingshen, Zhang Youluan, Jiang Jiping and Wu Zhonghan in the later period. The studies in the second half of the 20th century, in spite of interference by vulgar sociology and ultra-left ideology, saw a small high tide around 1957 in commemorating the 340th anniversary of Tang Xianzu’s death. Since the end of the 1970s, Tang Xianzu Studies have developed in depth. In commemorating the 366th anniversary of Tang Xianzu’s death, China’s academic circles held grand ceremonies in his native town and published a number of theses and other



works, thus bringing Tang Xianzu Studies into a new era. The international symposium and commemorative meeting held respectively in Dalian and Linchuan in 2000, with large numbers of participants and papers, marked a new height in Tang Xianzu Studies. The first conference of the China Association for Tang Xianzu Studies was held in Suichang, Zhejiang Province, in August 2001.

Among the books on Tang Xianzu Studies published in the past 20 years, the most noteworthy are Xu Shuofang's *Tang Xianzu's Chronology* (1980), *Essays on Tang Xianzu and Others* (1983), *A Critical Biography of Tang Xianzu* (1993) and *The Complete Works of Tang Xianzu* (1999), Huang Wenxi and Wu Fengchu's *A Biography of Tang Xianzu* (1983), Mao Xiaotong's *A Collection of Reference Materials on Tang Xianzu Studies* (1984), the Jiangxi Institute of Literature's *Collected Essays on Tang Xianzu Studies* (1984), Gong Zhongmo's *A Biography of Tang Xianzu* (1986), Zhou Yude's *Essays on Tang Xianzu* (1991), Xu Fuming's *Annotated Reference Materials on Tang Xianzu Studies* (1987) and *Tang Xianzu and The Peony Pavilion* (1985), Zou Yuanjiang's *Tang Xianzu's Sentiments and Dreams* (1998), Xiang Zhaofeng's *A Complete Collection of Tang Xianzu's Poems and Essays Written in Suichang* (2000), Zhu Jiping's *An Index of Materials on Tang Xianzu Studies* (2000), Zou Zizhen's *Essays on Tang Xianzu* (2001) and Ji Qin's *The Life of Tang Xianzu* (2001). What deserves special mention is *The Complete Works of Tang Xianzu* (1999) in four volumes, which includes a section titled "Eight-legged Essays" and a number of newly discovered essays. This collection, edited by Xu Shuofang, the senior expert in Tang Xianzu Studies, is the most complete collection of Tang Xianzu's works. *Tang Xianzu's Sentiments and Dreams* (1998) comprises comprehensive research into Tang Xianzu's life, thought, personality, art and aesthetics. This book, written by Zou Yuanjiang, a young scholar in the Department of Philosophy of Wuhan University, breaks a new trail in Tang



Xianzu Studies by analysing and elucidating Tang Xianzu's essays on ethics. Clearly, Tang Xianzu Studies have attracted old, middle-aged and young researchers, and have covered such new fields as Tang Xianzu's life, the sources of his plays, their ideological significance, social value, art form and performances, to be viewed from such new angles as philosophy, history and aesthetics. In Mr. Ye Changhai's words, studies of Tang Xianzu have become "Tang Xianzu Studies" in its real sense.

2. Tang Xianzu's International Fame

To readers outside China, Tang Xianzu's name is inseparable from his play *The Peony Pavilion*, which reached Japan at the beginning of the 17th century. According to *The Catalogue of the Royal Library*, six copies of *The Peony Pavilion* (Zang Maoxun's adapted version) published in the Ming Dynasty were kept in the royal library as early as 1636. *The Return of the Soul*, or *The Peony Pavilion* translated by Kishi Shunpulo was published by the Culture and Education Press in 1916. *The Return of the Soul* translated and annotated by Miyahara Minpei was published by the Tokyo National Library Publishing Association, and contained in Volume 10 of the *Collection of Chinese Works Translated into Japanese* (1920–1924). Yiwashiro Shideo translated *The Return of the Soul* into Japanese.

In his *History of Modern Chinese Drama* published in 1916, the famous Japanese historian of drama Aomoto Masako placed Tang Xianzu on a par with William Shakespeare. The Japanese scholar Yiwashiro Shideo published his 411-page thesis *Studies of Tang Xianzu* in 1986. The American scholar Cyril Birch published *The Peony Pavilion or The Return of the Soul* in 1974 and *The Structure of The Peony Pavilion* in 1980. Other theses include J. Y. H. Hu's *From the Netherworld to the Human World: An Analysis of the Structure of The Peony Pavilion* (1980) and Xia Zhiqing's *The Self and Society in Tang Xianzu's Drama* (1970). The Russian scholar V. S. Manucine also published a number of theses on Tang Xianzu Studies, e.g.

On The Purple Flute by Tang Xianzu and *Tang Xianzu's Drama The Purple Hairpin*, both published in 1974.

As far as PhD monographs are concerned, Lily Tang Shang's *The Four Dreams of T'ang Hien-Tsu* was published by Hamburg University in 1974, and C. Wang Chen's *The Art of Satire in The Handan Dream* was published by Minnesota University in 1975. Other PhD monographs include Hua Wei's *The Search for "Great Harmony": A Study of Tang Xianzu's Dramatic Art* (1991), Sai-sing Yung's *A Critical Analysis of The Handan Dream* (1992), Chen Jiamei's *The Dream World of Love-sick Maidens: A Study of Women's Responses to the Peony Pavilion, 1598-1795* (1996). In addition, Wang I-chun's *Dream and Drama: Theatre in the Late Sixteenth Century and Early Seventeenth Century China, England and Spain* (1986), Zhou Jianyu's *The Caizi-Jiaren Novel: A Historical Study of a Genre of Chinese Narrative from the Seventeenth to the Nineteenth Century* (1995), and Shen Jing's *The Use of Literary Forms in Chuanqi Drama* (2000) also mention Tang Xianzu's works. Catherine Crutchfield Swatek's *Feng Menglung's "Romantic Dream": Strategies of Containment in His Revision of The Peony Pavilion* (1990) touches on the spread of Tang Xianzu's plays. Swatek's monograph *The Peony Pavilion on Stage: Four Centuries in the Career of a Chinese Drama* was published in 2002.

II. About *The Handan Dream*

1. A Synopsis

Lü Dongbin, one of the Eight Immortals, has descended from the mountain of the immortals to look for someone to convert to be a petal-sweeper at the gate to Penglai Mountain. When he reaches Handan, he happens to see a scholar in an inn by the Zhaozhou Bridge. The scholar, Lu Sheng, has studied since childhood, and is well-versed in the ancient



classics and in history but has time and again failed in the imperial examinations. However, Lu Sheng has an extraordinary air about him as if he were predestined to be an immortal. While the innkeeper is cooking yellow millet for them, Lü Dongbin hands him a porcelain pillow, and Lu Sheng rests his head on it and falls asleep.

In his dream, Lu Sheng jumps into the pillow. He enters the courtyard of the Cui family by mistake. Miss Cui forces him to marry her there and then. After their marriage, Miss Cui tells Lu Sheng to go to the capital to sit the imperial examination. By bribing high officials, Lu Sheng does become the Number-One Scholar and is nominated as Master of the Royal Academy and Edict Drafter. When Lu Sheng secretly writes an edict to grant his wife a title in his office as the Edict Drafter, the examiner Yuwen Rong lodges an accusation against him. Lu Sheng is thus relegated to be Magistrate of Shanzhou in charge of paving roads and digging a canal. By employing the method of burning with fire and spraying with vinegar, Lu Sheng completes the canal and asks the emperor to inspect it. The emperor is pleased to have a comfortable boat tour along the canal and highly praises Lu Sheng for his grand feat.

When urgent reports come from the border that Tubo troops have marched across the Great Wall, Yuwen Rong plays a trick by recommending Lu Sheng as the commander to fight them. Lu Sheng is promoted to the position of Supervisory Minister, Administrator and Military Commander of Hexi, and General of Quenching the West. On his arrival in Hexi, Lu Sheng manoeuvres to sow discord between the Tubo king and Prime Minister Xi Naluo, who is consequently killed by the king. Lu Sheng takes this opportunity to launch an attack to defeat General Re Longmang, and marches his troops for a thousand miles to the foot of the Tianshan Mountain. He inscribes his exploits on rocks in the Tianshan Mountain and returns victoriously. At the news of the victory, the emperor grants Lu Sheng the



titles of Marquis of Conquering the West, Prince Instructor, Defense Minister and Honorary Prime Minister.

Soon afterwards, Yuwen Rong presents a secret accusation to the emperor, charging Lu Sheng with high treason. Without further investigation, the emperor orders Lu Sheng to be beheaded. On hearing this news, Miss Cui takes their four sons to protest at the palace gate. The emperor lifts the death sentence from Lu Sheng but sends him into exile to the Ghost Gate Pass in southern Guangdong. Miss Cui is detained in the Royal Weaving Mill to weave and her sons are banished from the capital.

After three years of humiliation, Miss Cui weaves a palindrome, hoping that it will be presented to the emperor and that she will have her wrongs redressed. At the time, the border region is peaceful, with Tubo on good relations with the Tang Dynasty. Joining envoys from 16 other western states to pay tribute to the Tang emperor, the Tubo envoy, Re Longmang's son, appeals against the injustice inflicted upon Lu Sheng. On hearing this and seeing the palindrome presented by Miss Cui, the emperor realises that Lu Sheng has suffered injustice. He decrees that Yuwen Rong be executed at once, Lu Sheng be summoned back to the capital, granted the title of Duke of Zhao and nominated as First-Rank Instructor, Miss Cui be granted the title of Lady of Zhao, and their four sons be nominated high officials.

After another 20-odd years in the office of Prime Minister, Lu Sheng is over 80 years old. He falls ill from over indulgence in sex and dies at the height of his fame and fortune. When he awakens from his dream, the yellow millet is not yet done. When Lü Dongbin tells him that his wife Miss Cui had been transformed from his donkey and that his sons had been transformed from the chickens and dogs at the inn, Lu Sheng is fully converted and follows Lü Dongbin to become a petal-sweeper in the Peach Yard on Penglai Mountain.

Library of Chinese Classics
PDG

2. The Prototype of *The Handan Dream*

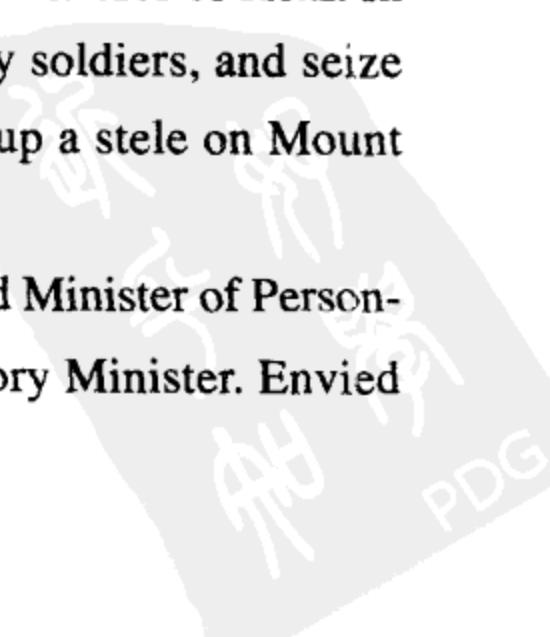
A Tale within the Pillow by Shen Jiji (ca. 750-ca. 797) is a gem of a romantic story of the Tang Dynasty, which tells the well-known story of “A sweet dream of yellow millet”.

“In the 17th year of the Kaiyuan reign in the Tang Dynasty, a Taoist by the name of Lü is on his way to Handan. When he happens to meet Lu Sheng at an inn, they chat pleasantly. Lu Sheng sighs over his lifelong poverty and yearns for wealth and distinction. While the innkeeper is cooking a meal of yellow millet, Master Lü opens his parcel and takes out a pillow for Lu Sheng to rest his head on.

In his dream, Lu Sheng enters the porcelain pillow and returns to his hometown. Not long afterwards, he marries Miss Cui of Qinghe. Their life improves day by day. The next year, Lu Sheng succeeds in the imperial examination and becomes a secretary in the secretariat. By imperial decree, he becomes the County Officer in Weinan, and is soon promoted to the position of Supervisor, then Imperial Recorder, and then Edict Drafter. Three years later, he serves first in Tongzhou and is then promoted to the position of Shanzhou Magistrate. He has 80 miles of canal dug from Shanzhou to open up navigation. As this canal benefits his countrymen, who inscribe his feat on rocks, Lu Sheng is promoted to the position of Southern Inspector in Bianzhou, and then of Capital Magistrate.

That same year, when Ximolo from Tubo and Mangbuzhi from Zhulong capture Guazhou and Shazhou and Administrator and Military Commander Wang Junchuo is killed in battle, Emperor Xuanzong assigns Lu Sheng as Supervisory Minister, Administrator and Military Commander of Hexi. In routing the invaders, the Tang troops kill 7000 enemy soldiers, and seize 900 miles of territory. People in the border area put up a stele on Mount Juyan to laud his feats.

On his return to the capital, Lu Sheng is nominated Minister of Personnel, and then Minister of Home Affairs and Supervisory Minister. Envied





and slandered by the Prime Minister, Lu Sheng is demoted to the position of Duanzhou Magistrate. Three years later, he is nominated as Imperial Adviser and becomes Right Prime Minister. Together with Minister of the Central Office Xiao Song and Left Prime Minister Pei Guangting, Lu Sheng manages state affairs for over a dozen years and is called a wise prime minister. When he is slandered and impeached for illicit relations with border generals, he is put in prison. He tries to commit suicide, but is rescued by his wife. He is later sent into exile in a border area.

Several years later, the emperor realises that Lu Sheng was wronged, restores him to his position of Minister of the Central Office and grants him the title of Duke of Yan. Lu Sheng has five sons, all in high positions and marrying women of distinguished families. He has over a dozen grandchildren. At the pinnacle of fame in his official career of over 50 years, he indulges in luxury and lives a debauched life. Endless farmland and countless mansions have been bestowed on him.

Lu Sheng falls ill and dies over the age of 80. When he awakens from his dream, he finds himself in the inn, with the yellow millet not yet done. He comes to realise the truth of life, saying, "With all the grace and disgrace, failures and successes, gains and losses, life and death — now I understand everything." He bows in thanks to Master Lü and goes on his way."

The story *A Tale Within the Pillow* was influenced by *Records of Good and Evil*, strange tales collected by Liu Yiqing (403-444) of the Song Dynasty during the Southern Dynasties. One of the stories is entitled *Yang Lin*.

"During the Song Dynasty there was a cypress pillow, also called jade pillow, in the Jiaohu Temple. The pillow had a small crack in it. A merchant named Yang Lin from Shanfu County went to the temple to seek divine assistance. The sorcerer in the temple asked, 'Are you interested in making a good marriage?'

Yang Lin said, 'Yes, of course.'

The sorcerer told Yang Lin to go to the pillow. Yang Lin entered the crack and saw magnificent mansions and chambers, Duke Zhao lived there and married his daughter to Yang Lin. They had six sons, who all became assistants in the Palace Library. Yang Lin stayed in the pillow for several decades with no intention of leaving. When he woke up abruptly, he found himself still by the pillow. Yang Lin was filled with disappointment for a long time."

The major similarities between *A Tale Within the Pillow* and *Yang Lin* are: Both protagonists enter their dreams under the guidance of superior beings. In their dreams, both Lu Sheng and Yang Lin become sons-in-law of wealthy families, live many years, beget many sons and hold high official positions. The minor dissimilarities are: Lu Sheng has an immortal as guide while Yang Lin has a sorcerer in a temple. Lu Sheng's pillow is a porcelain one with hollow ends while Yang Lin's pillow is a cypress pillow or a jade pillow with a crack. The major dissimilarities are: Lu Sheng is a poor scholar while Yang Lin is a merchant. In their dreams, Lu Sheng lives a full life of fame and fortune while Yang Lin has a dream of a happy marriage.

A Tale Within the Pillow is more mature than *Yang Lin* in that its dream experiences are much more complicated, its characterisation is more vivid, its philosophical depth and artistic attraction are more powerful, and its influence is more profound. *A Tale Within the Pillow* was already popular in the Tang Dynasty. The frequent references to the story have made "a sweet dream of yellow millet" a set phrase in Chinese. The popular subject of "a sweet dream of yellow millet" has been adopted in several plays since the Yuan and Ming dynasties.

3. Plays with "A Sweet Dream of Yellow Millet" as Subject Matter

Before Tang Xianzu's *The Handan Dream*, there were several plays about "a sweet dream of yellow millet". They include Ma Zhiyuan's *zaju*



play in the Yuan Dynasty *Awakening from the Millet Dream on the Road to Handan*; Gu Zijing's *zaju* play in the Ming Dynasty *Lu Sheng's Dream in the Pillow on His Way to Handan*; Che Renyuan's southern *zaju* play in the Ming Dynasty *The Handan Dream*; Su Hanying's romance play in the Ming Dynasty *Immortal Lü's Millet Dream*. The main thread of these plays deals with the conversion of Lü Dongbin by Zhongli Quan, with a Taoist slant to different degrees.

As for Lü Dongbin, *The Encyclopaedia Sinica* has the following description: "Lü Dongbin was a famous Taoist in the late Tang Dynasty or the Five Dynasties, alias Pure Yang, self-styled the Converting Taoist Priest, known as Founder Lü or Founder Pure Yang, one of the eight immortals in folk mythology... According to legend, he met Zhongli Quan in Chang'an, where, after going through 'ten temptations', he learned the secrets of longevity and alchemy. It is not known where he went after his conversion to Taoism."

According to Taoist classics, Lü Dongbin was not successful in the imperial examinations before he became an immortal. When he met Zhongli Quan for the first time in an inn in Chang'an, he told him about his unsuccessful attempts at the examinations. Zhongli Quan set about converting him by "a sweet dream of yellow millet". While Zhongli Quan was cooking the yellow millet, Lü Dongbin dozed off and dreamed of a life of fame and fortune. Later, in his dream, "after all his assets were confiscated when he was found guilty of a serious crime, he was sent into exile with his wife and children to the south of Guangdong. When his servants and horses all died in a snow storm, he was extremely depressed. He was sighing deeply when he suddenly awoke." Lü Dongbin awoke to see Zhongli Quan cooking beside him and the yellow millet was not yet done. Lü Dongbin came to realise the true meaning of life and became a disciple of Zhongli Quan. Apparently adapted from Shen Jiji's *A Tale Within the Pillow*, such stories were very

popular. Today, there is a Temple to Immortal Lü at Millet Dream Village in Handan, Hebei Province. In the temple there are three halls dedicated to Zhongli Quan, Lü Dongbin and Lu Sheng respectively. In a merging of *A Tale Within the Pillow* and the Taoist legend, Lü Dongbin gets Lu Sheng to experience the sweet dream of yellow millet after dreaming the same dream himself.

Awakening from the Millet Dream on the Road to Handan was written by Ma Zhiyuan, along with Li Shizhong, Hongzi Li'er and Hua Lilang, each writing one of the four acts. Ma Zhiyuan (ca. 1251-ca. 1321) was a famous playwright in the Yuan Dynasty, ranking high with Guan Hanqing, Zheng Guangzu and Bai Pu. He was a provincial official, but later retired and became a recluse, with wine and nature as his closest friends.

Awakening from the Millet Dream on the Road to Handan, a typical play describing conversion to Taoism, went to Europe in 1838 in a French translation. The Taoist priest Zhongli Quan's conversion of Lü Dongbin is the main theme of the play. In the play, at the behest of Emperor Donghua, Zhongli Quan sets about converting Lü Dongbin to Taoism. While he is cooking the yellow millet, Zhongli Quan induces Lü Dongbin to have a taste of fame and fortune in his dream, to indulge in wine, sex and wealth, and to experience the ups and downs in life. When Lü Dongbin awakens from the dream of 18 years, Zhongli Quan proclaims the truth that human life is but a vanity fair. With his dreamland experience and Zhongli Quan's enlightenment, Lü Dongbin finally understands the way of Tao and is converted to Taoism. On the whole, *Awakening from the Millet Dream on the Road to Handan* advises people to rid themselves of worldly affairs and be converted to Taoism.

Su Hanying wrote the play *Immortal Lü's Millet Dream*, in which he tells a similar story. A Taoist play, it has 32 scenes, besides the prologue. The 29 scenes from Scene 2 to Scene 30 deal with the 40 years of Lü



Dongbin's life in the dream. Zhongli Quan says to Lü Dongbin, "Your 40 years of ups and downs, gains and losses seemed real. Only when you woke up did you realise that it was a dream. Like all worldly people, you went after fame and fortune all your life and did not have any doubts. Not until everything vanished did you realise that all your fame and fortune were vanities and that what you had experienced was but a long dream." (Scene 32) At the end of the play, "Lü Dongbin becomes an immortal. Riding on divine clouds, Zhongli Quan and Lü Dongbin ascend to heaven together."

The plot of *Immortal Lü's Millet Dream* is much more complicated than that of *Awakening from the Millet Dream on the Road to Handan*. However, both plays have two points in common. First, with immortals and conversion to Taoism as the subject matter, both plays are permeated with Taoist preaching. Second, and different from *A Tale Within the Pillow* to a large extent, both plays were adapted from stories in "Pure Yang Lü's Works" from Taoist Classics.

4. The Achievements and Influence of *The Handan Dream*

The Handan Dream was written in 1601. Its plot is similar to that in *A Tale Within the Pillow*, differing only in the particulars of Lu Sheng's dream, many of which were made up by Tang Xianzu. It is these particulars that raised the quality and value of the play. About the "marriage", *A Tale Within the Pillow* only mentions "Several months later, Lu Sheng married Miss Cui of Qinghe". *The Handan Dream* describes how when trespassing in Miss Cui's house, Lu Sheng is told "If he wants to settle the problem in private, he'll have to remain here and be my husband. If he wants to settle it in court, he'll have to go to Qinghe County". The arrogance of a wealthy family is revealed in these few words. About "going to take the imperial examination", *A Tale Within the Pillow* only mentions that "In the next year, Lu Sheng succeeded in the imperial examination", while *The Handan Dream* explains that "you have the help of my brother", "Who do you think my

brother is? He is money.” As Lu Sheng has enlisted the assistance of the elite through bribery, “All the powerful men in the court say that he is the most talented.” How Lu Sheng becomes the Number-One Scholar reveals the corruption of the imperial examination system. About “digging the canal”, *A Tale Within the Pillow* only mentions that “he had 80 miles of canal dug from Shanxi to open up navigation”, while *The Handan Dream* describes Lu Sheng’s method of “boiling with salt and vinegar” to tackle “Chicken-Foot Mountain and Bear-Ear Mountain” to satirise the incompetence of high-ranking officials. About “quenching the west”, *A Tale Within the Pillow* only mentions that Lu Sheng “in routing the invaders, killed 7000 enemy soldiers, expanded 900 miles of territory, and built three big garrisons”, while *The Handan Dream* describes how Lu Sheng defeats the Tubo troops by resorting to the scheme of “red leaves in the Royal Ditch” to achieve absurd “grand feats”. It is no wonder that in commenting on *A Tale Within the Pillow*, Tang Xianzu makes it clear that he has written *The Handan Dream* to satirise contemporary politics by saying, “As the whole world indulges in the Handan dream, I have written a play.”

Commentators through the generations have highly appraised *The Handan Dream*. For example, Wu Mei writes in his *An Outline of Chinese Drama*, “(The play) comes straight to the point without a redundant word. Not a single scene should be added or subtracted.... The play illustrates the intrigues of human life, which reflect the common practice of officials in the Ming Dynasty. As it affords sufficient material to explore the practice of officials during the reign of Emperor Shenzong, the readers are advised not to read it in haste.” Lu Xun emphasised the significance of *The Handan Dream* in popularising *A Tale Within the Pillow*: “Tang Xianzu in the Ming Dynasty wrote his romance play *The Handan Dream* based on *A Tale Within the Pillow*, and it is now known worldwide.” (*Random Thoughts on Romances from Tang and Song Dynasties*) Some commentators consider *The*

Handan Dream “a gallery of snobs” in official circles or “an exposure of the official world” at the end of the Ming Dynasty. Such comments are by no means exaggerations. The fatuity and incompetence of the emperor, the internal strife among the officials and the currying of favour with the powerful are depicted to the fullest extent in the play, which is permeated with Tang Xianzu’s personal experience over years as an official and with his personal observation of society.

The great vitality of *The Handan Dream* lies in the fact that it reflects “worldly passions” and “distorted passions” (evil passions, hypocritical passions). As Lu Sheng “has been carried away by passions all his life”, *The Handan Dream* reveals a universal truth that transcends time and space. Endowed with both evil “distorted passions” and ordinary “worldly passions”, Lu Sheng is not a prototype of “evil man” but a vivid “worldly man”, with something beautiful and ugly and something good and evil in the depth of his heart. Only such a dramatic character can have an ever-lasting vitality on the stage. Scene 29, “Revelations”, is especially brilliant. In his declining years, Lu Sheng still indulges in “time-honoured sexual acts”, using such fine-sounding words as “having sex to ensure longevity and protect the future generations”. His ugly acts seem similar to the extravagance and perverse acts of corrupt officials in modern times!

The Handan Dream was composed in 1601, when Tang Xianzu was dismissed from office. With his ideals shattered, the author felt deeply about the swift passage of time, the vicissitudes of life and the rapid disappearance of fame and fortune. In other words, Tang Xianzu had a somewhat passive tendency to convert to Taoism after he had experienced “unexpected sorrows and unspeakable events” (from his foreword to *The Handan Dream*). Actually, Tang Xianzu was caught up in the strife between “passion” and “reason” all his life. In the first half of his life as an official, his “reason” overwhelmed “passion”, while in the second half of his life in

retirement, his “passion” overwhelmed “reason”. Once victorious, his “passion” became nihilism. In displaying disillusionment in intellectual ideals, *The Handan Dream* gives full play to the absurdity of contemporary life and the nihilism of human life, thus disapproving of Lu Sheng’s absurd life in the contemporary world because such a human life is meaningless.

The Handan Dream has often been performed on the stage. Cai Yinglong in the early 18-century Qing Dynasty wrote: “*The Peony Pavilion* and *The Handan Dream* are so popular that even the youngsters have heard of them although the earth is great and the universe is expansive.” (“Random Remarks”, Appendix to Restaging of *The Story of the Lute*) It was staged in the Qing palace and in public occasionally in full but mostly in selected scenes, especially “Sweeping up the Flowers”, “Getting Drunk Thrice”, “The Handan Dream”, “Yunyang”, “Execution Ground”, “Fighting the Tubo”, “Meeting the Immortals”. The play has remained alive in modern times. For example, the famous *kunqu* actor Yu Zhenfei performed adapted scenes of “The Handan Dream” in 1982, the Jiangxi *Ganju* Troupe staged an adapted version of the play in 1986 during the commemorative activities for the 370th anniversary of Tang Xianzu’s death sponsored by the Ministry of Culture.

III. English Translation of *The Handan Dream*

1. My Version of *The Handan Dream*

Two years have passed since the end of 1999, when I started the English translation of *The Handan Dream*. All this time I have been pushing on with the work in spite of difficulties and have brought it, after two revisions, to the verge of publication. However, I do not feel relieved in the least because I am not entirely satisfied with my work, which has been completed without an earlier English translation for reference. When I came



across difficult language points, I consulted dictionaries and other related works or sought advice from experts. When I came across poems cited from earlier poets, I searched for the original poems and tried to do a suitable translation between the literal and the situational meaning. When I came across difficulties in background knowledge, I conducted research on related subjects.

In order to have a personal experience of the locale of *The Handan Dream*, I went to Handan in Hebei Province and Yueyang in Hunan Province in September and October 2001 respectively and benefited much from these expeditions. There is a Yellow Millet Village ten kilometres north of Handan, with a thousand-year-old Taoist Temple of Immortal Lü. It has three halls devoted to Zhongli Quan, Lü Dongbin and Lu Sheng respectively. It is here that the Taoist legend of Zhongli Quan's conversion of Lü Dongbin is perfectly integrated with the Tang-dynasty romance *A Tale Within the Pillow*. Two scrolls are hung on the gate to Lu Sheng's pavilion:

"Fame and fortune become illusory in one's dreams;

Old and young alike will be dead in a hundred years."

A black sleeping statue of Lu sheng lies in the pavilion, experiencing the sweet dream of yellow millet, which is painted on the walls.

When I arrived in Yueyang, the centre of attraction was none other than the Yueyang Pavilion, which towers magnificently above a hill in the centre of the city, overlooking the Dongting Lake, facing Mount Junshan, with the Wuxia Gorge to the north and Xiao and Xiang rivers to the south. To the right of the Yueyang Pavilion is the Pavilion of Getting Drunk Thrice, a pavilion named after the story of Lü Dongbin getting drunk three times in Yueyang. On the first floor is the painting "Lü Dongbin Gets Drunk", inscribed with his poems. On the second floor stands a life-size statue of Lü Dongbin, who is drinking and composing poems with a cup in one hand and a book in the other, vivid and lively as if an immortal has descended onto

the earth. Both of my trips added mystic charm to my translation of *The Handan Dream*.

I set the same standard for my translation as before: “vivid in description and faithful in meaning”, for a creative reproduction of the original play in its full splendour. Take the four lines of collected Tang poems in the dialogue between Lu Sheng and Miss Cui in Scene 6 for example. Extracted from different Tang poems, the meaning of each line may seem obscure if it is interpreted literally in the dialogue. That’s why these lines are translated with a little twist of meaning to fit the situation:

Miss Cui:

“You enjoy your life ignoring fame,

Lu Sheng:

As I enjoy Utopian life here best.

Miss Cui:

With flower-brewed wine to entertain the guest,

Lu Sheng:

I have a fairy beauty to my claim.”

Another example is taken from scene 11 “Digging the Canal”. Two lines read as follows:

“The mountain god used to be a sour scholar,

But will soon suffer from vinegar.”

There is a pun in the original version: The noun “措大” (*cuoda*) means “a wretched scholar” while the verb “措” (*cuo*) means “apply vinegar on”. In order to keep the pun, I changed “wretched scholar” into “sour scholar” to fit the situation. These are examples to explain what I mean by “creative reproduction of the original play in its full splendour”. As to whether I have succeeded or not, I have to wait and see the comments from readers when the book is published.

In order to make *The Handan Dream* easier for Western readers, I



have included some introductory remarks on the history of the Tang Dynasty, the official ranks in the Tang Dynasty, the Taoist Eight Immortals and the special features of the romance plays of the Ming Dynasty. As to the numerous quotations and allusions in the play, it is impossible to offer notes on all the particulars. When I render these into English, I have kept the original imageries wherever possible if I think readers will grasp the literal meaning. In some cases, I have kept the original imagery accompanied by a brief explanation. In other cases, I have dropped the original imagery but used some equivalent English words or phrases so that readers will be able to follow the plot.

2. Background to *The Handan Dream*

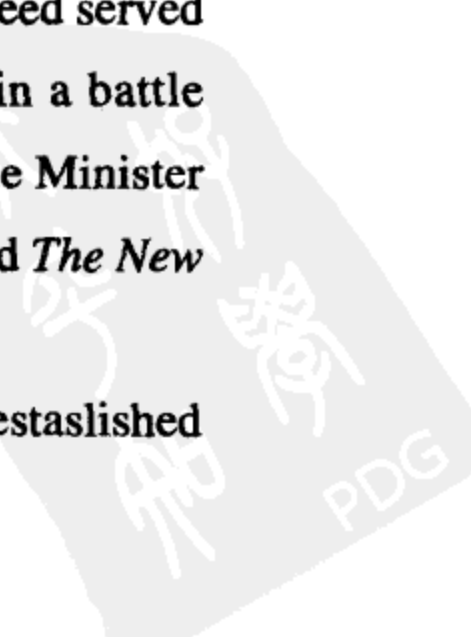
2.1. Historical Background to the Dream Experience

Based on Shen Jiji's romance *A Tale Within the Pillow* of the Tang Dynasty, Tang Xianzu's romance play *The Handan Dream* tells a story roughly the same as the original. However, Lu Sheng's experience in his dream has been greatly expanded, according to the historical events recorded in *The Old History of the Tang Dynasty* and *The New History of the Tang Dynasty*.

The story in *The Handan Dream* is set in the Kaiyuan reign (713-741) of Emperor Xuanzong of the Tang Dynasty. Xuanzong ruled from 711 to 755, with Kaiyuan being one of the several reign titles he used. Lu Sheng's dream lasts for 54 years, much longer than the Kaiyuan reign. Obviously, the story is not restricted to historical facts.

Some of the main characters in *The Handan Dream* have their prototypes in history. Yuwen Rong, Xiao Song and Pei Guangting indeed served in the court at the same time. Wang Junchuo did indeed die in a battle against the Tubo troops, led by General Re Longmang and Prime Minister Xi Naluo, as recorded in *The Old History of the Tang Dynasty* and *The New History of the Tang Dynasty*.

From the seventh to the ninth century, the Tubo Kingdom, established



by the Tibetan ethnic group, expanded its territory from the Qinghai-Tibet Plateau to Xinjiang and Hexi and Longyou. Although there were conflicts off and on, the Tubo Kingdom and the Tang Dynasty had close economic and cultural ties.

In some commentaries on *The Handan Dream*, it was said that Tang Xianzu was alluding to the political affairs of his day, the Wanli reign of Emperor Shenzong of the Ming Dynasty. Although we cannot deny this understanding of the play, we are sure at least that most of the particulars in the play were based on historical events that took place in the Tang Dynasty.

2.2. The Taoist Eight Immortals

As *The Handan Dream* has the framework of a religious play, many Taoist figures and locations are mentioned in the play.

The Taoist Immortals are pluralistic in the sense that they have been created from eight different sources: Taoist philosophy, natural traits, *yin* and *yang*, ancestors, saints, meritorious ministers, heroes and geniuses. Taoism overtly states that there is a world of immortals in the universe. The gods in charge of all the gods, immortals, saints and ghosts are the Original God, Treasure God and Moral God. The ruler of heaven and earth is the Jade Emperor. Emperor Donghua and West Empress take care of the registration of immortals. As to where the immortals gather, *Records of the Historian* says that there are three divine mountains in the sea: Penglai, Fangzhang and Yingzhou.

The Taoist Eight Immortals originated in legends, immortals belonging to the category of "geniuses". The Taoist Eight Immortals (Tieguai Li, Zhongli Quan, Zhang Guolao, Lan Caihe, He Xianggu, Lü Dongbin, Han Xiangzi and Cao Guojiu) dwell on Penglai Island. Their strange experiences are recorded in literary writings in the Tang, Song, Yuan and Ming dynasties and quite frequently in the *zaju* plays of the Yuan Dynasty. It was not until Wu Yuantai's

story *The Eight Immortals on Their Journey to the East* appeared did their names become standardised.

3. Basic Features of Romance Plays in the Ming Dynasty

The “romance play” reached its apex at the end of the Ming and beginning of the Qing in the 16th and 17th centuries, while the appearance of the “Four Dreams from Linchuan” by Tang Xianzu marked one of its upsurges. Aside from *The Peony Pavilion*, the other three plays by Tang Xianzu were all adapted from the “romances” of the Tang Dynasty: *The Purple Hairpin* was adapted from Jiang Fang’s *Life of Huo Xiaoyu*, *The Nanke Dream* was taken from Li Gongzuo’s *Life of the Nanke Magistrate*, and *The Handan Dream* was based on Shen Jiji’s *A Tale Within the Pillow*.

The romance play, a full-length play with a stylised literary format and musical format, can best meet the requirements of Chinese *xiqu* drama as a form of highly synthesised art. A romance play can have from 20 to 50 or even 100 scenes. For instance, *The Peony Pavilion* has 55 scenes, while *The Handan Dream* has 30. The length is closely related to such features as complicated plot, fast-moving and slow-moving scenes, and the combined performing arts of singing, speaking, acting and fighting. Also, there are many characters in a romance play. For example, eight categories of actors (*sheng, dan, jing, mo, chou, wai, tie* and *laodan*) play over 100 major and minor roles in *The Handan Dream*. As a rule, the play script normally lists the categories of actors instead of the names of *dramatis personae*.

With respect to literary features, the romance play of the Ming Dynasty is slow in tempo and standardised in structure. The first scene is always the “prologue”, with the announcer singing one or two arias, recounting the purpose and main story of the play. The second and third scenes normally have the male and female protagonists, introducing themselves through arias or monologues. The story then evolves in the following scenes. At the end of each scene, the character(s) recite two or four lines

of verse summarising the scene or creating some suspense for the next scene. At the end of the play, there are also four lines of verse making concluding remarks on the whole play. The language in the play is always refined, including poems or *ci* poems in the lines. Dialect, slang and colloquialisms are rarely used. For example, in *The Handan Dream* there are Tang-dynasty poems, collected Tang-dynasty poems, and such patterns of *ci* poems as *Pusaman in palindrome*, *Chounu'er*, *Haoshijin* and *Xijiangyue*.

As for artistic features, the romance play is noted for its regularity in the rhythmic patterns, in accordance with certain musical systems by using established notes and tunes. For example, *The Handan Dream* uses dozens of tunes such as *Yujia'ao*, *Poqizhen* and *Liuyaojin*, to express different passions. The romance play is an integrated art, combining literature with music, dance, fine arts, martial arts and acrobatics. It emphasises the symbolic rather than the realistic. From this perspective, the romance play differs from Western drama.

In the process of translating *The Handan Dream* into English, I have experienced difficulty in rendering classical Chinese into English. However, I am fully confident that I shall be able to complete the four plays by Tang Xianzu within four to five years, so that I can contribute my share to introducing Tang Xianzu to audiences worldwide.

Wang Rongpei



目 录

第一出 开场	2
第二出 行田	4
第三出 度世	10
第四出 入梦	38
第五出 招贤	76
第六出 赠试	86
第七出 夺元	98
第八出 骄宴	108
第九出 虏动	126
第十出 外补	132



CONTENTS

Scene One

Prelude 3

Scene Two

Riding in the Fields 5

Scene Three

Converting the Common People 11

Scene Four

Entering the Dream 39

Scene Five

Recruiting Men of Worth 77

Scene Six

Funding for the Imperial Examination 87

Scene Seven

Rivalling for the Number-One Scholar 99

Scene Eight

Royal Banquet 109

Scene Nine

Tribal Invasion 127

Scene Ten

Taking a Provincial Office 133



第十一出	
啗郟	142
第十二出	
边急	160
第十三出	
望幸	170
第十四出	
东巡	188
第十五出	
西谍	222
第十六出	
大捷	234
第十七出	
勒功	248
第十八出	
闺喜	266
第十九出	
飞语	278
第二十出	
死窜	292

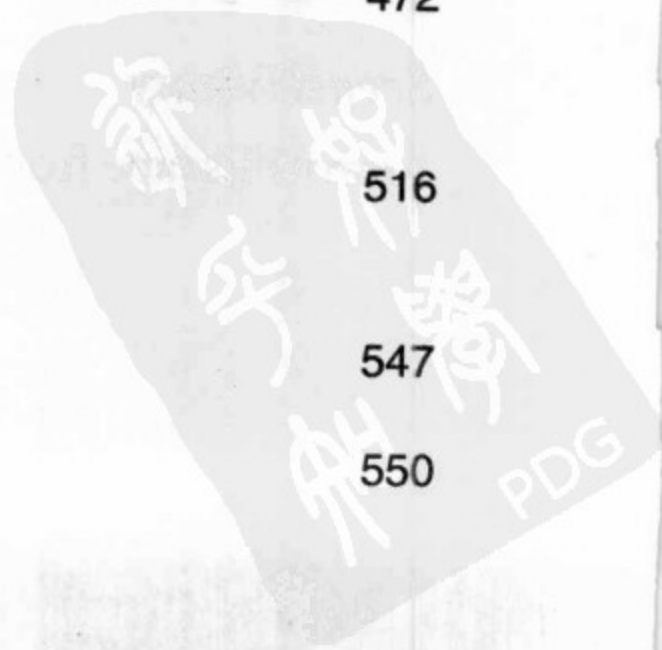


新
年
好
運
PDG

<i>Scene Eleven</i>	
Digging the Canal	143
<i>Scene Twelve</i>	
Border Crisis	161
<i>Scene Thirteen</i>	
Expecting the Imperial Inspection	171
<i>Scene Fourteen</i>	
Imperial Inspection to the East	189
<i>Scene Fifteen</i>	
Sending a Spy to the West	223
<i>Scene Sixteen</i>	
Grand Victory	235
<i>Scene Seventeen</i>	
Carving the Merits	249
<i>Scene Eighteen</i>	
Good News for the Wife	267
<i>Scene Nineteen</i>	
Slandering	279
<i>Scene Twenty</i>	
Narrow Escape from Death	293



第二十一出 逸快	336
第二十二出 备苦	342
第二十三出 织恨	366
第二十四出 功白	396
第二十五出 召还	416
第二十六出 杂庆	434
第二十七出 极欲	444
第二十八出 友叹	466
第二十九出 生寤	472
第三十出 合仙	516
参考书目	547
译者简介	550



<i>Scene Twenty-One</i>	
The Slanderer's Satisfaction	337
<i>Scene Twenty-Two</i>	
Sufferings on Exile	343
<i>Scene Twenty-Three</i>	
Sufferings in the Weaving Mill	367
<i>Scene Twenty-Four</i>	
Revealing the Truth	397
<i>Scene Twenty-Five</i>	
Amnesty	417
<i>Scene Twenty-Six</i>	
Celebrations	435
<i>Scene Twenty-Seven</i>	
Extreme Luxuries	445
<i>Scene Twenty-Eight</i>	
Friends' Lamentations	467
<i>Scene Twenty-Nine</i>	
Revelations	473
<i>Scene Thirty</i>	
Gathering with the Immortals	517
<i>Bibliography</i>	547
<i>About the Translator</i>	550



本书出版得到《大中华文库》出版经费资助

大 中 华 文 库
LIBRARY
OF CHINESE CLASSICS



第一出 开场

【渔家傲】

〔未上〕乌兔天边才打照，
仙翁海上驴儿叫。
一霎蟠桃花绽了，
犹难道，
仙花也要闲人扫。

一枕余酣昏又晓，
凭谁拨转通天窍？
白日殒西还是早，
回头笑，
忙忙过了邯郸道。

何仙姑独游花下，
吕洞宾三过岳阳。
俏崔氏坐成花烛，
蠢卢生梦醒黄粱。





Scene One **Prelude**

(Enter Announcer)

ANNOUNCER:

(To the tune of Yujia'ao)

When the sun and moon shine in the sky,
I hear over the seas the immortal's donkey cry.
Now that peach flowers have burst in full bloom,
Does it mean
That fairy flowers must be applied to the broom?

In dreamland time and tide quietly flow;
Who has made arrangements from below?
It's early when the sun sets in the west;
I look back, smile
And pass Handan without a rest.

**He Xiang walks alone amid the flowers;
Lü Dongbin passes Yueyang city thrice.
The pretty Cui waits for wedding in her bowers;
The foolish Lu Sheng wakes to see half-cooked rice.**



第二出 行田

【破齐阵】

〔生上〕极目云霄有路，
惊心岁月无涯。
白屋三间，
红尘一榻，
放顿愁肠不下。
展秋窗腐草无萤火，
盼古道垂杨有暮鸦，
西风吹鬓华。

【菩萨蛮倒句】客惊秋色山东宅，宅东山色秋惊客。卢姓旧家儒，儒家旧姓卢。隐名何借问？问借何名隐？生小误痴情，情痴误小生。

小生乃山东卢生是也。始祖籍贯范阳郡，土长根生；先父流移邯



Scene Two Riding in the Fields

(Enter Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

*(To the tune of **Poqizhen**)*

To the distant sky there is a way,
But time drags on day after day.
In three undecorated rooms
With a bed that holds a restless soul,
I toss and turn in glooms.
I open autumn windows
To find no fireflies in the rotten weeds
And gaze at ancient roads
To see the evening crows on poplar trees
While my hair wavers in western breeze.

*(To the tune of **Pusaman** in palindrome) I am upset by autumn scenes east of my house;/ The autumn scenes east of my house upset me./ The Lus have been Confucian scholars;/ The Confucian scholars have been the Lus./ Why should the unknown be named Lu?/ Why should Lu remain unknown?/ I've been hurt by profound emotion;/ Profound emotion has hurt me.*

I am Lu Sheng from the east of Mount Taihang. My ancestors lived in Fanyang Prefecture, deeply rooted there. My late father moved to Handan



邯縣，村居草食。自離母穴，生成背厚腰圓；未到師門，早已眉清目秀。眼到口到心到，于書無所不窺；時來運來命來，所事何件不曉？數什麼道理，茧絲牛毛，我筆尖頭一些些都筭的進，挑的出；怕那家文章，龍牙鳳尾，我錦囊底一樣樣都放的去，收的來。呀，說則說了百千萬般，遇不遇今二十六歲。今日才子，明日才子，李赤是李白之兄；這科狀元，那科狀元，梁九乃梁八之弟。之乎者也，今文豈在我之先；亦已焉哉，前世落在人之後。衣冠欠整，糧不糧，莠不莠，人看處面目可憎；世事都知，啞則啞，聾則聾，自覺得語言無味。真乃是人無氣勢精神減，家少衣糧應對微。所賴有數畝荒田，正直秋風禾黍。諒後進難攀先進，誰想這君子也，如用之？學老圃混着老農，難道是小人哉，何須也？到九秋天氣，穿扮得衣無衣，褐無褐，不湊膝短裘敝貂；往三家店兒，乘坐着馬非馬，驢非驢，略搭腳青駒似狗。呀，雖則如此，無之奈何？不免韉上蹇驢，散心一会。〔韉驢〕

〔驢鳴介〕我此驢也相伴多年了，再不能勾駟馬高車，年年邯鄲道上也。〔行介〕



County and lived a rural life. When I was born, I was of enormous size. Before I was of school age, I had grown to be a handsome lad. With an intent mind, I've read widely; with a deep insight, I'm full of intelligence. Reasoning of whatever insightful depth is at the tip of my pen; writings by whatever top-ranking scholars are stored in my memory. Oops, for all I've said, the lucky star never shines over my head and I've turned twenty-six now. To speak of talented poets, Red Li is White Li's elder brother; to speak of number-one scholars, Liang the Ninth is Liang the Eighth's younger brother. As for contemporary essays, I'm no worse than these people; as for predestination, I lagged behind them in former days. In ragged clothes, I offend people with my wretched appearance; for all my intelligence, I hold my tongue to pretend ignorance. As the saying goes, "A man of low social standing is never in high spirits; a man of meagre existence is never substantial in words." All I have in my possession is a few acres of arid land, which provides me with crops in autumn. As those who lag behind can never catch up with those who go ahead, what can I do in the name of a gentleman? Now that I'm mixed with the gardeners and farmers, why should I be looked upon as a villain? In late autumn, I have to be dressed in a shabby sheepskin coat; on my way to the inn, I have to ride a colt leaner than a rake. Well, in a plight like this, what am I to do? I'll saddle my lame donkey and take a ride to drive away my cares.

(Saddles the donkey)

(The donkey neighs)

I've kept company with this donkey for many years. I'll never be able to ride a carriage and four on my way to Handan.

(Walks on)



【柳摇金】

青驴紧跨，
霜风渐加。
克膝的短裘，
揞不住沙尘刮。
空田噪晚鸦，
牛背上夕阳西下。
秋风古道，
红树槎牙，
槎牙，
唱道是秋容如画。
日已向晚，且西村暂住，明日再田上去。

返照人间巷，
忧来共谁语？
古道少人行，
秋风动禾黍。

(To the tune of Liuyaojin)

When I ride on the donkey,
The frosty wind is blowing across the land.
The shabby sheepskin coat
Fails to keep away the dust and sand.
In the arid land the crows caw in the dusk;
Behind ox-back the sun sets in the west.
The ancient roads in autumn breeze
And branching crimson trees,
Branching trees,
Paint the autumn at its best.

Now that the sun is setting, I'd better stop over in the west village and go to the fields tomorrow.

**When evening glow enshrouds the country lanes,
To whom shall I bespeak my woe and cares?
With few pedestrians on the ancient road,
The autumn wind bestirs crops unawares.**



第三出 度世

[扮吕仙褙袱葫芦枕上]【集唐】蓬岛何曾见一人，披星带月斩麒麟。无缘邀得乘风去，回向瀛洲看日轮。

自家吕岩，字洞宾；京兆人也；忝中文科进士。素性饮酒任侠，曾于咸阳市上，酒中杀人，因而亡命。久之贫落，道遇正阳子钟离权先生，能使飞升黄白之术，见贫道行旅消乏，将石子半斤，点成黄金一十八两，分付贫道仔细收用。贫道心中有疑，叩了一头，禀问师父：师父，此乃点石为金，后来仍变为石乎？师父说：五百年后，仍化为石。贫道立取黄金抛散，虽然一时济我缓急，可惜误了五百年后遇金人。师父哑然大笑：吕岩，吕岩，一点好心，可登仙界。遂将六

Scene Three **Converting the Common People**

(Enter Lü Dongbin, carrying a parcel, a gourd and a pillow)

LÜ DONGBIN:

(In the pattern of Collected Tang Poems) The fairy island of Penglai never sees a single man,/ Who slays the monstrous kylin in moonlight./ Immortals leave the earth on wings of wind,/ And watch the sunrise from the fairy height.

I am Lü Yan, alias Dongbin, a native of Jingzhao. To my undeserved honour, I succeeded in the imperial examination. By nature I was addicted to drinking and chivalric deeds. After I killed a man on the Xianyang Fair in a drunken state, I had to flee the country. As time went on, I was reduced to poverty. One day I happened to meet Master Zhongli Quan, Man of Midday Sun, who was well versed in Taoist charms of ascension. When he saw that I was exhausted from the journey, he alchemised some stones into gold and offered it to me at my disposal. As I was puzzled, I kowtowed to him and asked, "May I ask you, Master, whether the alchemised gold will become stones again?" The master said, "The gold will become stones again in five hundred years." I scattered the gold at once, saying that the gold would mitigate my poverty for the moment but would cause trouble to the man who possesses it in five hundred years. The master burst into laughter and said, "Lü Yan, Lü Yan, the purity of your heart will lead you to the Immortal Land." By transmission of heart



一飞升之术，心心密证，口口相传。行之三十余年，忝登了上八洞神仙之位。只因前生道缘深重，此生功行缠绵。性颇混尘，心存度世。近奉东华帝旨，新修一座蓬莱山门，门外蟠桃一株，三百年其花才放，时有浩劫刚风，等闲吹落花片，塞碍天门。先是贫道度了一位何仙姑，来此逐日扫花。近奉东华帝旨，何姑证入仙班，因此张果老仙尊又着贫道驾云腾雾，于赤县神州再觅取一人，来供扫花之役。道犹未了，何姑笑舞而来也。

〔扮仙姑持帚上〕好风吹起落花也！

【赏花时】

翠凤毛翎扎帚叉，
闲踏天门扫落花。
你看风起玉尘砂，
猛可的那一层云下，
抵多少门外即天涯。

〔见介〕洞宾先生何往？

〔吕〕恭喜你领了东华帝旨，证了仙班。果老仙翁诚恐你高班已



and by word of mouth, he taught me all the Taoist charms of alchemy and ascension. After more than thirty years of learning, to my undeserved honour, I became one of the Immortals of the Upper Eight Caves. As I was obsessed in Taoist instructions in my previous life, I have been able to do one charm after another in this life. By nature I am entangled in the earthly world and so I am intent on converting the worldly people. A gate to the Penglai Mountain has recently been built at the decree of Emperor Donghua. Outside the gate grows a peach tree of Immortality, which begins to blossom in three hundred years. The petals fall at a gust of strong wind and block the heavenly gate. I have converted a certain He Xiang, who comes to sweep away the fallen petals every day. At the recent decree of Emperor Donghua, He Xiang has been enlisted in the Immortals. Therefore, Zhang Guolao the Immortal has ordered me to ride the clouds and look for a man to sweep the petals in her stead. Before I can finish my words, I see He Xiang come in smiles and dances.

(Enter He Xiang, carrying a broom)

HE XIANG:

What a gale that sends the fallen petals to the wind!

(To the tune of Shanghuashi)

With a broom of phoenix feathers,

I sweep the fallen petals at the heavenly gate.

The wind has swept the fallen petals,

Which fall down in a cloud

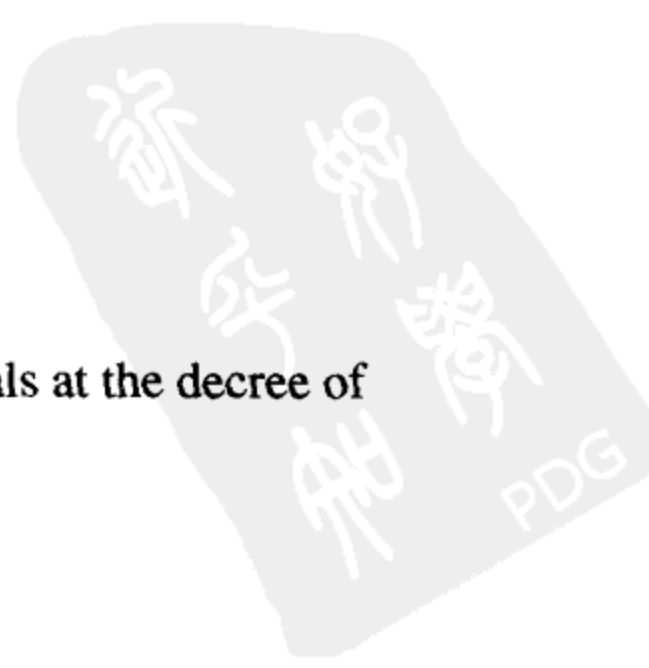
And block the way to the heavenly gate.

(Greets Lü Dongbin)

Where are you going, Master Lü Dongbin?

LÜ DONGBIN:

Congratulations on your being enlisted in the Immortals at the decree of



上，扫花无人，着我再往尘寰，度取一位，敢支分杀人也！

〔何〕洞宾先生大功行了。只此去未知何处度人？蟠桃宴可早赶的上也？

【么】

你休再剑斩黄龙一线差，
再休向东老贫穷卖酒家，
你与俺高眼向云霞。
洞宾啊，你得了人早些儿回话，
迟啊，
错教人留恨碧桃花。〔下〕

〔吕〕仙姑别去，不免将此磁枕褙袱驾云而去也。枕是头边枕，
磁为心上慈。〔下〕

〔丑上〕我这南湖秋水夜无烟，奈可乘流直上天。且就洞庭赊月
色，将船买酒白云边。



Emperor Donghua. Zhang Guolao the Immortal has ordered me to go to the earthly world to convert another man lest there be no petal-sweeper since you have been promoted. What a task he has assigned me!

HE XIANGU:

Master Lü Dongbin, it would be a great feat in your path to immortality. By the way, where are you going to convert a man? Will you be in time for the Peach Banquet?

(To the tune of Yao)

Do not miss your target by a hair's breadth,
Nor drink too much in Hermit Donglao's house —
Please look up to the sky.

Master Lü Dongbin,

Let me know when you have found the man.

If you delay,

I'll have to sweep the petals and sigh.

(Exit)

LÜ DONGBIN:

Now that He Xiang is gone, I'd better carry my parcel and porcelain pillow and go on with my trip by riding the cloud. *While the pillow is where the head rests,/ The porcelain breeds benevolence at best.*

(Exit)

(Enter Attendant)

ATTENDANT:

At night the clear lake waters lie,/ That flow upward into the sky./ I'll sell wine on credit by the Dongting Lake./ To customers from boats nearby.



[内笑介] 小二哥发誓不賒，又賒了。

[丑] 賒的賒一月，买的买一船。小子在这岳阳楼前开张个大酒店，因这洞庭湖水多，酒都扯淡了，这几日賒也没人来。好笑，好笑。

[内叫介] 小二哥，那不是两个賒的来了。

[丑] 请进，请进。

[扮二客上] 一生湖海客，半醉洞庭秋。小二哥，买酒。

[丑应介]

[客看壶介] 酒壶上怎生写着洞庭二字？

[丑] 盛水哩。

[客笑介] 也罢，我们海量，吞你几个洞庭湖。

[丑] 二位较量饮。

[一客] 小子鄱阳湖生意，饮八百杯罢。

[一客] 小子庐江客，饮三百杯。



(Laughter within)

VOICE WITHIN:

Brother, you've sworn that you'll never sell wine on credit, but you're going back on your promise again.

ATTENDANT:

The credit is due in a month, but people buy a boatload. I've started a big inn in front of the Yueyang Pavilion. As the Dongting Lake abounds in water, my wine is diluted. These days no one is coming to buy my wine even on credit. Absurd! Absurd!

VOICE WITHIN:

Brother, here come two customers to buy on credit.

ATTENDANT:

Come in, please. Come in, please.

(Enter Customers A and B)

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

A wayfarer all my life,/ Half drunk in autumn days.

Get us some wine, man.

(Attendant responds)

(Examines the wine-kettle)

How is it that the characters *Dongting* are inscribed on the kettle?

ATTENDANT:

The kettle is to contain lake water.

CUSTOMER A:

Well, with our holding capacity, we can gulp down several Dongting Lakes.

ATTENDANT:

I'll see which of you two can drink more.

CUSTOMER A:

As I do my business on the Poyang Lake, I can drink eight hundred cups.

CUSTOMER B:

As I come from the Lujiang River, I can drink three hundred cups.



〔丑〕这等，消我酒不去。八百鄱阳三百焦，到不得我这把壶一个腰。

〔客〕好大壶嘴哩。

〔做饮唱随意介〕

〔丑〕又一个带牛鼻子的来了。

【中吕·粉蝶儿】

〔吕上〕秋色萧疏，
下的来几重云树，
卷沧桑半叶浅蓬壶。
践朝霞，
乘暮蔼，
一步捱一步。
刚则背上葫芦，
这淡黄生可人衣服。

【醉春风】

则为俺无挂碍的热心肠，
引下些有商量来的清肺腑。
这些时蹬着眼下山头，
把世界几点儿来数，数。
这底是三楚三齐，
那底是三秦三晋，
更有找不着的三吴三蜀。

ATTENDANT:

In this way, you can't consume much of my wine. After eight hundred cups for the Poyang guest and three hundred cups for the Jiao guest, my kettle is still more than half full.

CUSTOMERS:

What a huge kettle!

(Drink and sing to their hearts' content)

ATTENDANT:

Here comes a Taoist priest.

(Enter Lü Dongbin)

LÜ DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Zhonglü Fendie'er)

In the bleak autumn days,
The clouds are floating over towering trees,
Across the world from the Immortal Penglai Island.
On the morning rays,
On the evening glow,
I move on step by step.

With a gourd upon my back,
I'm dressed in appealing pale yellow.

(To the tune of Zuichunfeng)

With a warm and carefree heart,
I talk with people who have their minds to bare.
I now descend the mount with my eyes wide open,
And count the places here and there —
Here are the Three Chus and Three Qis,
There are the Three Qins and Three Jins,
But nowhere can one find the Three Wus and Three Shus.



说话中间，前面洞庭湖了，好一座岳阳楼也！

【红绣鞋】

趁江乡落霞孤鹜，

弄潇湘云影苍梧。

残暮雨，

响菰蒲。

晴岚山市语，

烟水捕鱼图。

把世人心闲看取。

边旁放着一座大酒店。店主有么？

〔丑应介〕请进，请进。

〔作送酒介〕

【迎仙客】

〔吕〕俺曾把黄鹤楼铁笛吹，

又到这岳阳楼将村酒沽。

好景，好景，前面汉阳江，上面潇湘苍梧，下面湖北江东。
请了。

〔丑〕请什么子？

〔吕〕来稽首，

是有礼数的洞庭君主。



While I am talking to myself, I see the Dongting Lake lying ahead. What a magnificent Yueyang Pavilion!

(To the tune of Hongxiuxie)

In the fading glow along the river, a lonely owl flies;

In Xiaoxiang regions, clouds hang over Cangwu.

Amid drizzling rain at dusk,

The ponds and lakes are muttering.

From sunny peaks I hear people chat in a fair;

By misty waters I see people fishing here and there.

With cool eyes I explore the human hearts.

Here's a big inn. Where's the attendant?

ATTENDANT:

(Responds)

Come in, please. Come in, please.

(Brings in wine)

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Yingxianke)

As I played the iron flute in Yellow Crane Tower,

So I drink the village wine in Yueyang Pavilion.

What a beautiful sight! What a beautiful sight! With the Hanyang River in front of me, I can overlook the Xiao-Xiang Rivers and Mount Cangwu upstream, and overlook the area north of Dongting and east of the Yangtse downstream. Will you please come here?

ATTENDANT:

What can I do for you?

Lü DONGBIN:

Come and make a bow

To the respected Ruler of Dongting Lake now.



〔丑〕鬼话。

〔内雁叫介〕

〔吕〕听平沙落雁呼，

远水孤帆出。

这其中正洞庭归客伤心处，

赶不上斜阳渡。

〔吕作醉介〕酒是神仙造，神仙吃，你这一班儿也知道吃什么酒？

〔二客恼介〕哎也，哎也，可不道一品官，二品客，到不高如你？我穿的细软罗缎，吃的细料茶食，用的细丝镮锭。似你这般，不看你吃的，看你穿的哩，稀泥稀烂的。醒眼看醉汉，你醉汉不堪扶。

〔吕笑介〕

【石榴花】

俺也不和他评高下说精粗，

道俺个醉汉不堪扶，

偏你那看醉人的醒眼不模糊。

则怕你村沙势比俺更俗，

横死眼比俺更毒。

〔二客云〕野狐骚道，出口伤人。还不去，还不去扯破他衣服！



ATTENDANT:

Nonsense!

(Gabbles of wild geese within)

Lü DONGBIN:

I hear the wild geese gabble on the strands

And see a lonely sail in the horizon.

Over there the Dongting wanderer sadly stands

As he has missed the boat in the setting sun.

(In a drunken manner)

The wine is brewed by the immortals and for the immortals. How can you enjoy the pleasure of drinking!

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

(Annoyed)

Oops! Oops! As the saying goes, "Officials rank first; customers rank second." Aren't we better off than you? Dressed in silk and satin, we eat delicacies and pay in silver. Just look at yourself! Not to mention your food, your dressing is simply rags! While we are somber and you are drunk, we won't even care to help you to your feet.

Lü Dongbin:

(Laughs)

(To the tune of Shiliuhua)

I will not argue with you when you say

That you won't even care to help me to my feet;

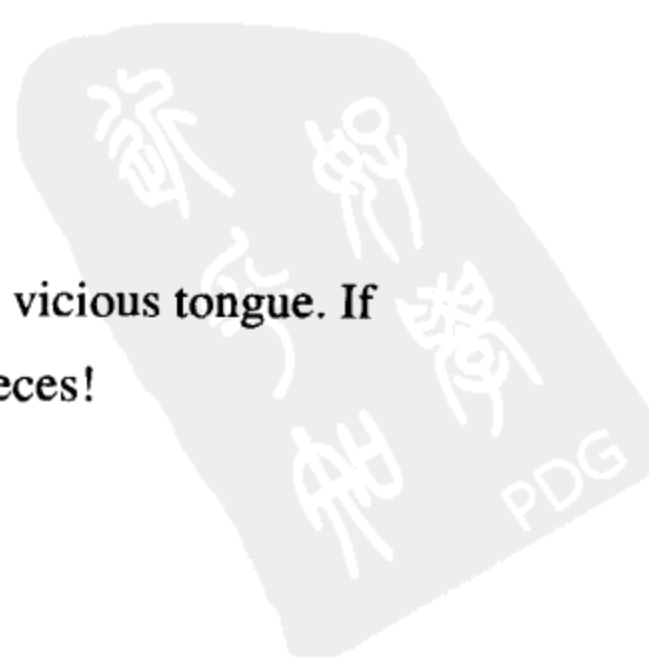
I am drunk in your sombre eye.

In fact you are much more snobbish than I,

And much more malicious than I.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

This rustic fox of a Taoist priest is hurting us with his vicious tongue. If you don't get out at once, we'll tear your dress to pieces!



〔吕〕为什么扯断丝带，
抓破衣服，
骂俺作顽涎骚道野狐徒？

〔客〕好笑、好笑，便那葫芦中，那讨些子药物？都是烧酒气。

【斗鹤鹑】

〔吕〕你笑他盛酒的葫芦，
须有些不着紧的信物。
硬擎着你七尺之躯，
俺老先生看汝：

〔客〕看什么子？无过是酒色财气，人之本等哩。

〔吕〕你说是人之本等，
则见使酒的烂了肋肚，

〔客〕气呢？

〔吕〕使气的腆破胸脯，

〔客〕财呢？

〔吕〕急财的守着家兄，

Lü DONGBIN:

Why should you break my belt
And tear my dress like a beast,
Calling me a rustic fox of a Taoist priest?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

Ridiculous! Ridiculous! Even his gourd scarcely holds any medicine, but smells of wine.

Lü DONGBIN:

*(To the tune of **Dou'anchun**)*
You laugh at my gourd that holds wine
And bits and pieces of souvenirs of mine.
You'd better stand erect
And I'll tell your fortune in the Taoist line.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What fortune is there to tell? There is nothing but wine, sex, wealth and temper. They are the inherent traits of human beings.

Lü DONGBIN:

You regard them as the inherent traits of human beings, but
Wine will corrupt your bowels;

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What about temper?

Lü DONGBIN:

Bad temper will burst your breast.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What about wealth?

Lü DONGBIN:

Greed for wealth keeps man to gold all his life;



[客] 色呢？

[吕] 急色的守着院主。

【上小楼】

[吕] 这四般儿非亲者故，
四般儿为人造畜。

[客] 难道。人有了君臣，才是富贵；有儿女家小，才快活。都是酒色财气上来的，怎生住的手？

[吕] 你道是对面君臣，
一胞儿女，
帖肉妻夫。
则那一口气不遂了心，
来处来？

去从何处去？

俺替你愁，
俺替你想，

敢四般儿那时才住。

[客] 一会了先生一些阴阳昼夜不知。



CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What about sex?

Lü DONGBIN:

Lust for sex keeps man to his wife.

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Shangxiaolou)

Those four evils benefit man the least

And turn man into beast.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

It's hard to say. To serve the emperor brings wealth and distinction; to have a wife and children brings happiness. Wine, sex, wealth and temper are so essential that no one can tear himself away from them.

Lü DONGBIN:

You only care about your emperor,

About your children

And about your dearest wife.

Once you cease to breathe,

Where do you know you have come

And where do you know you will go?

I'm worrying for you

And thinking in your place

That nothing will leave a trace.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

In a minute, neither will you be able to tell *yang* from *yin* nor will you be able to tell day from night.



〔吕笑介〕你可知么？

【么】

问你个如何是毕月乌？

〔客〕月黑了就是。

〔吕〕如何是房日兔？

〔客想介〕醉了房儿里吐去。

〔吕〕你道如何是三更之午？

十月之余？

一刻之初？

〔客〕听他什么？只懂酒。

〔吕笑介〕

问着啊，

则是一班儿嘴秃速。

难道偏则我，

出家人有五行攒聚。

〔众瞧介〕包儿里是个磁瓦枕，打碎他的！



Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

And will you be able to tell?

(To the tune of Yao)

Can you tell me what is a crow in the month of Hyades?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

It comes out when the moon is darkened.

Lü DONGBIN:

What is a rabbit in the day of the Scorpius?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

(Think a while)

That's what you vomit in your room when you've got drunk.

Lü DONGBIN:

Tell me

What is the noon of midnight?

What is the leftover of October?

What is the beginning of an hour?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

Why are we listening to him? He's over-drunk.

Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

When I ask,

I ask mediocre people who are tongue-tied.

Is it true

That the priest alone is a man of pride?

CUSTOMERS AND ATTENDANT:

(Look at Lü Dongbin's parcel)

There is a porcelain pillow in his parcel. Let's break it to pieces.



〔吕〕怎碎的他啊？

〔客〕是什么生料，碎不的他？

【白鹤子】

〔吕〕是黄婆土筑了基，
放在偃月炉。

封固的是七般泥，
用坎离为药物。

〔客〕怎生下火？

【么】

〔吕〕扇风囊随鼓铸，
磁汞料写流珠。
烧的那粉红丹色样殊，
全不见枕根头一线儿丝痕路。

〔客笑介〕枕儿两头大窟窿，敢是害头风出气的？

【么】

〔吕〕这是按八风开地户，
凭二曜透天枢。

〔客〕到空空的亮。



Lü DONGBIN:

How on earth can you break it?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What is it made of that we cannot break it?

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Baihezi)

The mould is made of original clay,
Placed in the crescent-moon furnace,
Sealed with seven types of soil
And tempered with water and fire.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

How do you kindle the fire?

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Yao)

I apply the bellows to smelt the mould,
And turn the mercury into pellets of porcelain.
The pink pellets are of special tints.
The pillow thus made has no seams at either end.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

(Laugh)

In that case, the holes at pillow-ends are for you to relieve your headaches, aren't they?

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Yao)

This pillow stops the winds from reaching the earth,
And leans on the sun and the moon to reach the skies.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

Now you can gaze at the vacant brightness.



〔吕〕有甚的空笼样枕江山，
早则是连环套通心腑。

列位都来盹上一会么？

〔客〕寡汉睡的。

〔吕笑介〕到不寡哩。

【么】

半凹儿承姘女，
并枕的好妻夫。

〔客〕有甚好处？

〔吕〕好消息在其中，
但枕着都有个回心处。

〔客〕难道有这话？我们再也不信。

〔吕〕此处无缘，列位看官们请了。

【快活三】

不是俺袖青蛇胆气粗，
则是俺凭长啸海天孤。
则俺朗吟飞过洞庭湖，
度的是有缘人人何处？〔下〕





Lü DONGBIN:

What's vacant for me?
When I lay my head on the pillow,
By and by, the world is at one with my heart and soul.

Will you have a try at the pillow, gentlemen?

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

The pillow is for the bachelor.

Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

I don't think so.

(To the tune of Yao)

It supports the pretty maid
And makes good man and wife.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

What's the pillow good for?

Lü DONGBIN:

With good news to find,
The pillow helps the sleeper change his mind.

CUSTOMERS A AND B:

Is it possible? We don't believe it.

Lü DONGBIN:

You don't have the luck by fate. I must be off now.

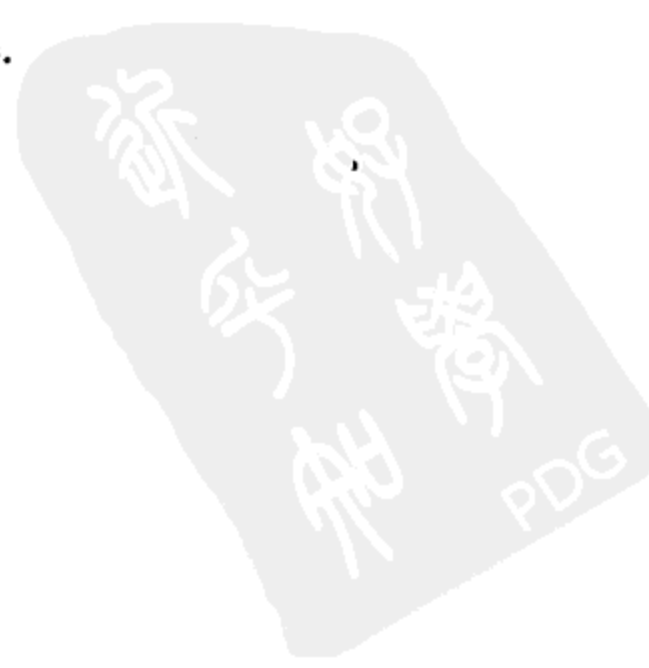
(To the tune of Kuaihuosan)

I'm daring not because I have a miraculous sword in my sleeve,
But because I sing, travel alone and never grieve.

I recite poems and fly across the Dongting Lake
To convert those who have the luck.

But who will take my advice? Who will take?

(Exit)



〔众笑介〕那先生被我们啰唆的去了，我们也去罢。相逢不饮空归去，洞口桃花也笑人。

〔众下〕

〔吕上〕好笑，好笑，一个大岳阳楼，无人可度，只索望西北方迤逦而去。

【鲍老儿】

这是你自来的辛苦，
一口气许了师父。
少不得逢人问渡，
遇主寻涂。
是不是口邈着道词，
一路的做鬼妆狐。

呀，一道青气，贯于燕之南，赵之北。不免捩转云头，顺风而去。

【满庭芳】

非关俺妄言祸福，
怎头直上非烟非雾，
脚踏下非楚非吴，
眼抹里这非赤也非乌？
莫不是青牛气函关直竖？
莫不是蜃楼气东海横铺？
没罗镜分金指度，
打向假随方认取。
呀，却原来是近清河，
邯郸全赵那边隅。





ALL:

(Laugh)

We've routed the gentleman out. Let's be on our way.

*If we meet and do not have a drink,/ The peach blossoms will
laugh at cave's brink.*

(Exeunt)

(Enter Lü Dongbin)

LÜ DONGBIN:

Ridiculous! Ridiculous! I've found no one to convert on this magnificent
Yueyang Pavilion. I have to wander northwestward.

*(To the tune of **Baolao'er**)*

It's all my fault

That I promised my master the other day.

Here I have to look for the ferry;

There I have to ask the way.

I have to read the Taoist rhyme

And do some miracles from time to time.

Alas, a deep-blue current of air is floating between the south of Yan and
the north of Zhao. Let me turn round the cloud and go with the wind.

*(To the tune of **Mantingfang**)*

I am not telling fortunes at will,

But how is it that neither smoke nor fog hangs overhead,

Neither Chu nor Wu is under my feet,

And what I see is neither black nor red?

Is it a current made by the black ox in Hanguan Pass?

Is it a current from a castle in the sky from the East Sea?

As I have no compass to point the direction,

I have to look round and adjust my ride.

Well,

I am approaching the Qing River,

With Handan of Zhao on the other side.



仔细看来，是邯郸地方。此中怎得有神仙气候也？

【耍孩儿】

史记上单注着会歌舞邯郸女，
俺则道几千年出不的个蔺相如。
却怎生祥云气罩定不寻俗，
满尘埃他别样通疏？
知他芦花明月人何处？
流水高山客有无？
俺到那有权术，
偷鞭影看他驴橛，
下探竿识得龙鱼。

【尾声】

欠一个蓬莱洞扫花人，
走一片邯郸城寻地主。
但是有缘人，
俺尽把神仙许。
则这热心儿，
普天下遇着他都姓吕。

一驾祥云下玉京，
临凡觅度扫花人。
大抵乾坤多一照，
免教人在暗中行。





Let me have a closer look. Here I am in Handan. How it is that an immortal seems to be nearby?

(To the tune of Shuanghai'er)

The Records of the Historian mentions the Handan dancers,
But there are no more heroes like Lin Xiangru for thousands of years.
How is it that auspicious clouds enshroud an extraordinary man?
Who lives in the human world with such good cheers?
Amid the reed catkins and the moonlight, where is the man?
In the hills and by the rills, is the man staying there?
I have a way to find out where he is,
By making his donkey stumble
And by testing whether he is fair and square.

(To the tune of Coda)

To look for a petal-sweeper for the Penglai Cave,
I've searched Handan to find a man.
If he is predestined in fate,
I'll make him an immortal if I can.
If you meet anyone who is so warm-hearted,
He must have come from Lü's clan.

**I ride auspicious clouds from the heavenly palace,
To look for a petal-sweeper in the world.
Whenever the world is brightly lit,
The people will not have groped and erred.**



第四出 入梦

〔丑上〕北地秋深带早寒，白头祖籍住邯郸。开张村务黄梁饭，是客都谈处世难。

小子在这赵州桥北开一个小小饭店，这店前店后田庄，半是范阳镇卢家的。他家往来歇脚，在我店中。也有远方客商，来此打火。目今点心时分，看有甚人来？

〔吕背褡裢枕，笑上〕一粒粟中藏世界，半升铛里煮乾坤。

贫道打从岳阳楼上，望见一缕青气，竟接邯郸。迤逦寻来，原来此气落在邯郸县赵州桥西卢生之宅。贫道即从人中观见卢生相貌，精奇古怪，真有半仙之分，便待引见而度之。则为此人沉障久深，心神

Scene Four **Entering the Dream**

(Enter Innkeeper)

INNKEEPER:

Cold reigns in late autumn in the north;/ My ancestors originated in Handan. I run an inn to serve millet meals;/ Every guest says that life is hard for man.

I've started a small inn to the north of Zhaozhou Bridge. Half of the land around the inn belongs to the family of Lu from the Fanyang township. Their family members all stop over at my inn when they come and go. Some travelling merchants also take a rest and have meals here. Now that it's time for refreshments, I'll wait and see if there are any guests today.

(Enter Lü Dongbin in laughter, with a parcel and a pillow on his back)

LÜ DONGBIN:

A millet contains the world in it;/ A cauldron boils the cosmos in it.

On the Yueyang Pavilion I saw a coil of deep-blue current leading to Handan. I've wandered all the way here, only to find that the current stops at Lu Sheng's house to the west of Zhaozhou Bridge in Handan County. I have scrutinized Lu Sheng's complexion and found them extraordinary. As Lu Sheng is predestined to be a demi-immortal, I'll go to

难定。因他学成文武之艺，未得售于帝王之家。以此落落其人，闷闷而已，此非口舌所能动也。〔想介〕则除是如此，如此，才有个醒发之处。俺先到店窝儿候他也。

【锁南枝】

青蛇气，
碧玉袍，
按下了云头离碧霄。

蓦过赵州桥，
蹬上这邯郸道。

〔内鸡鸣犬吠介〕

〔吕〕好一座村庄，犬吠鸡鸣，颇堪消遣。

〔丑见介〕客官请坐。

〔吕〕俺把担囊放，
尘榻高。

比那岳阳楼，
近多少？

〔丑〕道丈何来？

〔吕〕我乃回道人，借坐一会。

see him and convert him. However, he is deeply entangled in worldly burdens and has not made up his mind yet. As he is adept at both pen and sword but has not made any success in official career, he keeps aloof and feels depressed all the time. He is not to be moved with mere words.

(In meditation)

I shall act in such and such a way so that he will wake up to reality. I'll go to the inn and wait for him there.

(To the tune of Suonanzhi)

With the air of a miraculous sword
And in a jaded robe,
I lower the clouds and descend from the sky.
I cross the Zhaozhou Bridge
And step on the Handan Road.

(Crowing of roosters and barking of dogs within)

Lü DONGBIN:

What a relaxing village with its crowing roosters and barking dogs!

INNKEEPER:

(Greets Lü Dongbin)

Take a seat please, sir.

Lü DONGBIN:

I put my parcel down
And am well received.
The Yueyang Pavilion
Is farther away than I believed.

INNKEEPER:

May I ask where you are from?

Lü DONGBIN:

I'm a converting Taoist priest by the name of Hui. I'd like to sit for a while.



〔背介〕那人骑一匹青驴驹来也。〔嘿诀介〕那驴儿鸡儿犬儿和那尘世中一班人物，但是精灵合用的，都要依吾法旨听用，不得有违。敕！

【前腔】

〔生短裘鞭驴上〕风吹帽，
裘敝貂，
短秃促青驴鞦断了梢。

〔丑〕卢大官人。

〔生〕町瞳里一周遭，
那辘轴畔谁相叫？

原来邸舍中主人，我且坐一会去。驴系这椿橛上，吃些草。

〔丑〕知道了。

〔生见吕介〕轻提手，
当折腰。
但相逢，
这面儿好。

〔生〕店主人，这位老翁何处？





(Aside)

Here comes the man on a black donkey.

(Chants incantations)

The donkey, the roosters, the dogs and the people in the human world, all those who have body and soul, do obey my miraculous orders and never violate them. That's my edict!

(Enter Lu Sheng, dressed in a short fur coat and riding a donkey)

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

While the wind blows at my hat,
In an unbuttoned marten coat,
I whip the black donkey in a sharp note.

INNKEEPER:

Welcome, Master Lu.

LU SHENG:

With the fields at my heels,
Who's calling me by the waterwheels?

Oh, it's the innkeeper. I'll sit there for a while. Tether the donkey on the stump and let it eat some hay.

INNKEEPER:

Yes, I see.

LU SHENG:

(Greets Lü Dongbin)

I raise my hand
And make a bow.
When we meet,
I'll say hello now.

Where is the old man from, Innkeeper?



〔丑〕回回国来的。

〔生〕老翁容貌，不像回回。

〔吕〕贫道姓回，从岳阳楼过此。足下高姓？

〔生〕小子卢生是也。久闻的个岳阳楼，景致如何？

〔吕〕有岳阳楼记一篇，略表白几句你听：“夫巴陵胜状，在洞庭一湖。衔远山，吞长江。浩浩荡荡，横无际涯。朝晖夕阴，气象万千。此则岳阳楼之大观也。北通巫峡，南极潇湘。仙客骚人，多会于此。览物之情，得无异乎？若夫霏雨霏霏，连月不开；阴风怒号，浊浪排空；日星隐曜，山岳潜形；商旅不行，樯倾楫摧；薄暮冥冥，虎啸猿啼。登斯楼也，则有去国怀乡，忧谗畏讥，满目萧然，感极而悲者矣。至若春和景明，波澜不惊；上下天光，一碧万顷；沙鸥翔集，

INNKEEPER:

He's from a Muslim country.

LU SHENG:

He doesn't look like a Muslim.

Lü DONGBIN:

My surname is Hui. I've made my way from Yueyang Pavilion. May I ask what's your name?

LU SHENG:

I am Lu Sheng. I heard of Yueyang Pavilion long ago. How does it look like now?

Lü DONGBIN:

There is an essay entitled *Yueyang Pavilion*. I'll recite a few lines for you: "The finest sights of Baling are concentrated in the region of Lake Dongting. Dongting, nibbling at the distant hills and gulping down the Yangtze River, strikes beholders as vast and infinite, presenting a scene of boundless variety; and this is the superb view from Yueyang Pavilion. Since the lake is linked with Wu Gorge in the north and extends to the Xiao and Xiang rivers in the south, many exiles and wandering poets gather here, and their reactions to these sights vary greatly. During a period of incessant rain, when a spell of bad weather continues for more than a month, when louring winds bellow angrily, tumultuous waves hurl themselves against the sky, the sun and the stars hide their lights, hills and mountains disappear, merchants have to halt in their travels, masts collapse and oars splinter, the day darkens and the roars of tigers and howls of monkeys are heard. If men come to this pavilion with a longing for home in their hearts or nursing a feeling of bitterness because of taunts and slander, they may find the sight depressing and fall prey to agitation or despair. But during mild and bright spring weather, when the waves are unruffled and the



锦鳞游泳；岸芷汀兰，郁郁青青。而或长烟一空，皓月千里；浮光跃金，静影沈璧；渔歌互答，此乐何极。登斯楼也，则有心旷神怡，宠辱皆忘，把酒临风，其乐洋洋者矣。”

〔生〕好景致也！老翁记的恁熟，讽诵如流，可到了几次？

〔吕〕不多，三次了。有诗为证：朝游碧落暮苍梧，袖有青蛇胆气粗。三过岳阳人不识，朗吟飞过洞庭湖。

〔生〕老翁好吟咏也。则朝游碧落暮苍梧，苍梧在南楚地方；碧落在那里？

〔吕〕若论碧落路程，眼前便是。



azure translucence above and below stretches before your eyes for myriads of *li*, when the water-birds fly down to congregate on the sands and fish with scales like glimmering silk disport themselves in the water, when the iris and orchids on the banks grow luxuriant and green; or when dusk falls over this vast expanse and bright moon casts its light a thousand *li*, when the rolling waves glitter like gold and silent shadows in the water glimmer like jade, and the fishermen sing to each other for sheer joy, then men coming to this pavilion may feel complete freedom of heart and ease of spirit, forgetting every worldly gain or pain, to hold their wine-cups in the breeze in absolute elation, delighted with life.”*

LU SHENG:

What a magnificent sight! You have such a good memory that you can recite the essay so fluently. How many times have you been there?

Lü DONGBIN:

Not many times, just thrice. As it goes in a poem: *I visit Green Void in the morn and Cangwu in the eve;/ I'm bold since I've a miraculous sword up my sleeve./ I'm not known although I've passed Yueyang three times;/ I fly over Dongting Lake while I recite the rhymes.*

LU SHENG:

What a good poem you've recited. When you mention "I visit the Green Void in the morn and Cangwu in the eve", I know that Cangwu is in southern Chu, but where is the Green Void?

Lü DONGBIN:

The way to Green Void lies ahead of you.

* The translation in quotation marks is by courtesy of *Chinese Literature* (Issue No.10,1961).



〔生笑介〕老翁哄弄庄家哩。

〔吕〕这等，且说今年庄家如何？

〔生〕谢圣人在上，去秋庄家，一亩打七石八斗；今岁整整的打勾了九石九哩。

〔吕〕这等你受用哩。

〔生笑介〕可是受用了。〔生忽起，自看破裘叹介〕大丈夫生世不谐，而穷困如是乎？

〔吕〕观子肌肤极腴，体胖无恙，谈谐方畅，而叹穷困者，何也？

【前腔】

你身无恙，
生事饶，
旅舍里相逢如故交。
畅好的不妆乔，
正用欢言笑。
因何恨？
不自聊。
叹孤穷，
还待怎生好？



LU SHENG:

(Laughs)

You're hoaxing me.

Lü DONGBIN:

Then, how are things going with you?

LU SHENG:

Thanks to the gods above, I reaped 7.8 hectolitres last year and 9.9 hectolitres this year.

Lü DONGBIN:

That's enough for you.

LU SHENG:

(Laughs)

That's true.

(Rises to his feet suddenly, looks at his ragged fur-coat and sighs)

The lucky star is so against me that I'm badly off.

Lü DONGBIN:

From your appearance, I can see that you are tender-skinned, plump, healthy and talk in a pleasant mood, how can you be badly off?

(To the previous tune)

You enjoy good health

And reap a bumper yield.

We meet here like old friends.

In a good shape, you do not have to pretend;

You have every reason to be overjoyed.

Why are you annoyed

And do not think everything is perfect?

You sigh that you are badly off;

What is it that you expect?



〔生〕老翁说我谈谐得意，吾此苟生耳，何得意之有！

〔吕〕此而不得意，何等为得意乎？

〔生〕大丈夫当建功树名，出将入相，列鼎而食，选声而听，使宗族茂盛而家用肥饶，然后可以言得意也。

【前腔】

俺啊身游艺，
心计高，
试青紫当年如拾毛。
到如今啊俺三十算齐头，
尚走这田间道。
老翁，
有何畅，
叫俺心自聊？
你道俺未称穷，
还待怎生好？

〔生作痴介〕我一时困倦起来了。

〔丑〕想是饥乏了，小人炊黄粱为君一饭。

〔生〕待我榻上打个盹。〔睡介〕少个枕儿。

LU SHENG:

You say that I am in a happy mood, but where's the happy mood in my poor life?

Lü DONGBIN:

How can you be in a happy mood if you are not contented with your present state?

LU SHENG:

A gentleman must do merits to build a fame, be a high-ranking official or officer, have sumptuous meals, listen to choice music, have a big family and live a luxurious life. Only in this way can he be in a happy mood.

(To the previous tune)

I am learned

And aim high.

To gain a high position,

I was able to try.

By now, I am score and ten,

But still walk in the fields.

How can I not be annoyed

And think that everything is perfect?

Old man,

You said that I am not badly off,

But what is there for me to expect?

(In a state of doziness)

I am feeling dozy.

INNKEEPER:

You must be hungry. I'll prepare a meal of millet for you.

LU SHENG:

I'll take a nap on the bed.

(Goes to bed)

There's no pillow here.



〔吕〕卢生，卢生，你待要一生得意，我解囊中赠君一枕。〔开
囊取枕与生介〕

【尾声】

看你困中人无智把精神倒，

你枕此枕啊，

敢着你万事如期意气高。

店主人，你去，

煮黄粱要他美甘甘清睡个饱。〔吕下〕

〔生作睡不稳介〕

〔看枕介〕

【懒画眉】

这枕啊，不是藤穿刺绣锦编牙，

好则是玉切香雕体势佳。

呀，

原来是磁州烧出的莹无瑕，

却怎生两头漏出通明罅？

〔抹眼介〕

莫不是睡起瞢瞪眼挫花？

〔瞧介〕有光透着房子里，可是日光所映。

【前腔】

则这半间茅屋甚光华，

敢则是落日横穿一线斜？



Lü DONGBIN:

Lu Sheng, Lu Sheng, since you want to be in a happy mood all your life,
I'll open the parcel and get a pillow for you.

(Opens the parcel and gets the pillow for Lu Sheng)

(To the tune of Coda)

You feel dizzy and fall asleep.

When you sleep on this pillow,

Everything will be perfect all the time.

Well, Innkeeper, go and

Make the meal of millet while his dream is deep.

(Exit)

LU SHENG:

(Tosses and turns in bed)

(Inspects the pillow)

(To the tune of Lanhuamei)

This pillow is not made of silk or rattan,

But seems to be made of some sort of jade.

Oh,

It is of stainless porcelain from Cizhou!

However,

How can there be holes at both ends?

(Wipes his eyes)

My sight is blurred, I'm afraid.

(Looks round)

The light is penetrating into the room. Maybe it's the sunlight.

(To the previous tune)

This room of half a hut is so bright;

Is it the setting sunlight?



须不是俺神光错摸眼麻查。

待我起来瞧着，

〔起向鬼门惊介〕

缘何即留即渐的光明大，

待俺跳入壶中细看他。

〔做跳入枕中〕

〔枕落去〕

〔生转行介〕呀，怎生有这一条齐整的官道？〔行介〕好座红粉高墙。

【朝天子】

一径香风软碧沙，

粉墙低转处，

有人家。

门开在这里，待我蓦将进去。

闪铜环呀的转帘牙。

满庭花，

重重帘幕锁烟霞。

甚公侯贵衙，

甚公侯贵衙？

门帘以内，深院大宅了。门儿外瞧着：前面太湖石山子，堂上古画古琴，宝鼎铜雀，碧珊瑚，红地衣。



Maybe it's because of my blurred eyesight.

Let me get up to take a look.

(Gets out of bed and is astonished when he looks at the direction of the entrance)

Why is it growing large and bright?

I'll jump into the gourd and see what is inside.

(Jumps into the pillow)

(The pillow falls off)

LU SHENG:

(Turns to go)

Alas, how comes this straight highway?

(Walks on)

What a huge scarlet wall!

(To the tune of Chaotianzi)

I walk along a sandy path

And see a residence where the wall turns.

Since the gate is open here, I'll enter the house without invitation.

When the copper ring rolls the curtain,

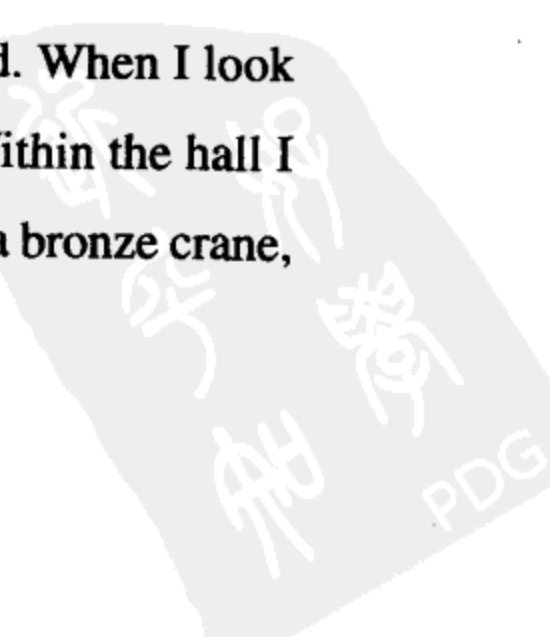
The flowers in the yard come into view,

Enshrouded in dense mist.

Who owns the residence, a duke or a marquis?

Who owns the residence, a duke or a marquis?

Inside the gate curtain is a big house with a spacious yard. When I look from outside, I can see a Taihu rockery in front of me. Within the hall I can see ancient paintings, ancient lutes, an incense tripod, a bronze crane, green corals and red carpets.



【前腔】

堂院清幽摆设的佳，
似有人朱户里，
小窗纱。

〔内叫介〕什么闲人行走？快拿！快拿！

〔生慌介〕急回廊怕的惹波查。

〔内叫介〕掩上门，快拿！快拿！

〔生慌介〕怎生好？门又闭了。且喜旁边有芙蓉一架，可以躲藏。

省喧哗，
如鱼失水旱莲花。
且低回自家，
且低回自家。

〔老旦上叫介〕那人何处也？小姐早上。

【不是路】

〔旦引贴上〕浪影空花，
陌上香魂不住家。
仙灵化，
差排门户粉胭搽。



(To the previous tune)

In the clean, quiet and well-furnished hall,
People seem to move behind the scarlet gate,
Behind the tiny windows.

VOICE WITHIN:

There's a stranger outside. Stop thief! Stop thief!

LU SHENG:

(Flurried)

I'll hurry down the corridor to avoid trouble.

VOICE WITHIN:

Shut the gate! Stop thief! Stop thief!

LU SHENG:

(In a panic)

What's to be done? The gate is tightly shut now. What luck that there is
a hibiscus trellis nearby, where I can hide myself.

I'll keep my mouth shut,
Like fish out of water and a lotus flower on land.
I'll have to linger here;
I'll have to linger here.

(Enter Maidservant)

MAIDSERVANT:

(Shouts)

Where's the man? Please come here, mistress.

(Enter Miss Cui, followed by Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

*(To the tune of **Bushilu**)*
Like visionary waves and blooms,
A country girl's soul wanders here and there.
Transformed by an immortal,
I stay in the house and make myself fair.



〔旦〕奴家清河崔氏之女是也。这两个：一个是老妈，一个是梅香。住这深院重门，未有夫君。谁到帘栊之下，走藏何处也？

〔老〕影交加，

那人啊，

多应躲在芙蓉架。

〔叫介〕那汉子还不出来！

拿去官司打折了他。

〔生作怕，慌上介〕休要拿，小生在此。

〔老〕甚么寒酸，还不低头！

〔捉生低头跪介〕

〔老〕俺这朱门下，

穷酸恁的无高下，

敢来行踏，

敢来行踏！

〔旦〕问汉子何方人氏？姓甚？名谁？

【前腔】

〔生〕黄卷生涯，

卢姓山东也是旧家。

闲停踏，

偶然迷误到尊衙。



I am from the family of Cui in Qinghe. This is my maidservant and that is Meixiang. I live in this huge residence and have not got married yet. Someone has entered the yard. Where can he be hiding now?

MAIDSERVANT:

In the thick leaves,
The man must be hiding behind the hibiscus trellis.

(Shouts)

Why don't you come out, man?

We'll have you arrested and your legs broken.

LU SHENG:

(Gets scared and comes out of hiding)

Don't have me arrested. Here I come.

MAIDSERVANT:

None of your fine words! Hang your head!

(Grasps Lu Sheng, makes him lower his head and kowtow)

In this noble residence,
We cannot tolerate your indecency.

How dare you!

How dare you!

MISS CUI:

Ask the man, where is his hometown, what is his first name and what is his last name.

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

A lover of books,
I'm from the family of Lu to the east of Mount Taihang.
On a leisurely walk,
I've entered your house by mistake.



〔旦〕家中有甚么人？

〔生〕自嗟呀，
也无妻小无爹妈，
长则是向孤灯守岁华。

〔老〕你没有妻子，在这里狗头狗脑。

〔生〕小生怎敢！

须详察，
书生老实知刑法，
敢行调达，
敢行调达！

〔旦〕叫那汉子抬头。

〔生〕不敢。

〔老〕小姐恕你，抬头。

〔生瞧介〕原来是小女郎。

〔老〕咄！

MISS CUI:

What are your family members?

LU SHENG:

Alas,

With no wife, no children, no parents,

I'm living alone all by myself.

MAIDSERVANT:

You have no wife, and so you're loafing here?

LU SHENG:

By no means!

You must know,

A scholar is honest and obeys the law.

How can I behave frivolously?

How can I behave frivolously?

MISS CUI:

Tell the man to raise his head.

LU SHENG:

I dare not.

MAIDSERVANT:

My mistress allows you to raise your head.

LU SHENG:

(Looks up)

Oh, what a pretty lass!

MAIDSERVANT:

How dare you!



【前腔】

〔旦〕俺世代荣华，
不是寻常百姓家。
你行奸诈，
无端窥窃上阳花。

〔生〕不敢。

〔旦〕梅香和俺
快行拿！

〔贴〕没有索子。

〔旦〕秋千索子上高悬挂。

〔贴〕没甚么行杖。

〔旦〕拍杖鼓的鞭儿和俺着实的挝。

〔生〕苦也！苦也！

〔老〕要饶么！

〔生〕可知道要饶。

〔老〕这等，汉子叩头告饶。

〔旦〕非奸即盗，天条一些去不的。老妈妈，则问他私休？官



MISS CUI:

(To the previous tune)

I'm from an age-old eminent family,

A family out of the ordinary.

How crafty you are

To peep at a distinguished flower of a lady!

LU SHENG:

I dare not.

MISS CUI:

Meixiang,

Have him arrested at once.

MEIXIANG:

I have no rope with me.

MISS CUI:

The swing ropes are hanging high.

MEIXIANG:

I have no cudgel with me.

MISS CUI:

Give him a hard beating with a drum-stick.

LU SHENG:

How miserable I am! How miserable!

MAIDSERVANT:

Beg for pardon!

LU SHENG:

I know that I'll beg for pardon.

MAIDSERVANT:

The man is kowtowing and begging for pardon.

MISS CUI:

Since he's here either for an illicit affair or for theft, he will not escape



休？私休不许他家去，收他在俺门下，成其夫妻；官休送他清河县去。

〔老对生介〕替你告饶了。小姐分付：官休？私休？私休，不许你家去，收留你在这里，与小姐成其夫妻；官休，送你清河县去。

〔生〕情愿私休。

〔老〕一让一个肯。〔回介〕禀小姐：秀才情愿私休。

〔旦〕这等，恕他起来。

〔老〕小姐放你起来。

〔生起笑〕

〔旦看羞介〕老妈，快下了帘儿，俺好看他不上。

酸寒煞，

你引他去回廊洗浴更衣罢，

再来回话，

再来回话。



punishment by the imperial law. Auntie, ask him whether he wants to settle the problem in private or in court. If he wants to settle it in private, he'll have to remain here and be my husband. If he wants to settle it in court, he'll be sent to Qinghe County.

MAIDSERVANT:

(To Lu Sheng)

I've begged pardon for you. The mistress says that if you want to settle the problem in private, you'll have to remain here and be her husband. If you want to settle it in court, you'll be sent to Qinghe County.

LU SHENG:

I'd like to settle it in private.

MAIDSERVANT:

He's ever ready to comply.

(To Miss Cui)

Mistress, the scholar is ready to settle the problem in private.

MISS CUI:

In that case, he is pardoned and allowed to rise to his feet.

MAIDSERVANT:

The mistress allows you to rise to your feet.

(Lu Sheng rises to his feet and laughs)

MISS CUI:

(Looks in an ashamed manner)

Auntie, lower the curtain at once so that I won't see him.

As he is dressed in indecency,

You'd better

Take him to a bath down the corridor.

Bring word to me by then!

Bring word to me by then!



〔老〕秀才，小姐分付：回廊外香水堂洗澡去。

〔生笑介〕好不措人，既在矮檐下，怎敢不低头！〔下〕

【前腔】

〔老引生上〕这香水浑家，
把俺涤爪修眉刷净了牙。

〔老〕便道是你浑家，还早哩。

相抬刮，
这阶前跪下手儿叉。

〔生拱立〕

〔老回话介〕禀小姐：那汉子洗浴更衣了。

〔旦〕那人怎么？

〔老〕尽风华，
衣冠济楚多文雅。

〔旦低问介〕内才怎的？



MAIDSERVANT:

Scholar, the mistress tells you to take a bath in the Fragrant Hall.

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

She's simply making me embarrassed.

Beneath the eaves of a shed, / I have to bow my head.

(Exit)

(Reenter Lu Sheng, ushered in by Maidservant)

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

My wife sent me to the Fragrant Hall,

To clean my hands, feet, brows, teeth and all.

MAIDSERVANT:

It's too early to speak of your wife.

Now that you've cleaned and shaved,

Kneel before the steps and cross your hands.

LU SHENG:

(Stands respectfully)

MAIDSERVANT:

(To Miss Cui)

Mistress, the man has taken a bath and changed his clothes.

MISS CUI:

What does he look like?

MAIDSERVANT:

In his intellectual brilliance,

He is now well dressed and shows elegance.

MISS CUI:

(In a low voice)

What about his inner ability?





〔老低笑介〕便是那话儿郎当，
你可也逗着他。

〔旦笑介〕休胡哈！
梅香卷帘。

〔贴卷帘介〕
〔旦〕俺盈盈暮雨，
快把这湘帘挂。

〔生跪〕
〔旦扶起介〕男儿膝下，
男儿膝下。

〔旦〕卢生，卢生，奴家怜君之贫，收留你为伴，无媒奈何？

〔老〕老身当媒，佳期休误。

〔内鼓乐〕

〔老赞拜介〕

〔贴〕新人新郎进合欢之酒。

〔旦把酒介〕

【贺新郎】

羞杀儿家，
早莲腮映来杯罍，





MAIDSERVANT:

(Giggles lightly)

Even if he is impotent,
You can play with him.

MISS CUI:

(Laughs)

None of your nonsense!

Roll up the curtain, Meixiang.

(Meixiang rolls up the curtain)

MISS CUI:

As I am eager for my first-night love,
Get the bamboo curtain ready at once.

(Lu Sheng kneels)

MISS CUI:

(Helps Lu Sheng to his feet)

A man has gold under his knees!

A man has gold under his knees!

Lu Sheng, Lu Sheng, I'll keep you company out of pity for your poverty,
but there must be a matchmaker. What is to be done?

MAIDSERVANT:

I'll act as your matchmaker so as not to delay your wedding date.

(Drumbeats and music within)

(Maid servant presides over the wedding ceremony)

MEIXIANG:

Man and wife drink the wedding wine.

MISS CUI:

(Holds the wine in her hands)

*(To the tune of **Hexinlang**)*

Shy and coy,

With the cup of wine,





骤生春满堂如画。
人潇洒，
为甚么闲步天台看晚霞？
拾的个阮郎门下。
低低笑，
轻轻哈，
逗着文君寡。
〔合〕云雨事，
休惊怕。

【前腔】

〔生〕三十无家，
邯郸县偶然存割，
坐酸寒衣衫藟苴。
妆聋哑，
谁承望颠倒英雄在绛纱，
无财帛单枪入马。
能粗细，
知高下，
你稳着心儿把。
〔合前〕
〔老旦〕好夫妻进洞房花烛。
〔行介〕





My face turns red and bright with joy.
Living an easy and natural life,
Why should I walk around like a fairy,
Only to meet my lover?
I grin,
I smile,
For I've become a wife.

ALL:

The bed scene at night
Is by no means a fright.

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

A bachelor at thirty years of age,
I happen to stop over in Handan,
In a shabby state.
Out of my expectation,
I would make love in bed —
A wretched man with a lovely mate.
It will grow;
It will thrust;
It will reach its goal.

ALL:

The bed scene at night
Is by no means a fright.

MAIDSERVANT:

Man and wife are ready to enter the bridal chamber.

(Leads the way)



【节节高】

〔众唱〕崔卢旧世家，
两韶华，
偶逢狭路通情话。
教洗刮，
没争差，
无喇塌。
帽儿抹的光光乍，
灯儿照的娇娇姹。
崔家原有旧根牙，
卢郎也不年高大。

【前腔】

天河犯客槎，
猛擒拿，
无媒织女容招嫁。
休计挂，
没嗟呀，
多喜洽。
檀郎蘸眼惊红乍，
美人带笑吹银蜡。
今宵同睡碧窗纱，
明朝看取香罗帕。

【尾声】

果然是，
春无价，
盼暮雨为云初下榻。





ALL:

(To the tune of Jiejiegao)

From the families of Cui and Lu,
Two youngsters
Met by chance and fell in love.
When she told him to bathe and shave,
He lost no time
To make himself clean and tidy.
His hat is shining bright
While the lamp sheds tender light.
Cui is from a house of great renown
And Lu is a man in his prime.

(To the previous tune)

On a raft to cross the Milky Way,
A man attracts the Weaver Star,
Who marries him on the same day.
Do not worry;
Do not sigh;
Joy reigns in the sky.
The man is amazed to see the beauty,
Who smiles and blows off the candlelight.
They sleep together tonight
And fetch the handkerchief when day is bright.

(To the tune of Coda)

Indeed,
Spring is the best
When they make love and take a rest.



[旦] 卢郎啊，
这是俺和你五百岁因缘到了家。

偶然高筑望夫台，
依依书生走入来。
今夜不须磁作枕，
轻抽玉臂枕郎腮。





MISS CUI:

Master Lu,

By fate we have met and wed.

I happen to make my wedding plan

When a scholar comes in sight.

Leave the porcelain pillow tonight

As my elbow will support my man.



第五出 招贤

【霜天晓角】

〔外萧嵩美髯上〕江南云树，
冷落青门庶。
萋萋芳草似怜予，
有路长安怎去？

【集唐】千秋万古共平原，生事萧条空掩门。试问酒旗歌板地，
有谁倾盖待王孙？

小生兰陵萧嵩，字一忠；梁武帝萧衍之苗裔，宋国公萧瑀之曾孙。只因岸谷迁移，沧桑变改。文武之道顿尽，琴书之兴犹存。且是美于须髯，仪形伟丽。有人相我，爵寿双高。这不在话下了。有个异姓兄弟，叫做裴光庭，乃金牙大总管封闻喜县公裴行俭之晚子，兼是



Scene Five **Recruiting Men of Worth**

(Enter Xiao Song with a manly beard)

XIAO SONG:

*(To the tune of **Shuangtianxiaojiao**)*

The clouds and trees down in the south
Ignore the heir of households of renown.
The verdant grass seems to feel for me,
But where is the way to the capital town?

*(In the pattern of **Collected Tang Poems**)* When vicissitudes of
life occur to all,/ No one would come to knock my door./ On lavish
pleasure-seeking ground,/ Who'd please the royal heirs that come
around?

I am Xiao Song from Lanling, alias Yizhong. I am a descendent of Xiao Yan, Emperor Wu of Liang, and the grand grandson of Xiao Yu, Duke of Song. With the passage of time, everything in the world has changed. The ancient practice of the pen and the sword has been entirely abandoned, but the ancient interest in music and art has been retained. As I am heavily built with a manly beard, I am predicted to enjoy a long life and high position. Let's drop this subject. I have a sworn brother by the name of Pei Guangting, youngest son of Pei Xingjian, Magistrate of Wenxi County appointed by the capital governor. He is the son-in-law of Wu

当朝武三思之女婿。古今典故，深所谳知。但此弟长有一点妒心，也是他平生毛病。几日不见，想待到来。

【前腔】

〔末裴光庭袖诏旨上〕插架奇书，
将相吾门户。
袖中天子诏贤书，
瞒着萧郎前赴。

自家裴光庭是也。从来饱学未遇，幸逢黄榜招贤。自揣可中状元，则怕萧兄夺取。心生一计，将这纸黄榜袖下了，不等他知，一径辞他前去。〔见介〕

〔外〕兄弟，我近来情怀耿耿，有失款迎。

〔末〕你兄弟心事匆匆，特来告别。

〔外〕呀，有何紧急至此？

〔末〕天大事都可说与仁兄，只这些是小弟机密事，不敢告闻。请了。

〔外〕贤弟，袖中簌簌之声，何物也？



Sansi, a high-ranking official at the present time. He is well versed in all the past and present anecdotes. However, he is a little bit jealous, a fault that goes with him all his life. As I haven't seen him for several days, I'm expecting him now.

(Enter Pei Guangting, with a copy of an imperial edict in his sleeves)

PEI GUANGTING:

(To the previous tune)

With precious books on my shelves,

I have blue blood in my vessels now.

With the imperial recruiting edict in my sleeves,

I'll go for exams without telling Xiao.

I, Pei Guangting, am well learned but have not achieved anything yet. It happens that there comes an imperial edict to recruit men of worth. I'm sure that I can become the number-one scholar, but Brother Xiao is my closest rival. An idea comes across my mind that I'll hide the imperial edict in my sleeves and go for the exam without revealing the truth to him.

(Greets Xiao Song)

XIAO SONG:

Brother, please excuse me for having not greeted you properly as I am not in a good mood these days.

PEI GUANGTING:

I've come to say good-bye to you as I'm going to take a sudden leave.

XIAO SONG:

Well, why are you leaving in such a hurry?

PEI GUANGTING:

I can tell you everything except this little privacy. Bye-bye.

XIAO SONG:

Brother, what's ruffling in your sleeves?



〔末〕没有甚的。

〔外扯看介〕是黄纸。

〔末笑介〕是本疏头。

〔外扯看介〕“奉天承运皇帝诏曰：天下文士，可于本年三月中旬，赴京殿试。朕亲点取，无迟。”呀，原来一纸招贤诏书，为何贤弟袖着？

〔末〕实不瞒兄，此榜文御史台行下本学，学里先生把与愚弟看。愚弟想来，别的罢了，仁兄才学盖世，听的黄榜招贤，定然要去。因此悄悄的袖了这诏旨，瞒兄往京，单填小弟名字销缴了。

〔外笑介〕可有此话？秀才无数，何在我一人？



PEI GUANGTING:

Nothing.

XIAO SONG:

(Grabs and inspects)

It's some yellow paper.

PEI GUANGTING:

(Laughs)

It's a Buddhist donation sheet.

XIAO SONG:

(Seizes the paper and reads)

"The divine emperor issues the following edict: The scholars all over the country may attend the imperial examination in the following middle March. I will decide the final result myself. The above edict must be publicised at once." Well, it's an imperial edict to recruit men of worth. Why are you hiding it in your sleeves?

PEI GUANGTING:

To tell you the truth, when the imperial edict to recruit men of worth arrived at our academy from the Ministry of Supervision, the teacher showed it to me. I thought about none but you because you are talented and will surely go for the examination. Therefore I hid the edict in my sleeves and would go to the capital city without telling you about it. I filled in my name only and sent in the application.

XIAO SONG:

(Smiles)

Is that possible? With so many scholars from all over the country, why do you just worry about me?



【皂罗袍】

〔末〕提起书生无数，
俺三言两句，
压倒其余。

那苍生一郡眼无珠，
则你春风八面人如玉。

哥，你兄弟才学，要中头名状元；你去之时，把我绰下第二了。

〔外笑介〕原来如此。

〔末〕嫦娥所爱，
无过两儒。
将来并比，
端然一输。

因此上裴航要闪住你萧郎路。

【前腔】

〔外〕不道状元难事，
但一缘二命，
未委何如？

你把招贤榜作寄私书，
遮天袖掩贤门路。

别的罢了，贤弟在场屋中，我笔尖可以饶让些。

俺把笔花高吐，
你真难展舒。





PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of Zaoluopao)

There are numerous scholars,
Whom I can beat
In a word or two.
All the others in the county are of no worth,
While my only rival is you.

Brother, you will become the number-one scholar as you are brilliant. If you go for the examination, I will become number two.

XIAO SONG:

(Laughs)

Now I see.

PEI GUANGTING:

For Chang'e the fairy,
There cannot be two lovers.
When two join in a match,
One will be the loser.
Therefore, I will block your way.

XIAO SONG:

(To the previous tune)

It's not easy to become a number-one scholar;
As fate may favour either of us,
Who knows what will happen?
You keep the edict to yourself,
To prevent others from knowing about it.

For one thing, I can at least make way for you in the examination.

If I bring my talent into full play,
You are none of my rival.



俺把笔尖低举，
随君扫除。
便金阶对策也好商量做。

〔末〕这等，多承了！店中饮一杯状元红去。

【尾声】

〔外〕状元红吸不尽两单壶，
俺和你双双出马长安路。
兄弟啊，
则这些时把月宫花谈笑取。

王孙公子不豪奢，
雪案萤窗守岁华。
但是学成文武艺，
都堪货与帝王家。



If I do not bring my talent into full play,
You can still be my rival.
I'll even give way on the final contest day.

PEI GUANGTING:

In that case, thank you for your kindness! Let's have a drink of Laurel Red at the inn.

XIAO SONG:

(To the tune of Coda)

Before we finish two kettles of wine,
We'll go to Chang'an the capital town.

Brother,

The laurel will be either yours or mine.

**Young scholars live a simple way of life
To study classics in weathers hot and cold.
When they have mastered arts of pen and sword,
They serve the emperor with hearts of gold.**



第六出 赠试

【绕池游】

〔旦上〕偶然心上，
做尽风流样，
懒妆成又假人半晌。

〔老、贴笑上〕营勾了腰肢，
通笼绣帐，
听得来愁人夜长。

【丑奴儿】

〔旦〕红围粉簇清幽路，那得人游？

〔老〕天与风流，有客窥帘动玉钩。

〔贴〕探香觅翠芙蓉架，官了私休。





Scene Six

Funding for the Imperial Examination

(Enter Miss Cui)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Raochiyou)

To please my sweetheart
I've done my best to give and take
And stay by his side when I wake.

(Enter Maidservant and Meixiang in smiles)

MAIDSERVANT, MEIXIANG:

The man and wife embrace each other
In bed in the dim light.
What an enticing night!

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Chounu'er)

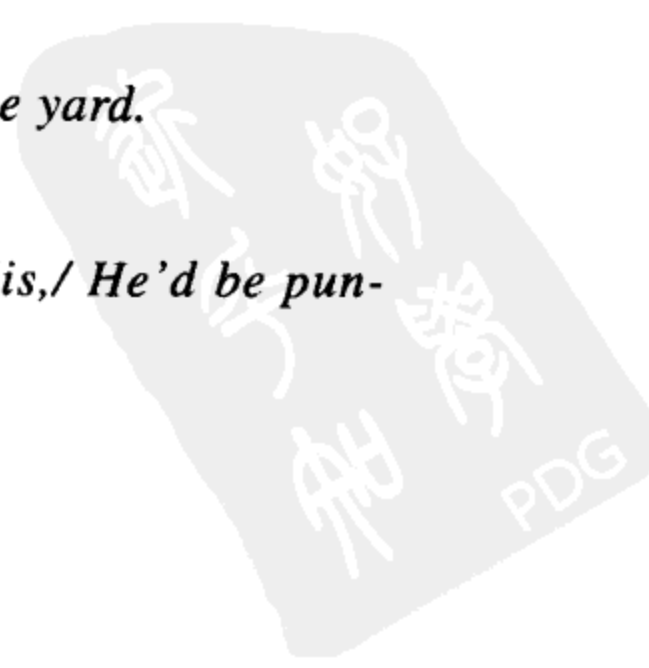
*Within scarlet walls with red blooms and quiet paths,/ Visitors
seldom arrive.*

MAIDSERVANT:

With heavenly bliss,/ A stranger trespassed the yard.

MEIXIANG:

*When we found him behind the hibiscus trellis,/ He'd be pun-
ished in private or in court.*



[合] 此处人留，蝶梦迷花正起头。

[老] 姐姐，天上吊下一个卢郎。

[贴] 不是吊下卢郎，是个驴郎。

[旦] 蠢丫头，说出本相。思想起我家七辈无白衣女婿，要打发他应举，你道如何？

[老] 好哩，姐夫得官回，你做夫人了。

【卜算子】

[生上] 长宵清话长，

广被风情广。

似笑如颦在画堂。

费尽佳人想。

[见介]

[旦] 卢郎，【集唐】你不美名公乐此身，

[生] 这风光别似武陵春。

[旦] 百花仙酝能留客，

MAIDSERVANT, MEIXIANG:

Now that he stays here,/ He's in ecstasy with his wife.

MAIDSERVANT:

Sister, a Master Lu dropped from the sky.

MEIXIANG:

Not a Master Lu but a Master Donkey dropped from the sky.

MISS CUI:

You silly maids! You are telling the naked truth. As my family has not accepted a son-in-law without office for seven generations, I'll send him to attend the imperial examinations. What do you think about it?

MAIDSERVANT:

Wonderful! When he comes into office, you will become a distinguished lady.

(Enter Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

*(To the tune of **Busuanzi**)*

A long chat goes with a long night;

A broad love goes with a broad quilt.

A beauty graceful and coy

Fills me with great joy.

(Lu Sheng and Miss Cui greet each other)

MISS CUI:

Master Lu,

*(In the pattern of **Collected Tang Poems**)*

You enjoy your life ignoring fame,

LU SHENG:

As I enjoy Utopian life here best.

MISS CUI:

With flower-brewed wine to entertain the guest,



〔生〕一面红妆恼煞人。

〔旦〕卢郎，自招你在此，成了夫妇。和你朝欢暮乐，百纵千随，真人间得意之事也。但我家七辈无白衣女婿，你功名之兴，却是何如？

〔生〕不欺娘子说：小生书史虽然得读，儒冠误了多年。今日天缘，现成受用，功名二字，再也休提。

〔旦〕咳，秀才家好说这话。且问你会过几场来。

【朱奴儿】

〔生〕我也忘记起春秋几场，
则翰林苑不看文章。
没气力头白功名纸半张，
直那等豪门贵党。

〔合〕高名望，
时来运当，
平白地为卿相。

〔旦〕说豪门贵党，也怪不的他。则你交游不多，才名未广，以致淹迟。奴家四门亲戚，多在要津，你去长安，都须拜在门下。

LU SHENG:

I have a fairy beauty to my claim.

MISS CUI:

Master Lu, since I married you here, we've become man and wife. By enjoying ourselves day and night to the best of our hearts' content, we have tasted all the pleasures of human life. However, as my family has not accepted a son-in-law without office for seven generations, what do you think of your official career?

LU SHENG:

To tell you the truth, I've read all the classics but haven't made much progress in these years. Now that we are living a happy life by heavenly bliss, I won't care about an official career.

MISS CUI:

Alas, how can a scholar talk like this? May I ask how many examinations you have attended?

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Zhunu'er)

I have forgotten how many exams I attended,

But the examiners never mind what I write.

All those who are at the top of the list

Are from families of wealth and might.

ALL:

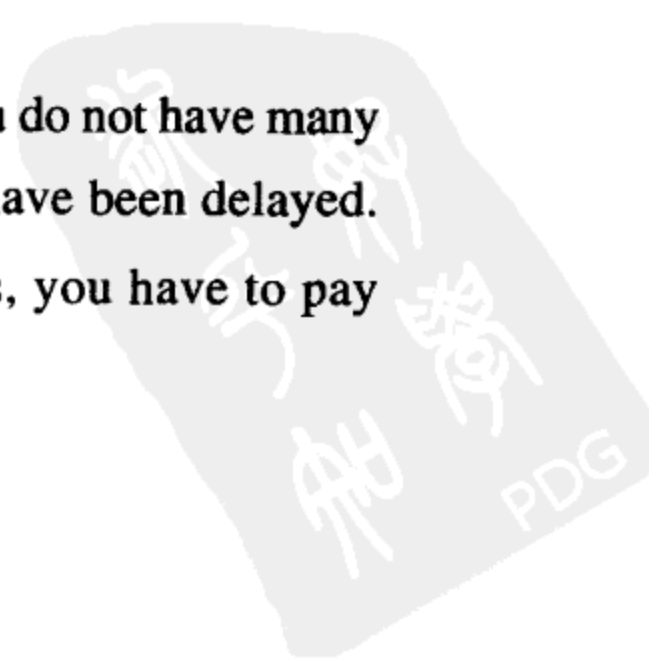
Fame and name

Come at the right time.

The prime minister will be to your claim.

MISS CUI:

Families of wealth and might are not to blame. As you do not have many connections and you have not achieved fame, you have been delayed. Now that most of my relatives are in key positions, you have to pay respects to them when you arrive in Chang'an.



〔生〕领教了。

〔旦〕还一件来，公门要路，能勾容易近他？奴家再着一家兄相帮引进，取状元如反掌耳。

〔生〕令兄有这样行止？

〔旦〕从来如此了。

【前腔】

〔旦〕有家兄打圆就方，

非奴家数白论黄。

少了他啊，

紫阁金门路渺茫，

上天梯有了他气长。

〔合前〕

〔生〕这等，小生到不曾拜得令兄。

〔旦〕你道家兄是谁？家兄者，钱也。奴家所有金钱，尽你前途贿赂。



LU SHENG:

Yes, I see.

MISS CUI:

Besides, it's by no means easy to contact these high officials. With the help of my elder brother, you can easily become the number-one scholar.

LU SHENG:

Will he do that for me?

MISS CUI:

No problem.

(To the previous tune)

As long as you have the help of my brother,
I do not care about silver or gold.

But for him,

You can hardly succeed;
He will help you beat the others.

ALL:

Fame and name
Come at the right time.
The prime minister will be to your claim.

LU SHENG:

But I haven't met your brother yet.

MISS CUI:

Who do you think my brother is? He is money. All my money is at your disposal to do the bribery.



〔生笑介〕原来如此，感谢娘子厚意。听的黄榜招贤，尽把所赠金资，引动朝贵，则小生之文字字珠玉矣。

〔旦〕正当如此。梅香，取酒送行。

【雁来红】

〔送酒介〕宽金盏泻杜康，

紧班骓送陆郎。

他无言觑定把杯儿倘，

再四重斟上，

怕湿罗衫这泪几行。

〔合〕凝眸望，

开科这场，

但泥金早传唱。

【前腔】

〔生〕葫芦提田舍郎，

仗娇妻有志纲，

赠家兄送上黄金榜。

握手轻难放，

少别成名恩爱长。





LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

Now I see. Thank you for your kindness. To answer for the imperial edict to recruit men of worth, I'll spend all the money you give me to induce the top officials and every word in my essays will become a pearl in their eyes.

MISS CUI:

That's it. Meixiang, fetch some wine to see my man off.

(Hands over the wine)

(To the tune of Yanlaihong)

Fill the golden cup with wine

And rein the horse to see off my man.

Without a word he looks at the cup and drains it;

Then he refills the cup

And retains his tears at best he can.

ALL:

With straining eyes

We shall expect your success

And hope for good news without surprise.

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

A muddle-headed country scholar

Wins a wife with ambition,

Who gives me gold for my fame.

I hold her hands for a long time,

To take a short leave and win a good name.



〔合前〕

【尾声】

〔旦拜介〕指定衣錦还乡似阮郎，
此去啊，
走章台再休似以前胡撞，
俺留着这一对画不了的愁眉待张敞。

开元天子重贤才，
开元通宝是钱财。
若道文章空使得，
状元曾值几文来？





ALL:

With straining eyes
We shall expect your success
And hope for good news without surprise.

MISS CUI:

(Makes a bow)

(To the tune of Coda)

You will come back as a renowned spouse;

During this trip,

Be sure not to trespass any place
And I'll be expecting you with knitted brows.

While the emperor values men of worth,

What really values is wealth.

If essays can be done by stealth,

How much is a number-one scholar worth?



第七出 夺元

【夜行船】

〔净宇文融上〕宇文后魏留支派，
犹余霸气遭逢圣代。

号令三台，
权衡十宰，
又领着文场气概。

【集唐】犹得三朝托后车，普将雷雨发萌芽。中原骏马搜求尽，
谁道门生隔绛纱？

下官乃唐朝左仆射兼检括天下租庸使宇文融是也。性喜奸谄，材能进奉。日昨黄榜招贤，圣人可怜见，着下官看卷进呈。思想一生，专以迎合朝廷，取媚权贵。卷子中间有个兰陵萧嵩，奇才，奇才。虽是梁武帝之后，异代君臣，管我不着；又有个闻喜裴光庭，正是前宰



Scene Seven **Rivalling for the Number-One Scholar**

(Enter Yuwen Rong)

YUWEN RONG:

(To the tune of Yexingchuan)

Yuwen is a family from Late Wei,
With power and energy in its heyday.
With a commanding power
At the royal court,
I stand at the head of ministers.

*(In the pattern of Collected Tang Poems) With ancestor's power
at my back,/ I have made another fresh start./ With the best scholars
at my heels,/ I have followers in every craft and art.*

I am Yuwen Rong, Left Prime Minister and inspector of National Taxation in the Tang Dynasty. I am fond of slanders and good at bribery. When the imperial edict was issued to recruit men of worth, I was entrusted by His Majesty to mark the papers and recommend the best scholars. All my life I have catered to the taste of His Majesty and ingratiated myself to those in power. I've found among the papers one written by a Xiao Song from Lanling County, who is indeed a rare talent, a rare talent. Although he is the descendent of Emperor Wu of Liang, the ruler of the former dynasty, I do not care so much about it. There is also a Pei Guangting from Wenxi County, son of the late prime minister Pei Xingjian

相裴行俭之子，武三思之婿，才品次些，我要取他做个头名，萧嵩第二。早已进呈，未知圣意若何？早晚近侍到来，可以漏泄圣意。左右，门外伺候。

【粉蝶儿】

〔老旦高力士上〕绿满宫槐，
随意到棘闹帘外。

〔丑报介〕司礼监高公公到门。

〔净慌走，接介〕

〔净〕早知老公公俯临，下官礼合远接。

〔老〕老先过谦了，日下看卷费神思哩。

〔净〕正要修一密启，禀问老公公：未知御意进呈第一可点了谁？

〔老〕有点了。

〔净〕是裴光庭么？



and son-in-law of Wu Sansi. He is not so talented as Xiao Song, but I'll rank him as the first and Xiao Song as the second. I've submitted my proposal to His Majesty, but I don't know what His Majesty thinks about it. When the eunuch arrives, I'll try to find out what His Majesty thinks. Attendants, wait outside the door.

(Enter Eunuch Gao)

EUNUCH GAO:

(To the tune of Fendie'er)

From the palace the green scholar-tree leaves
Reach the examination-room eaves.

ATTENDANT:

(Announces)

Here comes Eunuch Gao, the Ritual Missionary.

YUWEN RONG:

(Hurries to greet Eunuch Gao)

If I had known about your arrival, I would have gone a long way to meet you.

EUNUCH GAO:

It's so kind of you, Your Excellency. I know that you have been busy marking the papers these days.

YUWEN RONG:

I'm just going to submit a secret report to you. May I ask whether His Majesty has decided on the Number-One Scholar?

EUNUCH GAO:

Yes.

YUWEN RONG:

Is it Pei Guangting?



〔老〕还早。

〔净〕是萧嵩？

〔老〕再报来。

〔净〕后面姓名，下官都不记怀了。

〔老〕可知道，

【一封书】

都经御览裁，

看上了山东卢秀才。

〔净想介〕山东卢秀才？

〔老〕名唤卢生。

知他甚手策，

动龙颜含笑孩？

〔净〕老公公，看见当真点了他？

〔老〕亲看御笔题红在，

待翦宫袍赐绿来。

〔合〕御筵排，

榜花开，

也是他际会风云直上台。





EUNUCH GAO:

No.

YUWEN RONG:

Is it Xiao Song?

EUNUCH GAO:

Mention some other name.

YUWEN RONG:

I don't remember the names after them.

EUNUCH GAO:

You know,

(To the tune of Yifengshu)

His Majesty has read the papers all along

And decided on Scholar Lu from the east of Mt. Taihang.

YUWEN RONG:

(Thinks hard)

Scholar Lu from the east of Mt. Taihang?

EUNUCH GAO:

His name is Lu Sheng.

I don't know how his essay

Has pleased His Majesty.

YUWEN RONG:

Eunuch Gao, has His Majesty indeed decided on Lu Sheng?

EUNUCH GAO:

I saw His Majesty write on his paper

And Lu Sheng will soon be bestowed the costume.

ALL:

To attend the royal banquet

As the Number One,

He beat the others and won.



〔净〕奇哉，奇哉。这等，裴、萧二人第几？

〔老〕萧第二，裴第三。

【前腔】

〔净背介〕卷首定萧、裴，
怎到的寒卢那狗才？

〔回介〕是他命运该，
遇重瞳着眼抬。

〔老〕老先不知，也非万岁爷一人主裁。他与满朝勋贵相知，都保他文才第一。便是本监，也看见他字字端楷哩。

〔净〕可知道了，
他的书中有路能分拍，
则道俺眼内无珠做总裁。

〔合前〕

〔老〕告别了。明日老先陪宴。



YUWEN RONG:

How strange, how strange! Then, where do Pei and Xiao rank?

EUNUCH GAO:

Xiao ranks the second and Pei ranks the third.

YUWEN RONG:

(To the previous tune)

(Aside)

I have decided on Xiao and Pei,

But how does it fall on the bastard Lu?

(To Eunuch Gao)

It is indeed by fate

That he is held in esteem by the great.

EUNUCH GAO:

You know, it's not His Majesty's views alone. Lu Sheng has got acquainted with all the powerful men in the court and they all say that he is the most talented. I myself have seen his graceful calligraphy.

YUWEN RONG:

I see.

He knows how to push forward his essay,

But I am blind in the broad day.

ALL:

To attend the royal banquet

As the Number One,

He beat the others and won.

EUNUCH GAO:

I must take leave now. Your Excellency is to attend the Royal Banquet tomorrow.



【尾声】

杏园红你知贡举的须陪待。

〔净〕还要请老公公主席才是。

〔老笑介〕我带上了穿宫入殿牌，
则助的你外面的官儿御道上簪花那一声采。〔下〕

〔宇文吊场〕可笑，可笑，咱看定了的状元，谁想那卢生以钻刺
抢去了，偏不钻刺于我！

如此朝纲把握难，
不容怒发不冲冠。
则这黄金买身贵，
不用文章中试官。



(To the tune of Coda)

In the royal garden you'll help to entertain.

YUWEN RONG:

Of course you'll sit at the front.

EUNUCH GAO:

(Smiles)

I can walk around at the royal court,

Able to assist those who'd like to win fame and name.

(Exit)

YUWEN RONG:

(To himself)

How ridiculous, how ridiculous! I've decided on a number-one scholar, but Lu Sheng has manoeuvred to grab the title and he didn't even curry favour with me!

**The royal court can hardly be controlled
And I am getting angry from day to day.
If high positions can be bought with gold,
He who ranks high needn't write an essay.**

第八出 骄宴

〔丑厨役，头巾插花上〕小子光禄寺厨役，三百名中第一。刀砧使得精细，作料下得稳实。馒头摩的光泛，线面打得条直。千层起的泼松，八珍配得整饬。何止五肉七菜，无非吃一看十。吃了的眠思梦想，但看的都垂涎咽液。休道三阁下堂餐，便是六宫中也是我小子尚食。这开元皇帝最喜我葱花灌肠，太真娘娘最喜我椒风扁食。止因御汤里抓下个虱子，被堂上官打下小子革役。亏的过房外甥营救，叫小子依旧更名上直。

〔内问介〕外甥是谁？

〔丑〕是当今第一名小唱，在高公公名下秉笔，秉笔。你问我今日为何头上插花？来做新进士琼林宴席。前路是半实半空案果，后面



Scene Eight **Royal Banquet**

(Enter the Royal Chef, wearing a kerchief and a flower on his head)

ROYAL CHEF:

I am chef for the Royal Banquet Hall, number one among the 300 chefs. I can cut thin slices and use right seasonings. I can knead glossy steamed bread and make straight noodles. I can also make light pastry and tasty delicacies. So many dishes are served at a banquet that they are more for sight than for taste. The taste of my dishes makes people enticed and the sight of my dishes makes their mouths water. I have cooked not only for the ministers but also for the royal house. Emperor Xuanzong is most fond of my green-onion sausage and Empress Taizhen is most fond of my palace-style dumplings. As a louse was found in a soup for the royal house, I was cudgelled by my superior and dismissed from service. Thanks to the help of my adopted nephew, I was re-employed under a false name.

VOICE WITHIN:

Who is your nephew?

ROYAL CHEF:

He is the most popular ballad-singer in the present day, writing ballads under Eunuch Gao's name. If you ask me why I wear a flower on my head today, I'll tell you that I am here to prepare the royal banquet for the



是带熟带生品食。那里有寿祭牛肉？那里讨宣州大栗？一碟菜五六根黄芥，半瓶酒三两盏醋滴。官厨饭一两匙儿，边傍放着些半夏法制。

〔内问介〕为甚来？

〔丑〕你不知秀才们一个个饱病难医，待与他燥些脾胃。说便说了，今日天开文运，新状元赐宴曲江池。圣旨就着考试官宇文老爷陪宴，前面头踏早来也。

【谒金门·前】

〔净上〕风云定，
恩赐御筵华盛。
我也曾吃红绫春宴饼，
年华堪自省。

我宇文融，今日曲江陪宴。可奈新科状元，乃是落后之卷，相见好没意儿。后生意气，且自趋奉他一二。叫光禄寺祇候人，筵宴可齐？



successful scholars in the imperial examinations. First I'll serve light refreshments of all sorts to go with the wine, then I'll serve dishes of various kinds. There are no such things as ritual beef or Xuanzhou chestnuts. In one dish there are half a dozen of shepherd's purse; half a bottle of wine contains some vinegar. A spoonful or two of rice will go with regular tubers of pinellia.

VOICE WITHIN:

Why?

ROYAL CHEF:

You know, as these scholars have suffered from starvation, the tubers of pinellia are good for their stomachs. So much for the random talk. There is a royal banquet today to be held beside the Qujiang Pool for the new Number-One Scholar. The imperial edict goes that the examiner Master Yuwen will be the acting host. Here come the guards of honour.

(Enter Yuwen Rong)

YUWEN RONG:

(To the tune of Yejinmen, Part One)

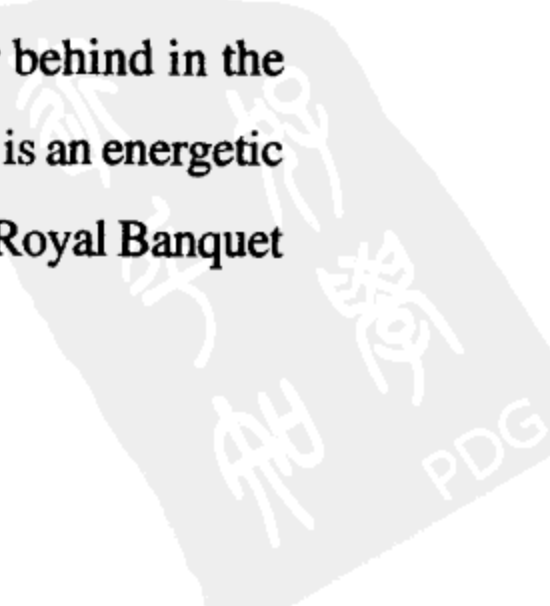
When the contest is over,

His Majesty offers a royal banquet.

I was once bestowed the royal banquet cake,

But now I can only sigh for old time's sake.

I, Yuwen Rong, am to be the acting host for the royal banquet at the Qujiang Pool. As the new Number-One Scholar ranks far behind in the examinations, I am not in a good mood to meet him. Since he is an energetic young man, I shall be flattering him a bit. Ask the chef in the Royal Banquet Hall whether the banquet is ready.



[丑叩头介] 都齐了，只有教坊司未到。

[旦众上] 折桂场中开院本，插花筵上唤官身。禀老爷：女妓叩头。

[净] 报名来。

[贴] 奴家珠帘秀。

[旦] 奴家花娇秀。

[老旦] 我叫做锅边秀。

[净] 怎生这般一个名字？

[丑] 小的知他命名的意儿，妓女们琵琶过手曲过喉，家常饭到只伸掌。只这名叫做锅边秀，便是小的光禄寺厨役灶下养。

[净] 原来是个火头哩。

[丑] 着了，来和老爷退火。

[净] 哇！状元已到，妓女们远远迎接。



ROYAL CHEF:

(On his knees)

Everything is ready except that the Troupe of Court Music has not arrived yet.

(Enter the singers)

SINGERS:

Essays are written in the imperial exam;/ Singers are summoned at the royal banquet.

Your Excellency, the singers are kowtowing to you.

YUWEN RONG:

Tell me your names.

SINGER A:

My name is Curtain Show.

SINGER B:

My name is Flower Show.

SINGER C:

My name is Cauldron Show.

YUWEN RONG:

How can you be named like this?

ROYAL CHEF:

I know what her name means. After song and dance, these singers just eat ready food. However, this Cauldron Show serves in the kitchen of the Royal Banquet Hall.

YUWEN RONG:

In that case, she is a cook.

ROYAL CHEF:

That's it. She'll come and soothe Your Excellency.

YUWEN RONG:

Nonsense! Here comes the Number-One Scholar. You singers greet him in the distance.



【谒金门·后】

〔生、外、末引队子上〕走马御街游趁，
雁塔标题名姓。

〔旦、众接介〕教坊司女妓们迎接状元。

〔生、众笑介〕起来，起来。

〔生〕劳动你多娇来直应，
绕花莺燕请。

〔净迎介〕列位状元请进。

〔拜介〕应图求骏马，惊代得麒麟。白日来深殿，青云满后尘。

〔净〕恭喜三公高才及第，老夫不胜荣仰。

〔生〕叨蒙圣恩。

〔外、末〕皆老师相进呈之力。

(Enter Lu Sheng, Xiao Song and Pei Guangting, followed by guards of honour)

LU SHENG, XIAO SONG, PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of Yejinmen, Part Two)

We parade the street to show our power
And engrave our names on the city tower.

SINGERS:

(Greet the scholars)

Singers from the Troupe of Court Music are waiting here to greet the Number-One Scholar.

Lu Sheng, Xiao Song, Pei Guangting:

(Laugh)

Rise to your feet. Rise to your feet.

LU SHENG:

Thank you for your attendance,
With your song and dance.

YUWEN RONG:

(Greets the scholars)

Come in please, distinguished scholars.

(Makes a bow)

*In search for stalwart steeds,/ We obtain kylins indeed./ When
you come to the palace by day,/ Your brilliance is at full play.*

Congratulations on your great success. I admire you from the bottom of my heart.

LU SHENG:

I owe all my success to the grace of His Majesty.

XIAO SONG, PEI GUANGTING:

We owe all our success to your promotion.



〔净〕御赐曲江喜筵，真盛事也。

〔生〕敢问往年直宴，止是几个老倒乐工，今日何当妙选？

〔净〕今日状元乃圣天子钦取，以此加意而来。

〔生〕原来如此。

〔净〕看酒。

〔丑〕花开上林苑，酒对曲江池。

【降黄龙】

〔净送酒介〕天上文星，

唱好是金殿云程，

玉堂风景。

皇封御酒，

玳筵中如醉，

日边红杏。

〔生〕峥嵘，

想像平生，

这一举成名天幸。



YUWEN RONG:

The royal banquet is indeed a grand fete.

LU SHENG:

As I know there were only some elderly musicians at the banquet in the past, how is it that there are such beauties this time?

YUWEN RONG:

As His Majesty decided on the Number-One Scholar by himself this time, I have paid special attention to the selection.

LU SHENG:

Oh, I see.

YUWEN RONG:

Serve wine!

ROYAL CHEF:

Flowers blossom within palace wall/ While wine is served in the banquet hall.

YUWEN RONG:

(presents wine)

(To the tune of Xianghuanglong)

The Civil Star in the sky

Shines bright in the royal court

And rises high.

The palace wine

At the royal banquet

Makes the scholars' faces ashine.

LU SHENG:

After all the strife

In my life,

I've won my fame at heaven's bliss.



〔外、末〕，欢娱酒淹衫袖，
帽斜花胜。

【前腔】

〔众旦〕难明，
天若无情，
怎折桂人来，
嫦娥送影？
人间清兴，
是红裙怎不把，
绿衣郎敬？
低声，
我待侍枕银屏，
迤逗的状元红并。
但留名平康到处，
也堪题咏。

〔净〕状元，这妮子要请状元……老夫为媒。

〔生笑介〕

〔净〕官妓，状元处乞珠玉。

〔生〕使得，题向那里？

〔贴〕奴家有个红汗巾儿在此。



XIAO SONG, PEI GUANGTING:

Enjoy ourselves,
Drink the wine
And our demeanour is not fine.

SINGERS:

(To the previous tune)

Who knows!
If heaven does not have a feeling heart,
How can the laurel-holder come
And Chang'e the fairy queen take part?
In the elegant world,
How can the beauties restrain
From respecting scholars of fame?
Hush!
I'll make you happy in bed
And turn your face red.
To leave your name,
Even in a whorehouse
You can write a poem without shame.

YUWEN RONG:

Sir, as she is inviting you, ... I shall serve as the matchmaker.

(Lu Sheng laughs)

YUWEN RONG:

Singer, ask for a poem from the Number-One Scholar.

LU SHENG:

I'll do that. Where shall I write?

SINGER A:

I have a red handkerchief here.



〔生题诗〕

〔净表白介〕香飘醉墨粉红催，天子门生带笑来。自是玉皇亲判与，嫦娥不用老官媒。

〔众〕状元好染作也。

〔净〕则就中语句，有些奚落老夫哩。

〔外〕卢年兄未必有此。

〔末〕官妓再看酒。

【黄龙衮】

同登学士瀛，
满把琼浆领。
是虎为龙，
都是风云庆。
为谁奚落？
为谁僥幸？
绕雁塔，
共题名，
瞻清景。

〔扮报子上〕报，报，报，卢爷奉圣旨钦除翰林学士，兼知制





(Lu Sheng writes)

YUWEN RONG:

(Reads the poem)

The pretty maiden urges me to write,/ Here I am: His Majesty's student in smiles./ As His Majesty stands on my side,/ I do not need a matchmaker to find a wife.

ALL:

What a wonderful poem!

YUWEN RONG:

He seems to have used some phrases to scoff at me.

XIAO SONG:

Master Lu would not have done that.

PEI GUANGTING:

Singer, serve more wine.

*(To the tune of **Huanglonggun**)*

Together we rank high in the exam;

Together we drink nectar here.

To be a tiger or to be a dragon,

We share the honour alike.

Who is to be scoffed?

Who is to be lucky?

Together we tour the city tower,

Inscribe our names

And enjoy the grand sight.

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

Report, report, report! The imperial edict announces that Master Lu has



诰；萧爷、裴爷俱翰林院编修；着教坊司送归本院。

〔净〕恭喜了。

【前腔】

诗题翰墨清，
鐙撒雕鞍逞。
风暖笙歌，
笑语朱帘映。
生成济楚，
昂然端正。
便立在，
凤楼前，
人索称。

〔生、外、末揖上马介〕

【尾声】

〔净〕三公啊，
御楼高接着帽檐平，
撒靴尖走上头厅，
也不枉了你误春雷十年窗下等。

〔众下〕

〔净吊场笑介〕好笑，好笑，世间乃有卢生。中了状元，为因不出我门下，谈容高傲。我好趋奉他，嫦娥有意，老夫可以为媒，乞其





been appointed Master of the Royal Academy and Edict Drafter; Master Xiao and Master Pei have both been appointed Editors of the Royal Academy. Singers from the Troupe of Court Music are to accompany them to the Royal Academy.

YUWEN RONG:

Congratulations!

(To the previous tune)

He writes the poem in a good hand
And rides the horse in good command.
Song and music spread in warm spring breeze;
Talk and laughter cross the curtain at ease.
He has an upright figure,
Behaving in elegant ways.
When he stands
Before the pavilion,
He wins popular praise.

(Lu Sheng, Xiao Song and Pei Guangting mount horses)

YUWEN RONG:

Respected scholars,

(To the tune of Coda)

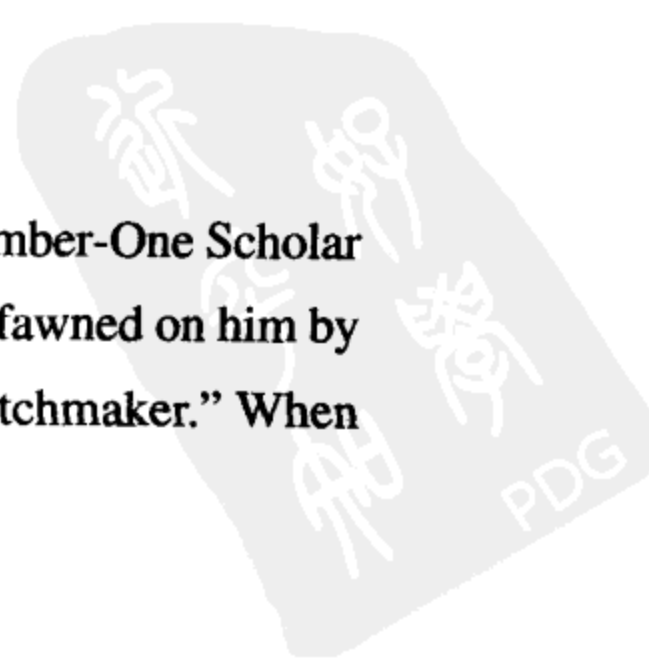
You shall approach the palace
And rank high in office —
A reward for your persistent efforts.

(Exeunt all except Yuwen Rong)

YUWEN RONG:

(Sneers)

Ridiculous, ridiculous! This Lu Sheng becomes the Number-One Scholar and behaves arrogantly because he is not my student. I fawned on him by saying, "As she is inviting you, I shall serve as the matchmaker." When



珠玉。他题诗第二句“天子门生带笑来”，明说不是我家门生，这也罢了；第四句“嫦娥不用老官媒”，啊啊，有这般一个老官媒不用么？待我想一计打发他。他如今新除，中了圣意，权待他知制诰有些破绽之时，寻个题目处置他。

书生白面好轻人，
只道文章稳立身。
直待朝中难站立，
始知世上有权臣。





he was asked to write a poem, the second line "*Here I am: His Majesty's student in smiles*" was an overt suggestion that he was not my student. Leave this line alone. Well, his fourth line went as far as to say, "*I do not need a matchmaker to find a wife.*" Didn't he want to use such a matchmaker as myself? I'll find some way to do away with him. As he has just been granted a title by the imperial edict, I'll pick bones when he makes mistakes in his function as the Edict Drafter.

**This young scholar puts on airs
And relies entirely on his essays.
Not until he meets difficult affairs
Will he know someone who betrays.**



第九出 虏动

【北点绛唇】

〔净、末扮番将相上〕沙塞茫茫，
天山直上，
三千丈。
龙虎班行，
出将还留相。

〔末〕吾乃吐蕃丞相悉那逻是也。

〔净〕吾乃吐蕃大将热龙莽是也。

〔合〕赞普升帐，在此伺候。

【前腔】

〔外番王引众上〕白草黄羊，
千庐万帐，
归吾掌。
气不降唐，
稳坐在泥金炕。

Scene Nine Tribal Invasion

(Enter Re Longmang and Xi Naluo)

RE LONGMAN, XI NALUO:

(To the tune of Nouthern Dianjiangchun)

The desert is immense

And Tianshan Mountain rises high —

Thirty thousand feet to the sky.

The dragon and tiger serve the king alike;

The general and the prime minister stand side by side.

XI NALUO:

I am Xi Naluo, the Tubo Prime Minister.

RE LONGMANG:

I am Re Longmang, the Tubo General.

XI NALUO, RE LONGMANG:

The king is holding a session. Let's wait here.

(Enter the Tubo King, followed by his attendants)

TUBO KING:

(To the previous tune)

White grass and Mongolian gazelles,

Tens of thousands of huts and tents —

My possessions have grown.

I will never submit to Tang,

When I sit firmly on my throne.



[见介] 青海湾西驾骆驼，白兰山外雪风多。一枝金箭催兵马，占断几家绿玉河。

自家吐蕃赞普是也。我国始祖秃发乌孤，曾为南凉皇帝。家母金城公主，来作西番赞婆。种类繁昌，部落强盛。与唐朝原以金鹅为誓，奈边将长以铁马相加。正待宣你两人，商量起兵一事。

[末、净] 我国东接松凉，西连河鄯，南吞婆罗，北抵突厥；胜兵十万，壮马千群。

[末] 臣那逻调度国中，

[净] 臣龙莽攻略境外。逢城则取，遇将而擒。唐朝不足虑也。

[外] 进兵何地为先？

[末] 先取河西，后图陇右。

[外] 这等，就着龙莽将军径取瓜沙，丞相从后策应。众把都们，听令而行。

(Greets the General and Prime Minister)

*Camels travel to the west of Qinghai Lake/ While Mount Bailan
abounds in wind and snow./ I have steeds and men at my command,/*
And Green Jade River area as my land.

I am the Tubo King. My ancestor Bald Wugu was the Emperor of Southern Liang. My mother Princess Golden City became the Tubo Queen. With growing population, the tribe is becoming strong and prosperous. We have formed an alliance with the Tang Dynasty by a vow of Golden Goose, but their border generals have often harassed us with armed forces. I am about to summon you to discuss the manoeuvring of our troops.

XI NALUO, RE LONGMANG:

With Song and Liang to the east, He and Shan to the west, Poluo to the south and Tujue to the north, our nation has a hundred thousand troops and a thousand herds of horses.

XI NALUO:

I shall manage the internal affairs.

RE LONGMANG:

I shall go and expand our territory. I shall seize cities and capture officers. The Tang Dynasty will give no cause for anxiety.

TUBO KING:

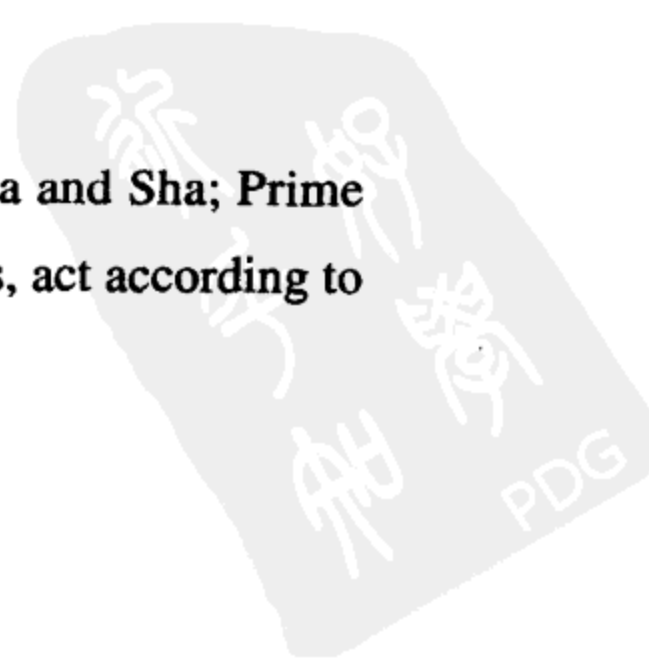
Which region shall we attack first?

XI NALUO:

We'll grab Hexi first and attack Longyou later.

TUBO KING:

So that's settled. General Longmang is to attack Gua and Sha; Prime Minister Naluo is to provide reinforcements. Warriors, act according to my order!



〔众应介〕

【清江引】

普天西，
出落的番回将，
大将热龙莽。
番鼓儿紧紧帮，
番铙的点点当，
汗呼呼海螺螭吹的响。

【前腔】

倒天山，
靠定了那逻相，
就里机谋广。
令旗儿打着羌，
刀尖儿点着唐，
锦绣样江山做一会子抢。

十万生兵不可当，
划骑单马射黄羊。
阴山一片红尘起，
先以凉州作战场。





(All respond)

TUBO KING:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

From the west
Comes the Tubo general —
General Re Longmang.
The Tubo drums beat;
The Tubo cymbals sound;
The Tubo horns ring all around.

(To the previous tune)

To cross the Tianshan Mountain,
We rely on Prime Minister Xi Naluo,
Who is endowed with wit and powers.
The commanding flags sweep over the nation of Qiang;
The swords point to the nation of Tang;
Their territories will be ours!

**A hundred thousand Tubo troops are invincible;
They shoot at gazelles on unsaddled steeds.
Dust and fire arise around the Yinshan Mountain:
Liangzhou regions are the first battlefields.**



第十出 外补

【七娘子】

〔旦引贴上〕状元郎拜满了三年限，

猛思量那日雕鞍。

又早春风一半，

展妆台独自捻花枝叹。

【好事近】无路入天门，买断金钱谁说？

〔贴〕逗得翰林人去，送等闲花月。

〔旦〕梦回鸳枕翠生寒，始悔前轻别。

〔贴〕一种崔徽情绪，为断鸿愁绝。

〔旦〕梅香，我家深居独院，天赐一位夫君，欢心正浓，忽动功名之兴，我将家资打发他上京取应，一口气得中头名状元，果中奴之



Scene Ten Taking a Provincial Office

(Enter Miss Cui, followed by Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Qiniangzi)

Number-One Scholar for three years,

My man left on horseback —

The sight flashes before my eyes.

Now that another spring is half way through,

With a flower in my hand, I make up with deep sighs.

(To the tune of Haoshijin)

To help my man with his career,/ I spent all the money I had.

MEIXIANG:

Since the scholar was gone,/ She has been living all alone.

MISS CUI:

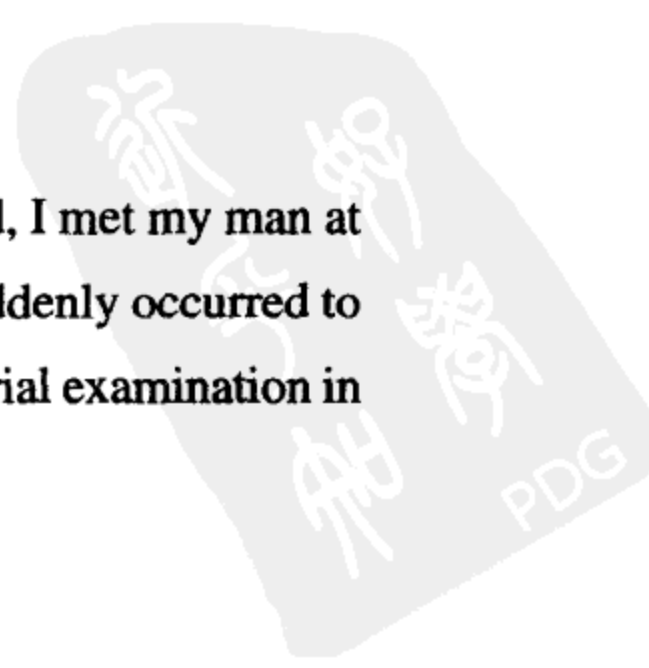
When I toss and turn in bed,/ I regret that I have sent him away.

MEIXIANG:

*To worry that beauty fades day by day,/ She would sigh and
moan.*

MISS CUI:

Meixiang, when I lived a secluded life in a remote yard, I met my man at heaven's bliss. We were enjoying ourselves when it suddenly occurred to me that I would send him to the capital to take the imperial examination in



愿矣。只为圣恩留他，单掌制诰，三年之外，方许还乡。奴家相思，好不苦啊！

【针线箱】

没意中成就娇欢，
尽意底团笙弄盏。
问章台人去也如天远，
小楼外几曾抛眼。
早则是一帘粉絮莺梢断，
十里红香燕语残。
才凝盼，
闲愁闲闷，
被东风吹上眉山。

〔丑报子上〕报，报，报，状元到。〔下〕

〔旦惊喜介〕儿夫锦旋，快安排酒筵。

【望吾乡】

〔生引队子上〕翠盖红茵，
香风染细尘。
花枝笑插宜春鬓，
骄骢上路人偏俊。



the hope of winning an official rank. He became the Number-One Scholar and that fulfilled my wishes. Thanks to the grace of His Majesty, he has been assigned to draft the imperial edicts. However, he is not allowed to return home within three years. I am indeed tormented with lovesickness!

(To the tune of Zhenxianxiang)

We chanced to form the wedlock
And enjoyed wine and music to our hearts' content.
Now that my man has gone far, far away,
I fear to look out of the window.
Amid willow catkins the orioles no longer sing;
Amid blooming flowers the swallows no longer dart.
I gaze and gaze,
Full of worry and woe,
Which are piled on my brows.

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

Report, report, report! The Number-One Scholar is about to arrive.

(Exit)

MISS CUI:

(In happy surprise)

My man is about to return in honour. Get ready for a banquet.

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his attendants)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Wangwuxiang)

Above green lawns and red blooms,
The wind spreads fragrant dusts.
A girl looks pretty by wearing a flower;
A man looks valiant by riding a stalwart horse.



盼望吾乡近，
挥鞭紧，
问路频，
崔家正在这清河郡。

[见介]

[旦] 卢郎，荣归了！

[生] 夫人喜也！一鞭红雨促归程，

[旦] 不忿朝来喜鹊声。

[生] 官诰五花叨圣宠，

[旦] 名扬四海动奴情。

[旦] 闻的你中了状元，留你中书三年掌制诰，因何便得锦旋？

[生] 你不知，小生因掌制诰，偷写下了夫人诰命一通，混在众人诰命内，朦胧进呈，侥幸圣旨都准行了。小生星夜亲手捧着五花封诰，送上贤妻，瞒过了圣上来也。

[旦] 费心了！卢郎，你因何得中了头名状元？

As I am eager to go home,
I wave my whip
And ask the way from time to time —
The house of Cui is in Qinghe County.
(Greets Miss Cui)

MISS CUI:

Master Lu, so you have returned in honour.

LU SHENG:

Congratulations to you.

I whipped my way home all the way;

MISS CUI:

That's why the magpies sang early in the day.

LU SHENG:

Now that I have brought an edict from His Majesty,

MISS CUI:

Your renown makes me happy and gay.

I've heard that since you became the Number-One Scholar, you have been appointed Edict Drafter for three years in the Central Office. How is it that you are coming home at this time of the year?

LU SHENG:

You are still in the dark. As I am the Edict Drafter, I wrote an edict to grant you a title, submitted it to His Majesty among other edicts and was approved. I've come by night to present you the edict without letting His Majesty know about it.

MISS CUI:

Thank you for your considerations. Master Lu, how did you become the Number-One Scholar?

〔生〕多谢贤卿将金赀广交朝贵，竦动了君王，在落卷中翻出做个第一。

〔旦〕哎也，险些第二了。

【玉芙蓉】

〔生〕文章一色新，
要得君王认。
插宫花，
酒生袍袖春云。
春风马上有珠帘问：
这夫婿是谁家第一人？
你夫人分，
有花冠告身。
记当初，
伴题桥捧砚亏杀卓文君。

【前腔】

〔旦〕你天生巧步云，
早得嫦娥近。
乍相逢，
门儿掩着成亲。
秋波得似掩花前俊，
暗里丝鞭打着人。
俺行夫运，
夫人县君。





LU SHENG:

Thanks to the money you gave me, I made friends with the elite in the court. They persuaded His Majesty to pick out my paper and nominate me as the Number-One Scholar.

MISS CUI:

Alas, you nearly fell to the second place!

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Yufurong)

As all the essays are new,
They must be acknowledged by His Majesty.
With palace flowers on my head,
I drank at the royal banquet with honour.
To see me on horseback in high spirits,
Ladies behind pearled curtains would ask, "Whose husband is this?"
You are destined to be a distinguished lady,
With a floral crown on your head.
As of old, Zhuo Wenjun helped her man
To aim high and realise his dream.

MISS CUI:

(To the previous tune)

You were lucky by birth
To meet a fairy of a wife.
As soon as we met,
We closed the door and started our nuptial life.
I cast my amorous eyes on you,
The amorous eyes of an attractive maiden.
You have succeeded in the imperial exam
And I win the title of County Lady now.



只这些时，
为思夫长是翠眉颦。

〔内〕报，报，报，差官到。

〔净扮官上〕东边跑的去，西头走得来，常差官见。〔见介〕禀老爷：蹊蹊了，原来老爷朦胧取旨，驰驿而回，被宇文老爷看破了奏上，圣旨宽恩免究。此去华阴山外，东京路上，有座陕州城，运道二百八十里，石路不通。圣旨就着老爷去做知州之职，凿石开河。钦限走马到任，不许停留。

〔生、旦〕有这等事，快备夫马，夫妻们陕州去也。

【尾声】

则道咱书生禄米几粒太仓陈，
要平白地支管着河阳运。

两人啊，

也则索宝马香车一路儿引。

三载暮登天子堂，
一朝衣锦昼还乡。
催官后命开河路，
食禄前生有地方。



But in all these days,
I have been missing you with knitted brows.

VOICE WITHIN:

Report, report, report! Here comes the official messenger.

(Enter Official Messenger)

OFFICIAL MESSENGER:

Running east and going west — that's the official messenger.

(Bows to Lu Sheng)

Master Lu, it is odd indeed. When you have obtained the edict and sped home, Master Yuwen found out the trick, and reported to His Majesty, but His Majesty pardoned you. Beyond the Huayin Mountain there is a Shanzhou city on the way to the east capital. Blocked by rocks, there is no thoroughfare for two hundred and eighty miles. The imperial edict goes that you have been appointed Magistrate of Shanzhou to break the rocks and dig a canal there. You are required to start for your new office without delay.

LU SHENG, MISS CUI:

In that case, get ready for the horse and carriage and we'll go to Shanzhou at once.

(To the tune of Coda)

A scholar with a meagre pay
Has to manage the Heyang canal.

As man and wife,

By horse and carriage we'll start on our way.

**After serving three years in the court,
The scholar returned home with grace.
With imperial edict to dig a canal,
He has to earn his bread in a strange place.**



第十一出 凿邦

【普贤歌】

〔净扮委官上〕陕州城下水波波，
运道干焦石落落。
州官来开河，
工程一月多，
点包儿今朝该到我。

小子麻哈人氏，考中京营识字。偶遇疏通事宜，加纳陕州幕职。陕州一条官路，二百八十八里顽石。东京运米西京，费尽人牛脚力。转搬多有折耗，颠倒刻减顾直。人户告理难当，上官议开河驿。州里卢爷详允，动支无碍工食。工程一月有余，并不见些儿涓滴。小子当蒙钧委，特来点比工役。诸余作手都可，到是甲头老贼。推呆卖老不来，来时打的他一直。

Scene Eleven **Digging the Canal**

(Enter the Project Inspector)

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

(To the tune of Puxian'ge)

Water flows near the Shanzhou Prefecture

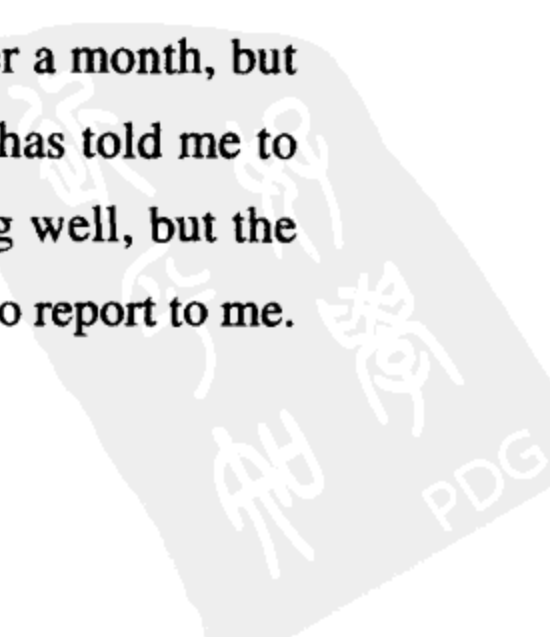
While the road is dry with rocks.

It has been over a month

Since the magistrate came to dig the canal.

It is my turn to check on the project today.

I, a native of Maha, was once enlisted in the capital camp. With some manoeuvring, I became a private adviser to the Shanzhou Magistrate. The road from Shanzhou to the capital is two hundred and eighty-eight miles of rocks. It needs a lot of manpower and animal power to transport grain from the east capital to the west capital. There is damage and spoilage on the way and repeated embezzlement of payment. As it is difficult to deal with the complaints lodged by the people, the superiors have decided to dig a canal. Magistrate Lu has agreed to dispense some emergent expenditure. The project has been going on for over a month, but there comes not a single drop of water. The magistrate has told me to check on the project. All the engineers have been doing well, but the Administrative Chief has resorted to various reasons not to report to me. I'll give him a sound beating when he arrives.



【字字双】

〔丑扮甲头拿纸钱上〕我做甲长管十家，
十甲。

开河人役暗分花，
点闸。

排门常例有些些，
喇杂。

管工官又要把甲头掐，
没法。

〔见介〕

〔净恼介〕这咱时，狗倌子孩儿还不来伺候！

〔丑叩头介〕小的不敢。

〔净〕工程一月有余，还不见你一点水。

〔丑〕不敢哩。水是地下的血，难道小的身上尿？

〔净〕狗奴！管水吃水，你推的没有？



(Enter Administrative Chief, holding sacrificial paper money in his hands)

ADMINISTRATIVE CHIEF:

(To the tune of Zizishuang)

I am Administrative Chief for ten households,

And ten times of ten households.

The canal diggers try to sneak away

And I have to check the number.

I go from door to door

For trifles.

The project inspector tries to extort from me

And I have no way out.

(Bows to Project Inspector)

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

(Annoyed)

Why hasn't that son of a bastard come to wait on me at this late hour?

ADMINISTRATIVE CHIEF:

(Kowtows)

I do not dare to offend you.

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

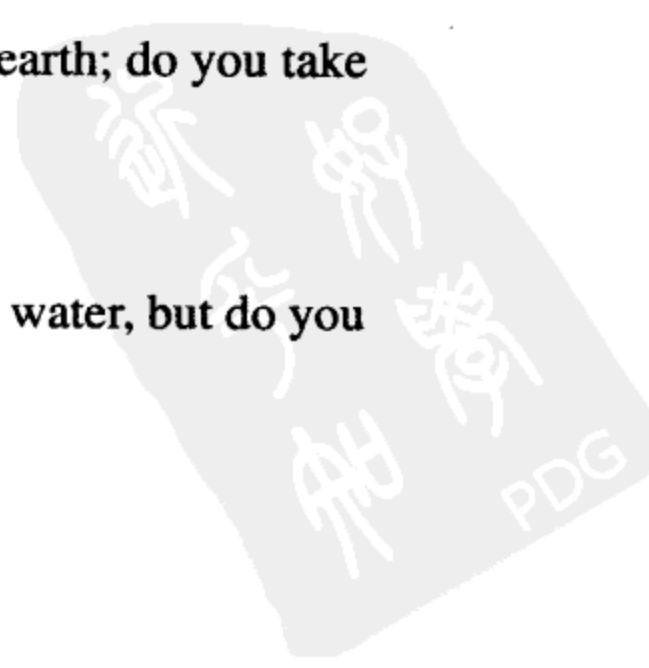
How come we have not seen a single drop of water now that the project has been going on for over a month?

ADMINISTRATIVE CHIEF:

I don't mean to offend you. Water is the blood of the earth; do you take it as my piss?

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

You bastard! You are in charge of water and you drink water, but do you want to shirk your responsibility?



〔丑〕 小人有罪，权送一分纸钱。

〔净恼介〕 狗才！纸钱是这纸钱？

〔丑〕 这是卢大爷因水道不通，领了众夫甲三步一拜，将次到这禹王庙来了。这纸钱是禹王老爷用的，难道老爷到用不的？

〔净慌介〕 哎也，原来大爷行香，这狗才不早通报。快去点香铺席。

【缕缕金】

〔生领众上〕 山磊磊，
石崖崖。

锹锄流汗血，
工食费民财。

〔净接生介〕

〔生〕 洒扫神王庙，
亲行礼拜。
要他疏通泉眼度船簰，
再把灵官赛。

ADMINISTRATIVE CHIEF:

I am to blame. Here is some paper money for you.

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

(Annoyed)

You son of a bitch! Are you giving me sacrificial paper money?

ADMINISTRATIVE CHIEF:

As the canal has not been completed yet, Magistrate Lu is leading the conscripted labourers and Administrative Chiefs to make a bow at every three steps. They will soon arrive at the Temple of King Yu. This paper money will be offered to King Yu; do you think that it cannot be offered to you?

PROJECT INSPECTOR:

(In a panic)

Alas! The magistrate is going to offer sacrifice in the temple. Why didn't you let me know earlier? Go and burn the joss sticks and lay the mat at once!

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by attendants and labourers)

(To the tune of Lülijin)

The mountain is rocky;

The rocks are craggy.

Sweat and blood goes with shovels and spades;

The expenses come from the people.

(Project Inspector greets Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

I shall sweep the Divine Temple

And pay tribute to King Yu.

When the fountains are dredged for ships and rafts,

I shall come again and requite you.



[净] 香纸齐备。

[生拜介]

【江儿水】

禹王如在，

吏民瞻拜。

石头路滑倒把粮车儿碍，

要凿空河道引江淮。

[合] 叫山神早开，

河神早来，

国泰民安似海。

【前腔】

[众拜介] 长途石块，

转搬难耐。

领官钱上役真尴尬，

偷工买懒一样费钱财。

[合前]

[生] 祭完了。分付十家牌：一人管十，十人管百。擂鼓攒工，不许懈怠。





PROJECT INSPECTOR:

The joss sticks and sacrificial paper money are ready.

LU SHENG:

(Bows)

(To the tune of Jiang'ershui)

King Yu is here

To accept our consecration.

The rocky road is so slippery

As to hinder the grain carts;

Therefore we are digging a canal to conduct water.

ALL:

When the mountain god opens a way

And the river god arrives,

In a prosperous nation the people will stay.

ALL:

(Bow)

(To the previous tune)

To move the rocks for a long way

Is difficult indeed.

It is hard to work with official pay

And it costs a lot to escape from work.

ALL:

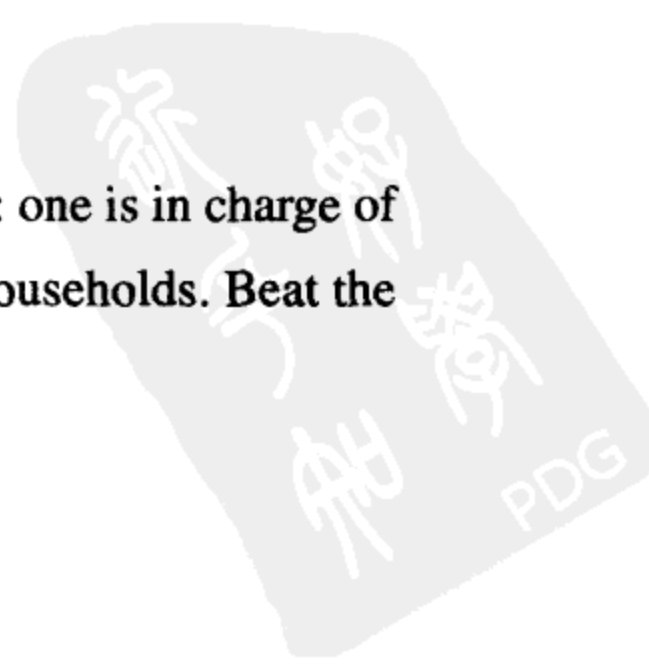
When the mountain god opens a way

And the river god arrives,

In a prosperous nation the people will stay.

LU SHENG:

The rites are over. Tell the heads of Ten-Households: one is in charge of ten households and ten are in charge of a hundred households. Beat the drums to inspire work and by no means slack off.



〔众应介〕

〔内鼓外作介〕

【桂枝香】

〔生〕则为啊太原仓窄，
临潼关隘。

未说到砥柱三门，
且掘断芦根一带。

看泥沙石髓，

看泥沙石髓，

便阴阳违碍，

也无如之奈！

好伤怀，

〔众〕这辛苦，男女们当得的。

〔生〕滴水能消得，

民间费血财。

〔内鼓介〕

〔众惊介〕好了，好了。稟老爷：东头水来了。

〔生喜介〕真个洞洞的水声哩。





(All respond)

(Drumbeats within)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Guizhixiang)

You know,

The granaries in Taiyuan are small
And the pass in Lintong is narrow,
Let alone the Dizhu and Sanmen regions
And the regions where we cut the reed-roots.
Look at the mud, sand and rocks,
Look at the mud, sand and rocks!
We have no way to deal with
The mountain that blocks our way.
How miserable it is!

ALL:

We can endure the hardships.

LU SHENG:

In order to get a single drop of water,
People have to pay with blood and wealth.
(Drumbeats within)

ALL:

(In surprise)

That's it, that's it! Master Lu, the water is coming from the east.

LU SHENG:

(Pleased)

I hear the roaring of waters.



【前腔】

〔众〕黄河过脉，
滏池分派。
自从公主河西，
直引到太阳桥外。
看涓涓碧水，
看涓涓碧水，
此时蒙昧，
定然滂沛。
好开怀。

〔生〕还有前山未开哩。

〔众〕望梅且止三军渴，
逢靖靖权一滴灾。

〔众作锹凿不动介〕

呀，怎的来下不得铤？

〔看介〕稟老爷：前面开的山是土山石皮，这两座山透底石，一座唤名鸡脚山，一座熊耳山，铤他不入的。

〔生背想介〕鸡脚山、熊耳山么？昔禹凿三门，五行并用。



ALL:

(To the previous tune)

The passage for the Yellow River
Is allotted by the Mianchi Lake,
From the west of Princess River
To the Sun Bridge.

Look at the blue waters,

Look at the blue waters!

We cannot see the water now,

But it is bound to flow here.

How happy we are!

LU SHENG:

We haven't reached the other side of the mountain yet.

ALL:

We are quenching thirst by looking at the plums,

But water will come in floods when the time comes.

(Dig with shovels but to no avail)

Well, how is it that the shovels won't work?

(Look ahead)

Master Lu, the previous mountains are earthen mountains with a covering of rocks. Now we are facing two rocky mountains: one is called Chicken-Foot Mountain and the other is called Bear-Ear Mountain. The shovels won't work.

LU SHENG:

(Thinks aside)

Chicken-Foot Mountain and Bear-Ear Mountain? When King Yu dug Sanmen Gorge in the ancient times, he employed all the five basic elements.

〔回介〕鸡脚和熊耳，你道铁打不入，俺待盐蒸醋煮了他。

〔众笑介〕怕没这等大锅？

〔生〕不用的锅，州里取几百担盐醋来。

〔众应下〕

〔扛盐上介〕盐醋在此。

〔生〕取干柴百万束，连烧此山，然后以醋浇之，着以锹椎，自然顽石粹裂而起；后用盐花投之，石都成水。

〔众笑介〕有这等事。

〔放火介〕

【大趂鼓】

烧空尽费柴，

起南方火电，

霹雳摧崖。

呀，山色烧煤了。

〔生〕快取醋来。





(To the labourers)

Since iron won't work with Chicken Feet and Bear Ear, I'll boil them with salt and vinegar.

ALL:

(Laugh)

Do we have such huge cauldrons?

LU SHENG:

I do not need cauldrons. Just fetch tons of salt and vinegar from the prefecture.

ALL:

(Respond and exeunt. Reenter with salt and vinegar)

Here are salt and vinegar.

LU SHENG:

Get a million bunches of dry wood to burn this mountain. Then sprinkle it with vinegar, hit it with shovel-sticks and the hard rocks will split. Finally spread over the mountain with salt and the rocks will melt into water.

ALL:

(Laugh)

Is it possible?

(Set fire to the mountain)

(To the tune of Dayagu)

It wastes firewood to burn the rocks
And set fire and lightening to the south,
With thunders that crack the cliffs.

Oh, the mountain has turned into charcoal.

LU SHENG:

Get the vinegar at once!



〔众鼓醋介〕

料想山神前身为措大，

又逢酸子措他来。

这样神通，

教人怎猜。

〔众笑介〕怪哉，怪哉，看这鸡脚跟熊耳朵，都着酸醋煮粹了。

〔生〕快下锹斧，成其河道。

〔众鼓锄介〕

【前腔】

〔生〕鹳嘴啄红崖，

似鳞皴甲绽，

粉裂烟开。

一面撒盐生水也。

〔众鼓撒盐介〕

知他火尽青山在，

好似雪消春水来。

〔笛介〕

〔惊介〕河头水流接来了。

〔众笑介〕

水鸟初飞，

通船引簰。





ALL:

(Beat drums and sprinkle vinegar)

The mountain god used to be a sour scholar,

But will soon suffer from vinegar.

Who would have expected

Such miracles!

(Laugh)

Strange, strange! The chicken feet and bear ears are now well done!

LU SHENG:

Apply your shovels and axes to the mountain at once to dig a canal.

(All beat drums and shovel the mountain)

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

The picks peck at the red cliffs,

Which crackle like fish-scales and tortoise-shells,

Reduced into powder when they split.

Spread salt to make water!

ALL:

(Beat drums and spread salt)

As spring water flows when snow thaws,

So verdant mountains appear when fire is out.

(Go on digging)

(In astonishment)

Water is coming from the river source!

(Laugh)

Water-fowl will fly;

Boats and rafts will pass by.



〔生〕百姓们，功已成矣，河已通矣，当铸铁牛于河岸之上，以轆重舟，头向河南，尾向河北；一面催攒入关粮运，兼以招引四方商贾奇货，聚于此州；一面奏知圣上，东游观览胜景；也不枉陕州百姓之劳。

〔众〕多谢老爷！男女们插柳沿河，以添胜景。

【尾声】

〔生〕还把清阴垂柳两边栽，
奏明主东游气概。

〔众〕大河头铸一个铁牛儿千万载。

省尽人牛力，
恩波铸铁牛。
传闻圣天子，
为此欲东游。



LU SHENG:

My people, the grand feat is accomplished and the canal is completed. We'll cast an iron bull on the riverbank to anchor ships, with its head to the south of the river and with its tail to the north of the river. On the one hand, we shall hurry to transport grain to the capital and attract merchants to bring their merchandise from all over the country; on the other hand, we shall report to His Majesty and invite Him to make an eastern tour to view the beautiful sights and the efforts of the Shanzhou people.

ALL:

Thank you, Master Lu. We shall plant willows along the river to add beauties to the scenes.

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Coda)

We shall plant willows along the riverbanks
And beg His Majesty to make a tour to the east.

ALL:

We shall cast an iron bull that will stand forever.

**Having reduced our labour to the least,
We are willing to cast an iron beast.
When His Majesty hears of this,
He will make a tour to the east.**



第十二出 边急

【西地锦】

〔外扮老将引众上〕踏破冰凌海浪，
撞开积石河梁。
马到擒王，
旗开斩将，
袍花点尽风霜。

坐拥貔貅胆气豪，玉门关外阵云高。白头未挂封侯印，腰下长悬带血刀。

自家凉州都督羽林大将军王君奭是也。瓜州常乐县人氏。平生骁勇，善骑射。蒙圣恩，以战功累升今职。陇右河西，听吾节制。长城一线，控隔吐蕃。近闻番兵大举入寇，兵锋颇锐。不知他大将为谁？待俺当头出马，俺好不粗雄也！

Scene Twelve Border Crisis

(Enter Wang Junchuo, followed by his soldiers)

WANG JUNCHUO:

(To the tune of Xidijin)

I've braved the ice and waves
And broken the ridges of Mount Jishi.
I've captured rebel kings
And slaughtered their generals,
Stained with frost is my battle robe.

With warriors standing on my side,/ The war is looming far and wide./ Without the title of a lord,/ I always wear a bloody sword.

I am Royal General Wang Junchuo, the Military Commander of Liangzhou. I am a native of Changle County, Guazhou Prefecture. A valiant warrior all my life, I am good at horsemanship and swordsmanship. With the grace of His Majesty, I have been promoted to this position due to my military achievements. I command the troops in Longyou and Hexi to guard the Great Wall against the Tubo tribes. It is said that the Tubo tribes have launched an invasion with strong armed forces, but I don't know who is their commander yet. Now that I shall fight him in the battlefield, how bold and fearless I am!

【山花子】

老河魁福国安邦将，
羽林军个个精芒。
按星宫顿开旗五方，
阵团花太岁中央。

〔内鼓介〕

〔合〕鼓轰天如雷震张，
枪刀甲盔如日光，
马喷秋如云飞战场。
倚洪福如天，
大展边疆。

〔扮报子上〕报，报，报，吐蕃有个大将热龙莽杀过来了。

〔外〕快整兵前去。〔行介〕

【清江引】

大唐家有的是骁雄将，
出马休拦挡。
军儿走的慌，
阵儿摆的长。
定西番，
早擒下先锋热龙莽。〔下〕

(To the tune of Shanhuazi)

The elderly general brings peace to the nation,
Together with the valiant royal soldiers.
The flags are arranged according to the zodiac,
With the general in the centre of the battle array.

(Drumbeats within)

ALL:

There come the drumbeats,
Roaring like thunder.
The soldiers wave their swords and spears,
With their helmets shining like the sun
And their steeds sweeping on the battlefields.
With the bliss of His Majesty,
They succeed on the border areas.

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

Report, report, report! The Tubo general Re Longmang is galloping towards us.

WANG JUNCHUO:

Get into battle array and move forward.

(Marches on)

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

The Tang Dynasty abounds in valiant warriors;
The enemy will hinder their movements in vain.
The soldiers hurry on
With the formation stretching long.
To conquer the Tubo troops,
I'll capture the vanguard Re Longmang.

(Exit)



【清江引】

〔净扮龙莽领众上〕

普天西，
出落的番回将，
大将热龙莽。
番鼓儿紧紧帮，
番铙的点点当，
汗呼呼海螺螭吹的响。

〔外众上打话介〕

〔净〕吾乃番将热龙莽是也。你是何小将，敢来迎战？

〔外〕吾乃大将王君奭是也。出马在此，早降，早降。

〔战介〕

〔番将佯败〕

〔外、众追下介〕

【清江引】

〔末扮那逻领众上〕

倒天山，
靠定了那逻相
就里机谋广。
令旗儿打着羌，
刀尖儿点着唐，
锦绣样江山做一会子抢。





(Enter Re Longmang, followed by his soldiers)

RE LONGMANG, TUBO SOLDIERS:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

From the west

Comes the Tubo general —

General Re Longmang.

The Tubo drums beat;

The Tubo cymbals sound;

The Tubo horns ring all around.

(Enter Wang Junchuo, followed by his soldiers. Wang Junchuo and Re Longmang announce their names respectively)

RE LONGMANG:

I am the Tubo General Re Longmang. Who are you that dare to fight with me?

WANG JUNCHUO:

I am General Wang Junchuo to fight you here. Take no time to surrender, take no time to surrender!

(Fighting starts. Re Longmang feigns to be defeated. Exeunt Wang Junchuo and his soldiers, chasing after Re Longmang.)

(Enter Xi Naluo, followed by his soldiers)

XI NALUO, TUBO SOLDIERS:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

To cross the Tianshan Mountain,

We rely on Prime Minister Xi Naluo,

Who is endowed with wit and power.

The commanding flags sweep over the nation of Qiang;

The swords point to the nation of Tang;

Their territories will be ours!



[末] 吾乃吐蕃丞相悉那邏是也，領兵策應龍莽將軍。日前有書教他佯輸詐敗，唐兵必追，吾以生兵繞出其后，破之必矣。把都們，一齊殺過關南轉西，以擒唐將。

[眾應下]

[淨上]

[外追戰介]

[末、眾上叫介] 王君奭、王君奭，且歇一馬，咱吐蕃丞相救兵在此。

[外慌介] 呀！中計了，中計了。三軍死戰！

[淨、末夾戰]

[外敗被殺介]

[淨、末相見介]

[淨] 多承國相遠來，得此全勝。



XI NALUO:

I, the Tubo Prime Minister Xi Naluo, am in ambush here to reinforce General Re Longmang. The other day I taught him with a book on the arts of war that if he feigns to be defeated, the Tang soldiers will definitely chase after him, and that if I launch an attack from behind, the Tang soldiers will surely be put to rout. Warriors, rush to the south of the pass and then turn to the west so as to capture the Tang general.

(The soldiers respond. Exeunt all)

(Enter Re Longmang, chased after by Wang Junchuo. They are locked in fight)

(Enter Xi Naluo, followed by his soldiers)

XI NALUO:

Wang Junchuo, Wang Junchuo! Stop for a while to meet the Tubo Prime Minister!

WANG JUNCHUO:

(In a panic)

Alas! I've fallen into their traps! I've fallen into their traps! Soldiers, fight to the last!

(Attacked by Re Longmang and Xi Naluo, Wang Junchuo is defeated and killed)

(Re Longmang and Xi Naluo greet each other)

RE LONGMANG:

Thanks to your reinforcement, we have won a complete victory.



〔末〕唐军战败，大将阵亡，便乘此威风，抢进玉门关去，不可有迟。

加鞭哨马走如龙，
斩将长驱要立功。
假饶一国长空阔，
尽在吾家掌握中。



XI NALUO:

Now that the Tang soldiers are defeated and their general is killed, let's take this opportunity to seize the Yumen Pass without delay!

Speed the horses at the dragon's speeds

And we shall kill the foes and do heroic deeds.

Even if that nation has vast lands,

It is controlled all in my very hands.



第十三出 望幸

【梨花儿】

〔净扮驿丞上〕陕州喏大的新河驿，
老宰今年六十七。
承差之时二十一，
啵，
巴到尚书还要百个十。

小子陕州新河驿驿丞，生来祖代心灵。幼年充县门役，选去察院祇承。也是其年近贵，那一位察院爷有情，有情。赏我背搭一个，与我承差一名。差到东西两广，不说南北二京。承差的威风休论，役满赴考铨衡。选中了六部火房干事，又犯了些不了事情。三年飞天过海，偷选了陕州新河驿驿丞。驿系潼关出口，钱粮津贴丰盈。几领

Scene Thirteen **Expecting the Imperial Inspection**

(Enter Station Master)

STATION MASTER:

(To the tune of Lihua'er)

In the Xinhe Courier Station in Shanzhou,

I am sixty-seven by this year.

I took over office at twenty-one,

Alas,

And need a thousand years to become a minister.

I, master of Xinhe Courier Station in Shanzhou Prefecture, was born with ingenuity. I served as a runner in the county government office, and was later selected to serve in the Ministry of Inspection. As the lucky star was over my head that year, an official in the Ministry of Inspection showed favour on me, indeed showed favour on me. He gave me a sleeveless garment and made me a dispatcher. I was sent to Guangdong and Guangxi, let alone the two capitals in the north and south. A dispatcher was of course awe-inspiring, and when my term of service was over, I took part in the official selection. I was selected as chief of the kitchen for the Six Ministries, but I committed some reprehensible mistakes. Three years later, I played some tricks and was selected as master of Xinhe Courier Station in Shanzhou Prefecture. This courier station is the exit of Tongguan Pass, sufficient of money, grains and payments. When several sedans,

轿，几抬杠，几匹驴头，律令敕般的纸牌勘合；十斤肉，十钟酒，十个鸡子，脓血食样似中火下程。本等应付少，也要落几段；折色分例多，则是没一成。因此往来公役，常被他唬吓欺凌。几番推躲不出，入房搜捉不宁，真乃一报还了一报。承差惯打驿丞，几番要逃要死，贪些狗苟蝇营。你道各处送来徒犯，便是送我几个门生，入门有拜见之礼，着禁有卖免之情，不完月钱打死，费一张白纸超申。纵有查盘点视，除了刺字替身。日久上司官到，摇船摆站缺人。到头天样大事，撞着一个老太岁游神。

〔内介〕老爷，是那位过往官到？

〔净〕哎也，你道是谁？当今开元皇帝，不安本分闲行。又不用男丁摆橹，要一千个裙钗唱着采菱。本州太爷亲选了九百九十八个，少了的是押殿脚的头梢二名。老驿丞无妻少女，寻不出逼出了人的眼睛。迟误了钦限当耍？小子有计了，西头梁断处一条性命烂绳。

〔吊颈介〕



several carriers and several donkeys arrive, there is a strict checking of documents. Then I prepare ten kilos of meat, ten cups of wine, ten eggs to make a dirty lunch or dinner. I can batten on these treatments. When it comes to my share, I can get no more than ten percent. Therefore, I have often been bullied by the official dispatchers. As the saying goes, "Tit for tat and dispatchers beat the stationmaster." For several times I would have run away or simply killed myself, but I still hope to scrape a living. When prisoners on exile come, they come as my subordinates. When they first arrive, they have to pay for the first meeting; when they violate the rules, they have to pay for their offences. If they do not pay their monthly tribute, they will be beaten to death at the cost of a piece of white paper to transcend their souls. Even if the superiors come to check on the roll, there are other prisoners to serve as substitutes. As days go by, there are not enough people to run the ferry. But now an evil star is coming over my head, which really matters.

VOICE WITHIN:

Master, which official is coming by?

STATION MASTER:

Well, who do you think he is? The present Emperor Xuanzong is touring in an extraordinary way. He does not want men to sail the ships, but wants a thousand young women to sing the "Ballad of Picking Water-caltrops". The magistrate has selected nine hundred and ninety-eight singers, and wants two more to line at the head and at the end. I have neither wife nor young daughters. As I cannot find two more young women, I am at my wit's end. It's no small matter to breach the imperial edict. My last resort is to go to the western beams and hang myself there.

(Puts his neck in the loop)

Library of Chinese Classics
PDG

〔贴、丑扮囚妇出救介〕怎么了？本官老爷纵不为蝼蚁前程，也为这条狗性命么？

〔净醒介〕便是这条狗命，说甚么蚁役前程？

〔叩头介〕你二位不是干娘义妹，怎生这救苦难观世音？

〔贴、丑〕奴家两人，都是本驿囚妇。

〔净〕哎，有这等姿色的囚妇，一向躲在那里？不来参见本官。且问你丈夫那里去了？

〔贴〕我丈夫叫短包儿，翦辮去了。

〔净〕怎么说？

〔贴〕是老爷放他去，好还月钱。

〔净〕多承了。

〔丑〕我丈夫是胡哈儿，吊鸡去了。



(Enter two female prisoners)

FEMALE PRISONERS:

(Rescue Station Master)

How is it that you're hanging yourself? If you did not care for your official career, should you not have cared for your life of a dog?

STATION MASTER:

(Comes to)

When I do not care for my life of a dog, how can I care for my official career?

(Kowtows)

You are not my sworn sisters, but why are you acting like the Goddess of Mercy?

FEMALE PRISONERS:

Both of us are prisoners in this courier station.

STATION MASTER:

Oh! You are such pretty prisoners. Where have you been hiding, without ever reporting to me? Tell me where your husbands are.

FEMALE PRISONER A:

My husband is called Short Bag. He's gone picking pockets.

STATION MASTER:

What do you mean?

FEMALE PRISONER A:

You allowed him to go so as to pay for the monthly tribute.

STATION MASTER:

It's kind of you.

FEMALE PRISONER B:

My husband is called Wild Talk. He's gone grabbing chickens.



〔净〕好生意哩。

〔丑〕也是老爷教他去。

〔净〕我要鸡怎么？

〔丑〕下程中火呢。

〔净〕罢了，早是不曾选着你摇九龙舟去。若见老皇帝，说知此事，那皇帝连我的鸡都怕吃了。话分两头，且问二位仙乡何处？

〔贴、丑〕江南人氏。

〔净〕会打歌儿哩。

〔贴、丑〕也去的。

〔净〕一发妙！如今万岁爷到来，九龙舟选下一千名殿脚菱歌女，止欠二名，恰好你二人运到，劳你打个歌儿，将月儿起兴，歌出船上事体，每句要“弯弯”二字，中两句要打入“帝王”二字，要个尾声儿有趣。



STATION MASTER:

It's a good business.

FEMALE PRISONER B:

You told him to go.

STATION MASTER:

What do I need chickens for?

FEMALE PRISONER B:

For dinner or for lunch.

STATION MASTER:

Let's talk no more about this. I am fortunate not to have selected you to tow the dragon boat. If you should tell the old emperor about this, he would be afraid to eat my chickens. Now let's talk about something else.

Where are you from?

FEMALE PRISONERS:

From the southern bank of the Yangtze River.

STATION MASTER:

Can you sing ballads?

FEMALE PRISONERS:

Yes, we can.

STATION MASTER:

It's all the more wonderful! Since His Majesty is about to come, a thousand female singers are to be selected to tow the dragon boat and to sing the "Ballad of Picking Water-caltrops." As two more singers are needed now, you are lucky enough. Will you take the trouble to sing a ballad, starting from describing the moon, narrating what happens on the ship, containing a word meaning "curved" in each line, containing the word "emperor" in the two middle lines, and making the last line funny?

〔贴〕使得。

〔贴歌介〕月儿弯弯贴子天，新河儿弯弯住子眠。手儿弯弯抱子帝王颈，脚头弯弯搭子帝王肩。帝王肩，笑子言，这样的金莲大似船。

〔净〕歌的好，歌的好，中子君王之意。

〔向丑介〕你要四个“尖尖”。中间两句也要“帝王”二字，也要个悄尾声儿。

〔丑〕污耳了。

〔歌介〕月儿尖尖照见子矛，铁钉儿尖尖纂子篙。嘴儿尖尖好贯子帝王耳，手儿尖尖摸子个帝王腰。帝王腰，着什么乔？天上船儿也要俺地下摇。

〔净〕妙，妙，妙，就将你两人答应老皇帝，则怕生当些触误了圣体，要演习演习才好。

〔贴、丑〕没个演习所在。

〔净〕便把我当老皇帝演一演何如？



FEMALE PRISONER A:

Yes, I will.

(Sings)

The crescent moon is stuck on the skies;/ In a crooked way the new river lies./ I cross my hands round the emperor's neck/ And bend my feet on the emperor's shoulders./ With my feet on his shoulders,/ The emperor says with a smile on his lips:/ Your feet are as large as my ships.

STATION MASTER:

Your song is excellent, excellent! It suits His Majesty's taste exactly.

(To Female Prisoner B)

Your song should contain four words with the meaning of "pointed," contain the word "emperor" in the two middle lines, and contain a funny ending.

FEMALE PRISONER B:

Please listen.

(Sings)

The pointed moon shines over the spears;/ The piercing nails drive into the oars./ My sharp voice enters the emperor's ears;/ My slender fingers touch the emperor's waist./ To touch his waist,/ What shall I turn round?/ I'll sail the ship from the skies to the ground.

STATION MASTER:

Wonderful, wonderful, wonderful! I'll show you to the old emperor, but I'm afraid that you'll offend him because you are inexperienced. You must have some practice.

FEMALE PRISONERS:

There is no one for us to practise on.

STATION MASTER:

What about taking me as the old emperor and practising on me?



[丑笑介] 使得。

[净] 我唱口号二句，你二人凑成。

[歌介] 俺驿丞老的似个破船形，抹入新河子听水声。

[贴、丑歌介] 一橹摇时一橹子睡，则怕掘篙子撑不的到大天明。

[内响道介]

[净] 快走，快走，州里太爷来了。

【西地锦】

[生引队子上] 峡石翻摇翠浪，

茅津细吐金沙。

打排公馆似仙家，

昼夜瞻迎鸾驾。

[净见生介]

【西江月】[生] 鸾驾即时巡幸，新河喜得完成。东都留守报分明，祇候都须齐整。



FEMALE PRISONER B:

(Giggles)

That'll do.

STATION MASTER:

I'll sing the first two lines and you will go on with the next two lines.

(Sings)

"I the Station Master am as old as a broken boat,

Hearing the new river flow while I am afloat."

FEMALE PRISONERS:

(Sing)

"You row the oar while you are asleep or awake.

We're afraid that you will not row till daybreak."

(Voice of clearing the way within)

STATION MASTER:

Hurry up, hurry up! The magistrate is coming.

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his attendants)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Xidijin)

Over the stones the waves roar;

On shallow beaches the golden sands glow.

I've decorated the guesthouse into a fairy house,

Waiting day and night for His Majesty to come.

(Station Master bows to Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Xijiangyue)

His Majesty will come at any time/ As the canal has been completed./ Message comes from the east capital/ That I must prepare everything.



〔净〕一要钱粮协济，诸般答应精灵。普天之下一人行，怎敢因而失敬？禀爷：万岁爷爷若起岸而行，住何宫馆？

〔生〕原有先年造下绣岭宫，三宫六院，见成齐备；扈从文武，俱有公馆；帐房人役钱粮，也有东京七十四州县津分帖济。则有一千名棹歌女子，急节难全，怎生是好？

〔净〕止欠二名，驿丞星夜家中搬取嫡亲姊妹二名，教他打歌摇橹，已勾一千之数。

〔生〕驿丞费心了。

〔众禀介〕驿官谎爷，是两名囚妇。

〔生〕好打！

〔净叩头介〕虽则囚妇，颇有姿色，又能唱歌，急忙难讨这等一对。





STATION MASTER:

*The first thing is to get gold and grains ready/ And to get every-
thing well prepared./ When the divine emperor makes his tour,/ Who
dares to be not sure?*

Master Lu, if His Majesty leaves the ship and goes on land, where is
he going to stay?

LU SHENG:

The Green-Peak Palace was built years ago, which can house the em-
press and the royal concubines. There are also guesthouses for the min-
isters and generals. The gold and grains for the attaches will be taken
care of by the seventy-four prefectures and counties around the east
capital. The only trouble is that time is too urgent to get the one thousand
female singers. What shall we do about it?

STATION MASTER:

We are short of two female singers only. I've fetched my two sisters by
night and taught them to sing. Now we have one thousand female singers
ready.

LU SHENG:

Thank you very much.

ATTENDANTS:

The Station Master is lying. They are two female prisoners.

LU SHENG:

You deserve a sound beating!

STATION MASTER:

(Kowtows)

Although they are prisoners, they have quite pretty looks and are good at
singing. It's not easy to find such singers at short notice.



〔生〕说得是。驿丞听我分付：

【一封书】

东来是翠华，
要曲柄红罗伞一把。

〔净〕驿里到没有这一件。

〔生〕绣岭宫鸾驾库里借来。

御筵排怎么？

绕龙盘尽插花。

〔净〕则怕珍羞不齐，老皇帝也只得随乡入俗了。

〔生〕我自有象牙盘上膳千品，外间所献，预备赏赐而已。

〔净〕还怕扈驾文武老爷管接不周。

文武官员犹自可，

有那等势焰的中貂怎奈他？

〔生〕不妨，有个头。有个头儿高公公，我已差人送礼，他自能约束。则我这里要精细哩，

休当耍，

莫争差，

吃不尽直驾将军一个瓜。

LU SHENG:

You are right. Listen to my orders, Station Master!

(To the tune of Yifengshu)

When the imperial carriage comes to the east,

We need a red crook-handled umbrella.

STATION MASTER:

There is no such thing in the courier station.

LU SHENG:

Borrow it from the warehouse in the Green-Peak Palace.

For the imperial banquet,

We need dragon plates decorated with flowers.

STATION MASTER:

I'm afraid that there are not enough delicate dishes and that the old emperor has to do in the rustic areas as the rustics do.

LU SHENG:

I have a thousand ivory plates and dishes in my possession. They are gifts for me and I keep them for gifts too.

STATION MASTER:

I'm also afraid that the accompanying officers and officials are not easy to attend to.

Besides the officers and officials,

The eunuchs are the most difficult to deal with.

LU SHENG:

Never mind. The eunuchs have a chief—Eunuch Gao. I've gifts sent to him and he will not go beyond himself. Still, I'll have to be careful all the same.

Take care

And avoid mistake,

Otherwise my life will be at stake.



还一事，分付各路粮货船千百余艘，着以五方旗色，编齐纲运。逐队写着某路白粮，某州奇货，每船上焚香，奏其本地之乐。

〔净应介〕

〔官走上，报介〕禀爷：掌头行的老公公到了，圣驾已驻三百里之外。

〔生忙介〕快看马来，迎驾去。

地脉三河接，
天临万乘通。
有星皆拱北，
无水不朝东。





I have something else to tell you. Order the grain ships and cargo ships to sail in teams with coloured flags. Each team will carry signs to show the type of grains from a certain region and valued goods from a certain prefecture. Each ship is to burn joss sticks and play its regional music.

(Station Master responds)

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

(Reports)

Master Lu, the eunuch in charge of the advance unit has arrived. His Majesty is 300 miles away.

LU SHENG:

(In a hurry)

Get my horse ready and we'll go and meet His Majesty.

In this area three rivers run forth;

When the emperor arrives, all ships pass with ease.

As all the stars face the north,

So the rivers run to the east.



第十四出 东巡

【太常引】

〔字裴引队上〕天回地绕圣躬劳，
春色晓鸡号。

日华遥上赭黄袍，
莲花仙掌云霄。

〔字〕下官御史中丞平章军国大事宇文融是也。

〔裴〕下官中书少监裴光庭是也。中书监萧年兄在京监国，我二人扈驾东行。这是临潼关外行宫，前面将次陕城了，州守乃是卢年兄也。

〔字笑介〕卢生在此三年，新河一事，未经报完，好难的题目哩。

Scene Fourteen **Imperial Inspection to the East**

(Enter Yuwen Rong and Pei Guangting)

YUWEN RONG, PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of Taichangyin)

Now that His Majesty has travelled a long way,
The roosters crow at the break of a spring day.
When the royal robe glimmers in sunlight,
The towering peaks come into sight.

YUWEN RONG:

I am Yuwen Rong, Supervisory Minister and Right Prime Minister in charge of all state affairs.

PEI GUANGTING:

I am Pei Guangting, Assistant Minister of the Central Office. Minister of the Central Office Xiao Song remains in the capital to take care of state affairs. Right Prime Minister Yuwen Rong and I accompany His Majesty on his inspection to the east. Here we are at the temporary palace outside Lintong Pass. We shall soon arrive at Shanzhou City, where Lu Sheng serves as the magistrate.

YUWEN RONG:

(Smiles)

It has been three years since Lu Sheng came here. There is no report that the new canal is completed. What a difficult task for him!



〔裴〕此君之才，下官所知。河工必成，当受上赏。

〔宇〕河成不成，到彼便见。

〔内传呼圣上升殿〕

【绕池游】

〔上引高力士众上〕黄舆左纛，

又出三门道，

听行漏玉鸡春晓。

扇影全高，

日华初照，

〔合〕锦江山都回环圣朝。

〔众叩头呼万岁介〕

〔上〕黼帐天临御路开，离宫清跸暂徘徊。瞳瞳谷暗千旗出，汹汹山鸣万乘来。

寡人唐玄宗皇帝是也。车驾东巡洛阳，驻跸潼关之外。今已早膳，高力士，传旨起驾。

〔高传旨行介〕

【望吾乡犯】

电转星摇，

旌旗出陕郊。



PEI GUANGTING:

I am fully aware of his intelligence. The project is bound to complete and he is bound to be commended by His Majesty.

YUWEN RONG:

We'll wait and see whether the canal is completed.

VOICE WITHIN:

His Majesty is having an audience.

(Enter Emperor Xuanzong, followed by Eunuch Gao and attendants)

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(To the tune of Raochiyou)

In a yellow carriage surrounded with flags,

I am on the way from Sanmen.

When night runs out with cockcrows on a spring day,

The sun climbs over the mountain

And starts to shine over the earth.

ALL:

The nation centres round the throne,

All kowtow to and hail the emperor.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

A road was paved before I arrived at the tents;/ Upon the palace road is left my trail./ A thousand flags appear in the shadowy vale;/ Ten thousand carriages come amid roaring torrents.

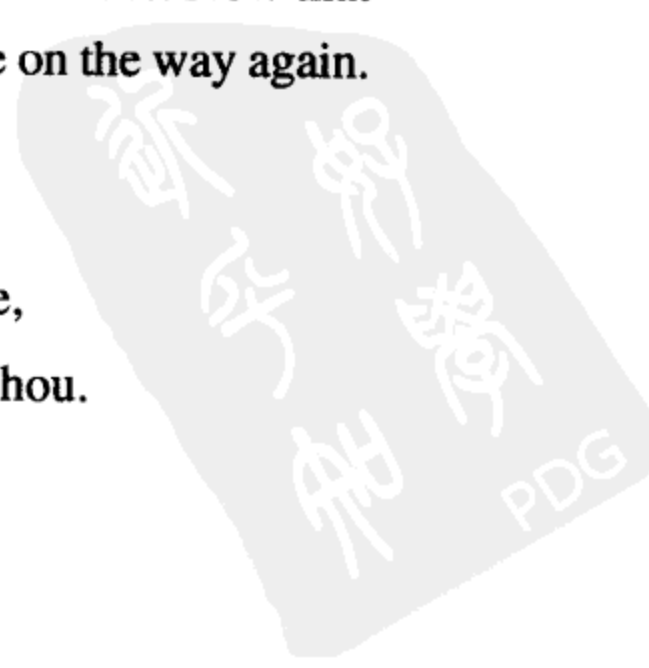
I am Emperor Xuanzong of the Tang Dynasty. On my east inspection by carriage to Luoyang, I stop over outside Tongguan Pass. Now that breakfast is over, Eunuch Gao, announce my edict to be on the way again.

(Eunuch Gao announces the edict to set off)

(To the tune of Wangwuxiangfan)

When the stars disappear at the twinkle of an eye,

The flags lead the way into the outskirts of Shanzhou.



仙公河上谁传道？
三生帝女人悲杳，
万乘亲巡到。

〔生跪伏介〕知陕州事前翰林院学士兼知制诰臣卢生，领合州官吏百姓男女迎驾。

〔上问介〕那知州可是前日状元卢生？

〔裴〕是。

〔上〕平身。

〔生〕万岁万岁万万岁。

〔上〕前面高耸耸的是何物？

〔生〕出关路险，搭有天桥。

〔上〕天桥么？天将风雨。

〔生〕所谓雨师洒道，风伯清尘。

Which immortal is preaching on the river?
The fairy princesses are no longer in woe
When ten thousand carriages come by.

LU SHENG:

(Kowtows)

Magistrate of Shanzhou, former Master of the Royal Academy, Edict Drafter Lu Sheng, together with officials and civilians, is here to welcome Your Majesty.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Is the magistrate the former Number-One Scholar Lu Sheng?

PEI GUANGTING:

Yes, he is.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Rise to your feet.

LU SHENG:

A long, long life to Your Majesty.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

What is it that towers in front of us?

LU SHENG:

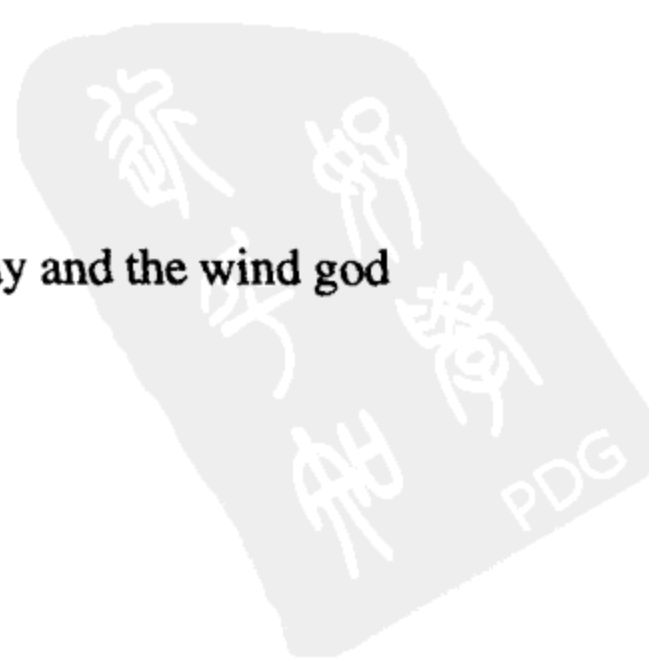
As the road outside the pass is precipitous, an overhead passage has been built.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Is this an overhead passage? A storm is looming.

LU SHENG:

As the saying goes, "The rain god sprinkles on the way and the wind god sweeps away the dust."



〔上笑介〕趑行。

〔合〕看砥柱，
望石桥，
山川天险出云霄。
离宫渺，
帐殿遥，
二陵风雨在西崤。

〔上〕传旨且住，避雨片时。问陕州有何行殿？

〔生〕有万岁巡行绣岭宫。

〔上〕怎见的？

〔生〕有诗为证。

〔上〕可奏来。

〔生〕臣谨奏：春日迟迟春草绿，野棠开尽飘香玉。绣岭宫前鹤发翁，犹唱开元太平曲。

〔上〕听此诗，昔年游幸，如在眼前。





EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Smiles)

Let's be on our way.

ALL:

Look at the Dizhu Pillar
And the Stone Bridge:
The natural barriers rise above the clouds.
Far away is the temporary palace
And the court set in the tent:
Storms hit the two mausoleums in Mount Xixiao.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Pass on my edict to stop awhile to shelter from the rain. Is there a temporary palace in Shanzhou?

LU SHENG:

There is a Green-Peak Palace, where Your Majesty once stayed.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

How do you know it?

LU SHENG:

A poem will serve as evidence.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Recite the poem.

LU SHENG:

Now I humbly recite the poem for Your Majesty.

When vernal grass turns green in spring,/ The wild crab-apple petals have begun to fall./ A white-haired old man is singing a song/ Before the Green-Peak Palace for Emperor Xuanzong.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

When I hear this song, my last inspection seems to revive before my eyes.



〔生〕万岁，喜天开日朗，鸾驾可行。

〔上〕传旨迤逦而进。

【绛都春】

擂鼓鸣梢，
望山程险处，
过了天桥。

则这些截断了河阳京兆，
早捱过了临潼跣蹬的遥。

太华如梦杳似莲娇，
倒映的这关门窄小。

〔生〕臣卢生谨奏：圣驾已出潼关，到了河口，请登龙舟。

〔上〕朕记此间旧是石路，何用龙舟？

〔生〕臣已开河三百余里，以备圣驾东游。

〔上笑介〕有此奇异之事，朕往观之。〔望介〕呀，真乃水天一色也。

龙兴瞻眺，
真乃是山色、水光相照。





LU SHENG:

Your Majesty, as the sky has cleared up, you can be on your way again.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Pass on my edict to move slowly.

(To the tune of Jiangduchun)

Amid drumbeats resounded in tree branches,

I gaze at the perilous mountain paths

And cross the overhead passage.

The mountains lie between Heyang and Jingzhao

And now Lintong is far behind me.

Compare with the dreamlike Mount Taihua,

The Tongguan Pass looks quite narrow.

LU SHENG:

Your Majesty, we have gone out of Tongguan Pass and reached the riverside. Please embark the Dragon Boat.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

I remember this used to be a rocky road. What's the use of a Dragon Boat?

LU SHENG:

I have dug over three hundred miles of canal for your inspection to the east.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Smiles)

What a miracle! I'll go and have a look.

(Gazes afar)

Oh, what a vast expanse of water and sky!

I look afar

And see a sight of pretty mountains and water.



[内鼓吹]

[上、众登舟介]

[上]下了龙舟。

[生]臣已选下殿脚采女千人，能为棹歌。

[采女叩头，棹歌介]

【出队子】

君王福耀，
谢君王福耀，
凿破了河关一线遥。
翠丝丝杨柳画兰桡，
酒滴向河神吹洞箫。
好摇摇、
等闲平地把天河到了。
[上]美哉！棹歌之女也。

【闹樊楼】

说甚么如花殿脚多奇妙，
那菱歌起处却也鱼沉雁落。
似洛浦凌波照，
甚汉女明妆笑，
在处里有娇娆。
也要你臣子们知道：
新河站偏他妆的恁好。
[内奏乐介]



(Drumbeats and flute music within)

(Emperor Xuanzong and all embark the Dragon Boat)

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Here we are on the Dragon Boat.

LU SHENG:

I have selected a thousand singing girls to tow the boat. They can sing ballads as well.

(Female singers kowtow and sing boat songs)

FEMALE SINGERS:

(To the tune of Chuduizi)

With blessing from Your Majesty,

Thanks to the blessing from Your Majesty,

We have dug a canal between the river and the pass.

With poplars and willows we turn the banks into corridors;

We offer wine and play flutes to the River God.

We sail the boat

From the earth to the Milky Way.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

How pretty these boat-song singers are!

(To the tune of Naofanlou)

What pretty boat-song singers!

Where songs resound, true beauties appear.

Like the Goddess of Luo River on water surface

And Princess Zhaojun with make-up,

These singers here are pretty indeed.

You ministers should know

That the new canal is best decorated here.

(Music within)



〔生〕臣之妻清河崔氏，备有牙盘一千品献上。

〔上笑介〕准卿奏。

〔生进酒介〕臣卢生谨上千秋万岁酒。

【莺画眉】

金盞酌仙桃，
滴金茎湛露膏，
臣膝行而进临天表。
牙盘献水陆珍肴，
菱歌奏洞庭天乐。

〔上笑介〕

〔合〕今朝，
有幸云霄里，
得近天颜微笑。

〔上〕牙盘所进，分赐护从人等。卿平身。

〔生呼万岁起介〕

〔上〕前面船只数千队奏乐器，是什么船？





LU SHENG:

My wife Cui from Qinghe County has prepared a thousand plates of delicacies for Your Majesty.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Smiles)

I have no objection.

LU SHENG:

(Presents wine)

Your Majesty, I present the wine to wish you a long, long life.

(To the tune of Yinghuamei)

With fairy peach wine in the golden cup,

Like dewdrops containing Your Majesty's grace,

I present the wine to you with submission.

The plates hold delicacies from water and from land;

The ballads sound like heavenly music.

(Emperor Xuanzong smiles)

ALL:

It is our great fortune

To see Your Majesty smile with pleasure.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Distribute the delicacies on the plates among the attendants. Lu Sheng, rise to your feet.

LU SHENG:

Long live the Emperor!

(Rises to his feet)

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

There is music on the teams of thousands of ships in front of us. What ships are these?



〔生〕此皆江南粮餉，各路珍奇，逐队焚香，奏他本土之乐。

〔上笑介〕

【滴滴金】

〔众〕看几千艘排列的无喧闹，
一队队军民齐跪着，
顶香炉啣着细乐。
各路的货郎儿分旗号，
白粮船到了。
有那番舶上回回跳。
江汉来朝，
都到这河宗献宝。

〔上〕二卿知昔日陕州之路乎？石岭崎岖，江南粮运至此，驴驰车载，万苦千辛。因此祖宗以来，遇粮运稍迟，俺君臣们巡狩东都就食。不想今日有此卢生也。

【啄木儿】

〔上〕他时路，
石径乔，
粮运关中车辘劳。
怕干枯了走陆地蛟龙，
谁拨转个透海金鳌？

〔生〕臣谨奏：这新河望万岁赐以新名。



LU SHENG:

These are teams of ships transporting grains from south of the Yangtze River and native products from all over the country. Joss sticks are burnt team by team and native music is played.

(Emperor Xuanzong smiles)

ALL:

*(To the tune of **Didijin**)*

Thousands of ships are sailing in order,
With army men and civilians on their knees,
Holding incense burners and playing sweet music.
The merchant ships are sailing under different colours,
Followed by grain ships under white flags
With Muslims dancing on tribal boats.
All those from the Yangtze and Han
Gather here to present their treasures.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Do you remember the road to Shanzhou in the former days? There were twists and turns on the rocky peaks. It was a hard journey to transport grains from south of the Yangtze River to this place. Since ancient times, if grains did not arrive in time, we had to move to the east capital for meals. I did not expect that Lu Sheng would have achieved this feat.

*(To the tune of **Zhuomu'er**)*

Along the former trails
Of rocks and stones,
It was a hard journey to transport grains.
When everybody drove heavy carts,
Who had ever thought of using ships?

LU SHENG:

Your Majesty, will you be so kind as to grant the canal a name?



〔上〕可赐名永济河。

〔生〕万岁。

〔裴合〕是开元天子巡游到，
新河永济传徽号，
稳倩取岁岁江南百万漕。

〔上〕前岸屹然而立，头向河南，尾向河北者，何物也？

〔生〕铁牛，以镇水灾。

〔上〕宣裴光庭，卿长于文翰，可作铁牛颂，以彰卢生之功。

〔裴〕万岁，臣谨奏。

〔上〕可奏来。

〔裴〕天元干，地顺坤。元一元而大武，顺百顺而为牛。牛其春物之始乎。铁乃秋金之利乎。其为制也，寓精奇特，壮趾贞坚。首有如山之正，角有不崩之容。至乃融巨冶，炊洪蒙。执大象，驱神功。





EMPEROR XUANZONG:

I will name it the Eternal Benefit River.

LU SHENG:

Long live the Emperor!

LU SHENG, PEI GUANGTING:

Emperor Xuanzong makes an eastern tour

And names the new river Eternal Benefit.

Grains from the south can arrive every year.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

What is it that stands erect on the bank in front of us, with its head facing the south of the river and with its tail facing the north of the river?

LU SHENG:

It's an iron bull to control floods.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Come forward, Pei Guangting. Since you are good at writing essays, you may write an essay entitled *In Praise of the Iron Bull* to commemorate Lu Sheng's merits.

PEI GUANGTING:

Your Majesty, may I present the essay now?

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Yes, you may.

PEI GUANGTING:

As heaven is the originator, it ranks the first; as the earth is subordinate to heaven, it ranks the second. What originates everything creates the sacrificial bull; what is subordinate to everything is the bull. The bull is the originator of water; iron is a resource of metal. The iron bull is figured with a singular spirit, four firm hoofs, an erect head and two sturdy horns. It was melted in a huge furnace and tempered in the universe. It

遂尔东临周畿，西尽虢略。当函关之路，望若随仙；近桃林之塞，时同归兽。昔李冰镇蜀，立石咒于江流；张騫凿空，饮牵郎于汉渚。盖金为水火既济，牛则山川舍诸。所谓载华岳而不重，镇河海而不泄，其在兹与。臣光庭作颂。颂曰：杳冥精兮混元气，炉鞴椎牛载厚地。巨灵西撑角峒崿，冯夷东流吼滂沛。坚立不动神之至，层堤顾护人所庇。帝赐新河名永济，玉帛朝宗千万岁。

〔上笑介〕奇哉颂也。卢生刻之碑铭，汝功劳在万万年，不小也。

〔生〕万岁。

【三段子】

〔上〕河源恁高，
动天河江潮海潮。
词源恁豪，
剪文章金刀笔刀。
卢卿啊，





conforms to the great Tao and displays the power of gods. It reaches the border of Zhou to the east and reaches Guo to the west. It stands on the way to Hanguan Pass, looking as if it were following the immortals; it is near the fortress of Taolin, looking as if it were an animal returning home. When Li Bing was a commander in Shu, he set a stone wild bull in the river; when Zhang Qian opened a road, he watered a bull on the brink of Hanshui River. The metal stops both water and fire while the bull stays both in the mountains and rivers. Therefore, Mount Hua is planted here without feeling heavy and river waters are controlled without leaking because the iron bull is here. Herewith is my eulogy of the iron bull: With distant spirit and chaotic air, the bull is tempered in the furnace and planted in thick earth. The river god splits the mountain with its horns in the west while the Yellow River roars toward the east. The iron bull stands erect with god's blessing and guards the high riverbanks with men's power. When His Majesty names the new river Eternal Benefit, articles of tribute will flow in forever.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Smiles)

What a wonderful eulogy! Lu Sheng's name will be engraved on the tablet. Your magnificent merits will benefit future generations.

LU SHENG:

Long live the Emperor!

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(To the tune of Sanduanzi)

High is the river source

That brings currents from the heavenly stream.

Powerful is the intelligent source

That inspires the fluency in your essay.

Lu Sheng,



这柳堤儿敢配的甘棠召；

裴卿啊，

你金牛作颂似河清照。

〔众合〕便是。

禹凿鸿碑也只感帝尧。

〔内马声〕

〔宇文介〕岸上走马，有何事情紧急哩？

〔小卒上〕星忙来路远，火速报君知。宇文爷，报子叩头。

〔宇〕有甚军情？缓缓说来。

【斩双鸡】

〔卒〕边关上，

边关上，

番军来炒。

〔宇〕有大将王君奭在哩。

〔卒〕君奭将，

君奭将，

就中难道。





With your willows you may equal Earl Shao with his pear trees.

Pei Guanting,

Your eulogy of the iron bull is as lucid as the river water.

ALL:

True indeed!

King Yu's tablet moved King Yao alone.

(Sound of a galloping horse within)

YUWEN RONG:

(Gazes afar)

A horse is galloping along the riverbank. Is there something urgent?

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

I gallop from afar to make an urgent report. Master Yuwen, the messenger kowtows to you.

YUWEN RONG:

What's the military situation? Tell me slowly.

MESSENGER:

(To the tune of Zhanshuangji)

On the border,

On the border,

The Tubo troops come to invade.

YUWEN RONG:

General Wang Junchuo is taking command there.

MESSENGER:

General Junchuo,

General Junchuo,

It's hard to speak of him.



〔宇〕难道是杀了？

〔卒〕刻下，
风闻非小。

〔宇〕有玉门关哩。

〔卒〕敢撞进了玉门关，
那边儿不要。

〔宇〕不要那边，难道要这边？

〔卒起介〕便要不得这边厢，
也商量怎了？〔下〕

〔宇奏介〕臣宇文融启万岁：有边报紧急，吐蕃杀进长城，王君
奥抵敌不过。伏乞圣裁。

〔上惊介〕这等怎生处分？

【上小楼】

虚器，
非常震扰。



YUWEN RONG:

Do you mean he is killed?

MESSENGER:

For the moment,

The rumour is very much in the air.

YUWEN RONG:

There is the Yumen Pass to stop the Tubo troops.

MESSENGER:

They've broken through the Yumen Pass

And crossed from that side of the pass.

YUWEN RONG:

Do you mean to say that they have crossed from that side and occupied this side?

MESSENGER:

(Rises to his feet)

If they are not on this side,

What am I to report to you?

(Exit)

YUWEN RONG:

(To Emperor Xuanzong)

Your Majesty, there is an urgent report from the border area. Tubo troops have crossed the Great Wall and Wang Junchuo was defeated. We are waiting for your edict.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(In a panic)

What shall we do then?

(To the tune of Shangxiaolou)

As the border is defenceless,

I am thrown into a panic.



去长安路几遥？
急忙间扈驾的难差调。
酸溜溜的文官班里，
谁诵过兵书去战讨？

〔字背笑介〕开河到被卢生做了一功，恰好又这等一个题目处置他。

〔回奏介〕臣与文班商量，除是卢生之才，可以前去征战。

〔上〕卿言是也。

〔生〕兵凶战危，臣不敢任。

〔上〕寡人知卿，卿不可辞。即拜卿为御史中丞，兼领河西陇右四道节度使，挂印征西大将军。星夜起程，无得迟误。朕有御衣战袍一领，赐卿御前穿挂了。谢恩！

〔生应起介〕

〔内鼓吹〕

〔生换戎装，谢恩介〕新升御史中丞兼领河西陇右四道节度使臣卢生见驾叩头。

How far is it away from Chang'an?

It is hard to assign a general.

Among the feeble officials,

Who has studied arts of war and will go into battle?

YUWEN RONG:

(Giggles aside)

Lu Sheng has done a deed of merit in digging the canal, and now there's another hard nut for him to crack.

(To Emperor Xuanzong)

I've consulted the officials here. Lu Sheng alone is capable of going into battle.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

You are right.

LU SHENG:

I am not capable of fierce battles.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

I know your capability. You should not decline the appointment. You are appointed the Supervisory Minister, Administrator and Military Commander of the four regions in Hexi and Longyou, and General of Quenching the West. You are to set off by night without delay. I'll give you my war robe for you to wear before my very eyes. That's my edict!

(Lu Sheng responds and rises to his feet)

(Sound of drums within)

LU SHENG:

(Changes into the war robe and thanks Emperor Xuanzong)

Lu Sheng, the newly-appointed Supervisory Minister, Administrator and Military Commander of the four regions in Hexi and Longyou, kowtows to Your Majesty.

〔上〕平身。卿去，朕无西顾之忧矣。

【耍鲍老】

边关事多应难料，
且把个锦将军装束的俏。
你头插了侍中貂，
也只索从征调。

〔裴〕汗马功劳，
比寻河外国，
那辛勤较。

〔宇〕俺这里玩波涛临潼斗宝。
你可也展雄样逞英豪。

〔合〕遵钦限，
把阳关唱好，
是你封侯道。

〔内鼓吹开船介〕

〔上〕卢生，卢生，

【尾声】

我暂把洛阳花绕一遭，
专等你捷音来报。
那时节啊重叠的荫子封妻恩不小。〔下〕





EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Rise to your feet. With you as the commander, I'll have no worry for the west.

(To the tune of Shuabaolao)

As there are troubles in the border area,
A new general is dressed in the war robe.
Even if you are a civil official,
You have to fight on the battlefield.

PEI GUANGTING:

To fight on the battlefield
Is more strenuous
Than dig a canal away from the capital.

YUWEN RONG:

I have fought a battle of wits with you
And it's your turn to show how brave you are.

ALL:

By the imperial edict,
You are to leave at once
And hope to become a lord.

(Sound of drums and flute music within, for the boat to set sail)

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Lu Sheng, Lu Sheng,

(To the tune of Coda)

I'll make a tour to Luoyang
And wait for your news of victory.
By that time,
I'll grant you one title after another.
(Exit)



〔生跪伏，呼万岁起介〕分付众将官：既然边关紧急，钦限森严，就此起程，不辞夫人而去了。正是：昔日饥寒驱我去，今朝富贵逼人来。〔下〕

〔旦、贴上〕本来银汉是红墙，隔得卢家白玉堂。谁与王昌报消息？尽知三十六鸳鸯。咱和梅香寻相公去来。呀，怎不见了相公也？

【赛观音】

我儿夫知何际？

记不起清河店儿，

抛闪下博陵崔氏。

〔合〕一片无情直恁水流西。

〔贴问介〕一河两岸老哥，见太爷那里去了？



LU SHENG:

(Kowtows)

Long live the Emperor!

(Rises to his feet)

Give my order to the officers: as the situation is urgent on the border, we must follow the imperial edict to set off at once without taking leave of our wives. As the saying goes,

*I was driven by hunger in the past,/ But am pressed by wealth
and rank at present.*

(Exit)

(Enter Miss Cui with Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

*The Milky Way is the scarlet wall,/ That separates the Lu's Jade
Hall./ Who is bringing the news to Wang Chang,/ The man who knows
the lovebirds, thirty-six in all?*

I am going with Meixiang to look for my man. Oh, where has he gone?

(To the tune of Saiguanyin)

Where is my man?

He forgets the inn in Qinghe

And discards his wife Cui from Boling.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

Without a feeling heart,

The river water flows straight to the west.

MEIXIANG:

(Makes inquiry)

Brothers on the riverbanks, do you know where my master is?



〔内〕唐明皇及太爷跨马征番去了。

〔旦哭介〕原来如此。

【前腔】

为征夫添憔悴，
平沙处关河雁低，
杨柳外夕阳烟际。

〔合〕听马嘶声还似在画桥西。

梅香，咱们赶上，送他一程。〔走介〕

【人月圆】

跌着脚，
叫我如何理？
把手的夫妻别离起，
等不得半声将息，
跨马征番直恁急。

〔合〕征尘远，
空盈盈泪眼，
何处追随？



VOICE WITHIN:

Emperor Xuanzong has ordered your master to fight the Tubo troops.

MISS CUI:

(Weeps)

I see.

(To the previous tune)

I grow wan and sallow for my man.

The wild geese fly low near the riverbank;

Beyond the willows the sun sets in the mist.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

The neighing seems to come from the west of the bridge.

MISS CUI:

Meixiang, let's hurry and try to be in time to see him off.

(Walks on)

*(To the tune of **Renyueyuan**)*

I tumble on the ground,

But what am I to do?

Man and wife are about to separate —

At short notice

He is rushing to the battlefield.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

As the man has gone a long way off,

Where is the wife to pursue,

With tears in her eyes?



〔贴〕赶不上，且回州去，再作区处。

【前腔】

去则去，
要去谁拦你？
便妇女军中颓甚气。
咱回家今夕你何州睡？
割不断夫妻一肚皮。
〔合〕凄凉起，
除则是梦中，
和你些儿。

河功就了去边州，
人不见兮水空流。
山上有山何处望？
一天明月大刀头。





MISS CUI:

It's impossible to catch up with him. Let's go back to the prefecture and make other plans.

(To the previous tune)

You may go if you like

And who is going to stop you?

What harm will women do in the army?

When I go home, where will you stay tonight?

Together man and wife should dwell.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

Sadly, the wife will stay alone,

Except to be with you

In a dream of her own.

**Going to the front when the canal is done,
The man is gone and waters flow on and on.
Where can I look beyond the mountains?
Only the moon returns now that he is gone.**



第十五出 西谍

〔净外扮将军上〕台上霜威凌草木，军中杀气傍旌旗。

我们河西节度使府中副将是也。大都督卢爷升帐，在此伺候。

【金珑璁】

〔生引众上〕河陇逼西番，

为兵戈大将伤残。

争些儿撞破了玉门关。

君王西顾切，

起关东挂印登坛，

长剑倚天山。

【集唐】三十登坛众所尊，红旗半卷出辕门。前军已战交河北，直斩楼兰报国恩。

我卢生，自陕州而来，因河西大将王君奭与吐蕃战死，河陇动





Scene Fifteen **Sending a Spy to the West**

(Enter two Assistant Generals)

TWO ASSISTANT GENERALS:

The terrace frost threatens grass and trees;/ The military valour stays with the flags.

We are Assistant Generals in the office of the Hexi Administrator and Military Commander. As Grand Military Commander Lu is going to hold office, we have to wait on him here.

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his attendants)

LU SHENG:

*(To the tune of **Jinlongcong**)*

As Hexi and Longyou are close to the Tubo troops,
Warriors are wounded or killed on the battlefields
And Yumen Pass is nearly broken.

The emperor is anxious about the west
And makes me commander at the terrace,
For me to fight near Mount Tianshan.

*(In the pattern of **Collected Tang Poems**) I became commander when I was thirty years old/ And left my office with the red flags half-rolled./ The vanguards fought on the north of Jiaohe River/ And would conquer the Loulan stronghold.*

I am Lu Sheng from Shanzhou. As the Hexi general Wang Junchuo

摇，朝廷震恐，命下官挂印征西。兵法云：臣主和同，国不可攻。我欲遣一人往行离间，先除了悉那逻丞相，则龙莽势孤，不战而下。此乃机密之事也。访的军中有一尖哨，叫做打番儿汉，讲得三十六国番语，穿回入汉，来去如飞。早已唤来也。

【第一段】

〔旦扮小军插旗上〕莽干坤一片江山，
千山万水分程限。
偏我这产西凉，
直着边关。
也是我野花胎，
这头分瓣。

〔见介〕

〔生〕呀，你便是打番儿汉。你可打的番？通的汉？

【第二段】

〔旦舞介〕打番儿汉，
俺是打番儿汉，
哨尖头有俺的正身迭办。

died in fighting the Tubo troops, Hexi and Longyou are in danger. His Majesty is thrown into a panic and orders me to take command and fight in the west. According to the art of war, "When the ruler and the subordinates are in harmony, the nation is unshakable." I intend to send someone to sow discord among the Tubo camp. When Prime Minister Xi Naluo is purged, Re Longmang will be left without assistance and be defeated easily. This is a top secret. I've found out that a scout in the army by the name of Tubo Han can speak thirty-six Tubo dialects. He comes and goes between the Tubo tribes and the Hans as if in a no-man's land. I have summoned him.

(Enter Scout with a small banner on his back)

SCOUT:

(To the tune of Tune One)

The vast land on earth
Is severed by mountains and rivers.
As the West Liang region here
Is close to the frontiers,
I am like a wild flower,
With a petal on this side.

(Kowtows to Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

Are you Tubo Han? Do you speak both the Tubo dialects and the Han language?

SCOUT:

(Dances)

(To the tune of Tune Two)

Tubo Han,
I am Tubo Han,
A scout worthy of the name.



〔生〕祖贯是羌种，汉儿种？

〔旦〕祖贯南番，到这无爷娘田地甘凉畔，顺风儿拜别了闷摩山。你收了这小番儿在眼，一名支数口粮单。小番儿身才轻巧，小番儿口舌阑番。小番儿曾到羊同党项，小番儿也到那昆仑白阑。小番儿会吐鲁浑般骨都古鲁，小番儿会别失巴的毕力班阑。小番儿会一留咖喇的讲着铁里，小番儿也会剔溜秃律打的山丹。但教俺穿营入寨无危难，白茫茫沙气寒。将一领荅思叭儿头毛上按，将一个哨弼力儿唇綽上安。敢则是夜行昼伏，说甚么水宿风餐？

〔生〕养军千日，用在一朝。我今日有用你之处，你可去得？

〔旦〕

【第三段】

止不过敲象牙，
抽豹尾，
有甚么去不得也那颜？

〔生〕如今吐蕃国悉那逻丞相足智多谋，为我国之害。要你走入番中，做个细作，报与番王，只说悉那逻丞相因番王年老，有谋叛之意，好歹教那番王害了他。你去得，去不得？



LU SHENG:

Are you a Tubo or Han descendent?

SCOUT:

A descendent from southern Tubo, I come to the uninhabited Ganshui and Liangzhou, far away from my native Menmo Mountain. You have enlisted me and I get several portions of salary. I am nimble; I am eloquent. I have been to Yangtong and Dangxiang; I have been to Kunlun and Bailan. I know such Tuluhun words as *gudugulu*; I know such Bieshiba words as *bilibanlan*. I speak Tieli words like *yiliugala*; I speak Shandan words like *tiliutulu*. I can brave dangers to enter enemy camps in the cold desert, wearing a felt hat on my head and a mask on my mouth. I can travel by night and sleep by day, braving wind and storm.

LU SHENG:

“Keep an army for a thousand days and use it once in a while.” When I need your service today, are you ready to go?

SCOUT:

(To the tune of Tune Three)

Unless you let me knock an elephant's tusks
Or break the leopard tail,
What else can't I do?

LU SHENG:

The Tubo Prime Minister Xi Naluo is wise and resourceful. He is a sworn enemy of our country. I'd like to ask you to enter the Tubo camps as an agent to tell the Tubo King that Prime Minister Xi Naluo intends to usurp the throne because the Tubo King is old. In this way the Tubo King might kill Xi Naluo. Can you accept this mission?

〔旦〕这场事大难大难，
你着俺行反间，
向刀尖剑树万层山。
你教俺赴也不赴，
顽也不顽？
太师啊，
你教俺没事的诘人反，
将何动惮？
着甚么通关？

〔生〕但逢着番兵，三三两两传说去：“悉那逻丞相谋反。”自然彼中疑惑，要甚么通关呢？

〔旦〕天也，
你教俺两片皮把镇胡天的玉柱轻调侃，
三寸舌把架瀚海金梁倒放番，
俺其实有口难安。

〔生〕既然流言难布，我有一计：千条小纸儿写下“悉那逻谋反”四大字，到彼中遍处粘贴，方成其事。

〔旦〕此计可中。

【第四段】

则将这纸条儿，
纸条儿窄地的庄严看。
呀，一千个纸条儿，拿着怎好？





SCOUT:

It is a difficult task
For me to drive a wedge between them,
As if between the teeth of a tiger.
Shall I go
Or shall I refuse?

Your Excellency,

You tell me to spread the rumour about a rebellion,
But what shall I do
And how shall I contact you?

LU SHENG:

Whenever you meet any Tubo soldiers, you just say that Prime Minister Xi Naluo is going to start a rebellion. Suspicion will naturally arise. What contact do you need?

SCOUT:

Heavens!
You tell me to scoff the heaven pillar with my lips
And turn the sea beams with my tongue,
But my words aren't what's to be sung.

LU SHENG:

Since it's difficult to spread the rumour, I have a scheme ready for you. Just write the words "Xi Naluo is to rebel" on a thousand slips of paper and paste them in the Tubo camps. And then the job is done.

SCOUT:

That will do.

(To the tune of Tune Four)

I look at the slips of paper,
And look at the slips of paper closely.

Well, how can I carry a thousand slips of paper with me?



〔生想介〕便是。俺有计了：打听番中木叶山下，一道泉水，流入番王帐殿之中，给你竹签儿一片，将一千片树叶儿，刺着“悉逻谋反”四个字，就如虫蚁蛀的一般，上风头吹去，流入帐下。他只道天神所使，断然起疑。此乃御沟红叶之计也。

〔旦〕妙哉，妙哉！

须不比知风识水俏红颜，

倒使着寒江枫叶丹。

你道滩也么滩，

透燕支山外山。

小番儿去也。

〔生〕赏你一道红，十角酒，三千贯响钞，买干粮馍馍去。成事，赏你千户告身。

〔旦〕怀揣着片醉题红锦囊出关，

扑着口星去星还。

到木叶河湾，

则愿迟共疾央及煞有商量的流水潺颜，

好和歹掇赚他没套数的番王着眼。



LU SHENG:

(Meditates)

That's true. I've found out that a stream at the foot of Mount Muye flows into the Tubo King's tent palace. Write the words "Naluo is to rebel" on the tree leaves with a bamboo needle, as if the leaves were bitten by insects. Carry the leaves to the upper stream and let them flow into the tent. The King will think that the heavenly gods have done the job and will surely be in suspicion. This is the scheme of "Red Leaves in the Royal Ditch".

SCOUT:

Wonderful, wonderful!

You do not use intelligent pretty girls,
But use red maple leaves in cold rills.
I'm going to the shoals
And rouge-coloured hills.

I'll set off at once.

LU SHENG:

I'll give you a red ribbon, ten cups of wine and three thousand coins to buy rations. When the job is done, you will be appointed Chief of a Thousand Households.

SCOUT:

I leave the pass with a wonderful scheme,
Ready to come and go by night.
When I reach the Muye Stream,
I'll take advantage of the flowing waters
And deceive the short-witted Tubo King.



〔生〕你道叶儿上写甚来？

【煞尾】

无笔仗指甲纸使着木刀钻，
有灵心似虫蚁儿猛把书文按。

怎题的汉宫中无端士女愁？

则写着锦番邦悉那逻丞相反。〔下〕

〔生〕番儿去的猛，此事必成。但整理兵马，相机而进。

贤豪在敌国，
反间为上策。
目睹捷旌旗，
耳听好消息。





LU SHENG:

Repeat to me what is to be written on the leaves.

SCOUT:

(To the tune of Coda)

I do not write with a pen but with a bamboo needle,

With an inspiring spirit of insects or ants.

I do not write about the woes of palace maids,

But about the rebellion of the Tubo Prime Minister.

(Exit)

LU SHENG:

The scout is gone with a firm resolve and he is bound to succeed. I'll get troops ready and advance when opportunity arises.

With wise and brave men in the enemy camp,

The best way to defeat them is to sow discord.

I shall soon see victorious flags

And hear good news as my reward.



第十六出 大捷

【北一枝花】

〔净扮龙莽上〕杀过贺兰山，
血染燕支塞。
展开番主界，
踏破汉儿牌。
氍毹登台，
绣帽狮蛮带，
与中华斗将材。
三尺剑秋水摩揩，
七围帐莲花宝盖。

自家热龙莽，吐蕃称大将。撞破玉门关，把定了铜符帐。俺便待长驱甘凉，进窥关陇。则为俺国里悉那逻丞相，他智勇双全，一步九算，已差人商议去了。俺想自古有将必有相，一手怎做得天大事也。



Scene Sixteen **Grand Victory**

(Enter Re Longmang)

RE LONGMANG:

(To the tune of Northern Yizhijia)

Our troops have fought across Mount Helan
With bloody battles near the border fortresses.
To expand the Tubo King's territory,
We have trampled on Han's shields.
Dressed in felt,
Embroidered hats and lion bands,
We rival the Han generals of great power.
Our swords are wiped with autumn water;
Our tents are domed in the shape of a lotus-flower.

I am Re Longmang, a Tubo general. I have occupied the Yumen Pass and taken firm command of the troops. I shall be pushing on to Ganshui and Liangzhou and threatening Guanxi and Longyou. As our Prime Minister Xi Naluo is both intelligent and resourceful, making each move with nine considerations, I have sent for his consultations. I know that a good general must rely on the assistance of a good prime minister since ancient times. Nothing can be achieved with single-sided efforts.



中华书局
PDG

【双令江儿水】

悉逻相国，
想起那悉逻相国。
他生的有人物在，
论番朝无赛盖。
有胸怀，
好兵书，
好战策。
他和俺答的来，
我有他展的开。
一个边台，
一个朝阶，
合着这两条龙翻大海。

〔众〕可也怕唐家江山广大，人物乖巧？

〔净〕汉儿恁乖，
也不见汉儿恁乖。
唐家多大，
抢着看唐家多大。
则俺恨不的展天山打破了汉摩崖。

〔番卒插令箭上〕吉力煞麻尼，撒里哈麻赤。报复元帅：悉那逻丞相谋反，被赞普爷杀了。

〔净惊介〕怎么说？





(To the tune of Shuanglingjiang'ershui)

Prime Minister Xi Naluo,
Prime Minister Xi Naluo comes to my mind.
He is a man of men,
Without equals in the Tubo court.
He has high inspirations,
Well versed in military classics
And the arts of war.
He gets along well with me
And I do better with his help.
With one in the border area
And the other in the court,
The two dragons may disturb the sea.

ALL:

Are you afraid of the vast territory and the wise people in Tang?

RE LONGMANG:

The Hans are said to be wise,
But I do not see how they are wise.
The Tang Dynasty has a vast territory,
And we shall grab from them a vast territory.
I shall turn Mount Tianshan and break Han cliffs.

(Enter a Tubo soldier with a flag of command on his back)

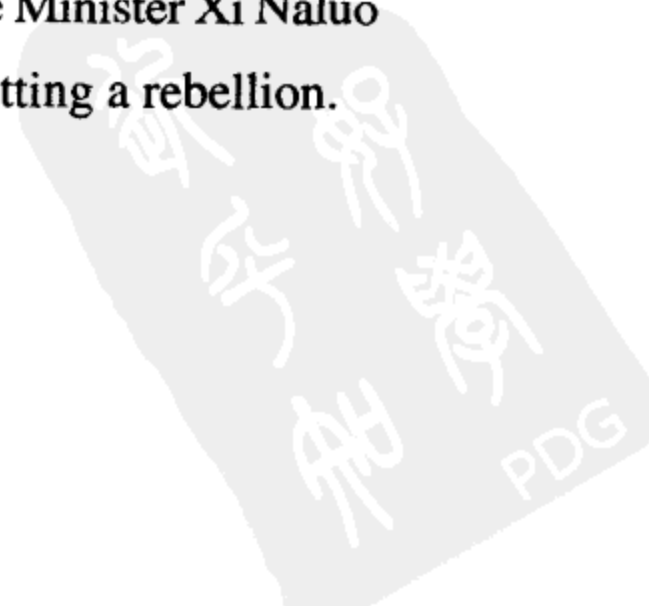
TUBO SOLDIER:

Jilishamani, Salihamachi. I report to the general: Prime Minister Xi Naluo has been put to death by the King because he was plotting a rebellion.

RE LONGMANG:

(Surprised)

What did you say?



〔丑再说介〕

〔净〕谁见来？

〔丑〕菩萨见。

〔净〕怎生菩萨见？

〔丑〕元帅不知，本国有木叶山水泉，直透我王宫帐，流下有千片叶儿，虫蛀其上，有“悉逻谋反”四大字，国王爷见了，差人出山巡视，并无一人。国王爷说道：天神指教了。请丞相爷吃马乳酒，脑背后铜槌一下，脑浆迸流。

〔净惊介〕这等，丞相可死了？

〔丑〕可不死了。

〔净哭介〕俺的悉逻丞相，天也，天也！

〔扮报子上〕报，报，报，唐家卢元帅大兵杀过来了。



TUBO SOLDIER:

Prime Minister Xi Naluo has been put to death by the King because he was plotting a rebellion.

RE LONGMANG:

Who has seen it?

TUBO SOLDIER:

The Buddha has seen it.

RE LONGMANG:

How has the Buddha seen it?

TUBO SOLDIER:

You know, a stream at the foot of Mount Muye flows into the King's tent palace, carrying a thousand leaves with the words "Xi Naluo is to rebel" bitten by insects. When the King saw these leaves, he sent men to search the mountain but no one was found. The King said that the heavenly god has sent a message. He told the Prime Minister to drink some horse-milk wine. A copper hammer hit him on the back of his head and his brains dashed out.

RE LONGMANG:

Then, is the Prime Minister dead?

TUBO SOLDIER:

Naturally.

RE LONGMANG:

(Weeps)

Oh my dear Prime Minister Xi Naluo! Gracious heavens! Gracious heavens!

(Enter Tubo Messenger)

TUBO MESSENGER:

Report, report, report! Marshal Lu of the Tang Dynasty is leading his army toward us!



〔净〕这等，怎了，怎了？

【尾】

急翻身撒马营门外，
猛咚咚番鼓阵旗开。
天啊，
可能够金蹬上马敲、
重奏的凯？〔下〕

【清江引】

〔生引众上〕
大唐家有的是骁雄将，
出马休拦挡。
军儿走的慌，
阵儿摆的长。
定西番，
早擒下先锋热龙莽。

自家奉诏征番，用智杀了丞相悉那逻，此时番将势孤可擒也。三军前进！〔下〕

【清江引】

〔净引众上〕
普天西，
出落的番回将，
大将热龙莽。





RE LONGMANG:

What's to be done? What's to be done?

(To the tune of Coda)

In haste I mount the steed in front of the camp
And open the camp gate amid drumbeats.

Gracious heavens!

Can I mount the steed
And carry another day?

(Exit)

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by soldiers)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

The Tang Dynasty abounds in valiant warriors;
The enemy will hinder their movements in vain.
The soldiers hurry on
With the formation stretching long.
To conquer the Tubo troops,
I'll capture the vanguard Re Longmang.

To conquer the Tubo troops by imperial edict, I have killed Prime Minister Xi Naluo by schemes. It's time to capture the Tubo general now that he is isolated. Soldiers, march on!

(Exeunt all)

(Enter Re Longmang, followed by Tubo soldiers)

RE LONGMANG:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

From the west
Comes the Tubo general —
General Re Longmang.



番鼓儿紧紧帮，
番铙的点点当，
汗呼呼海螺螭吹的响。

[见介]

[净]来将何人？

[生]大唐卢元帅。

[净]认得咱龙莽将军么？

[生]正为认的你，才好拿你哩。

[净]你有王君奭那厮手段么？

[生笑介]你家悉那逻那厮何在？

[战介]

[番败下介]

[又上，战，番败下介]

[生领众杀上]呀，热龙莽败走了，我军星夜赶去，遇城收城，遇镇收镇，杀出阳关以西。正是：饶他走上焰磨天，也要腾身赶将去。〔下〕



Tubo drums beat;
Tubo cymbals sound;
Tubo horns ring all around.

(To Lu Sheng)

Who are you?

LU SHENG:

I am Marshal Lu of the Tang Dynasty.

RE LONGMANG:

Do you know me, General Re Longmang?

LU SHENG:

It's just because I know you that I can capture you.

RE LONGMANG:

Are you as valiant as Wang Junchuo?

LU SHENG:

(Sneers)

Where is your Xi Naluo?

(Fights with Re Longmang)

(Tubo soldiers are defeated. Exeunt all)

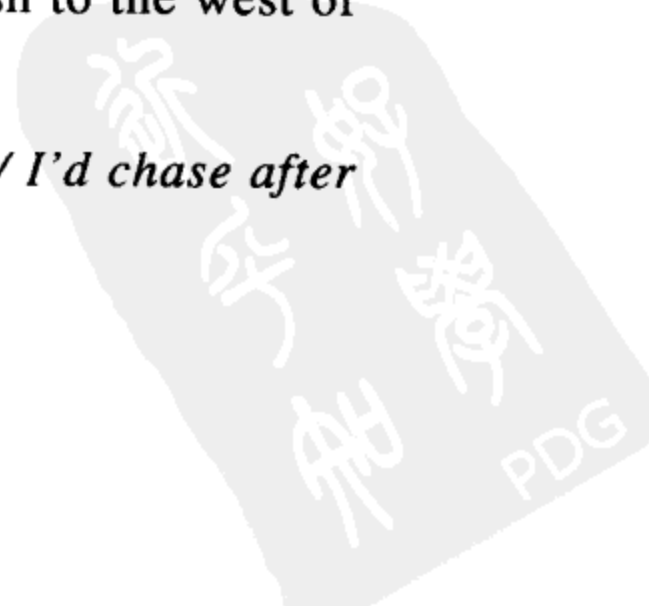
(Re-enter all. A fight ensues. Tubo soldiers are defeated. Exeunt all)

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his soldiers in battle cry)

Ah, now that Re Longmang has been defeated, our troops will chase the enemy and recapture cities and towns until we push to the west of Yangguan Pass. It is true indeed,

Even if he ran away to Suyama, the top of sky, I'd chase after him and catch him there.

(Exeunt all)



【脱布衫】

〔莽领败兵走上〕想当初壮气豪洵，
把全唐看的忒虚嚣。
到如今战败而逃，
可正是一报还一报。
把都们，孩儿怎了也！

【小梁州】

〔哭介〕折没煞万丈旄头气不销，
鬼哭神号。
明光光十万甲兵刀，
成抛调，
残箭引弓梢。
〔内鼓噪报介〕汉兵到也，
〔莽〕走，走，走，那来的休得追赶！

【么】

兔窝儿敢盼得番兵到，
锦江山乱起唐旗号，
闪周遭天数难逃。
血雨漂，
兵风噪，
难凭国史说咱是汉天骄。

罢了，罢了。千里之外，便是祁连山，乃胡汉之界，待我想一计来。





(Enter Re Longmang, followed by his defeated soldiers)

RE LONGMANG:

(To the tune of Tuobushan)

I was in high spirits
And looked down upon the Tang troops.
I am now put to the rout,
A case of "tit for tat".

Warriors, what about our men?

(Weeps)

(To the tune of Xiaoliangzhou)

The warriors die but their spirits remain,
Crying in wild shrieks and howls.
All the soldiers, a hundred thousand in all,
Are now lost,
With arrows remaining on the bows.

(An uproar within)

VOICE WITHIN:

The Han soldiers are coming!

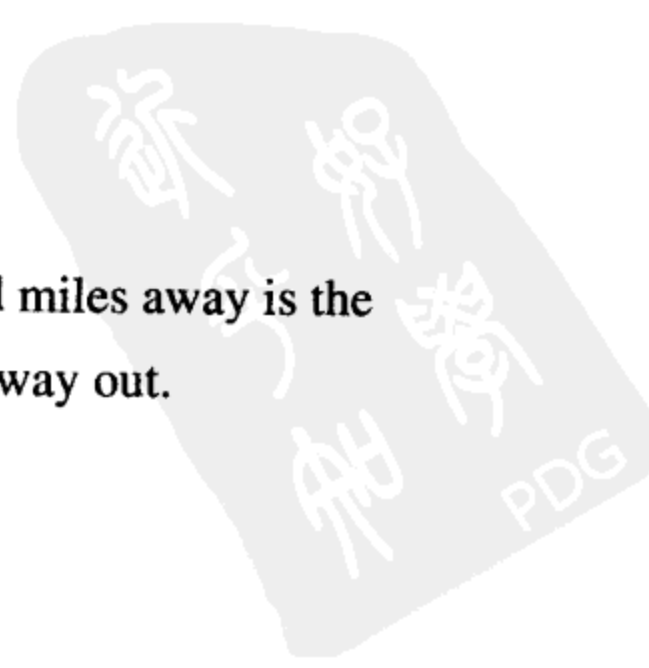
RE LONGMANG:

Withdraw, withdraw, withdraw! I'll stop the chasers!

(To the tune of Yao)

We expect Tubo reinforcement,
But the Tang soldiers have arrived,
Giving us no escape.
On the bloody battlefield
And amid battle cries,
I can hardly conquer the Hans.

All is lost, all is lost! The Qilian Mountain a thousand miles away is the border between the Tubo and Tang. I have to think a way out.



〔内雁叫介〕有计了：不免裂帛为书，系于雁足之上，央他放我一条归路。万一回兵，未可知也。天，天，天，只可惜死了那逡丞相啊！

【耍孩儿】

从来将相难孤吊，
一只手怎生提调。
如风卷叶似沙漂，
死淋侵无路奔逃。
真乃是玉龙战败飘鳞甲，
野兽惊回湿羽毛。
央及煞孤鸿叫，
一两句中肠打动，
千万个大国求饶。

【煞尾】

南朝那一敲，
西番这一器，
老天天望不着咱那窠儿到。
吐鲁鲁羞煞咱百十阵的功劳，
这一阵儿扫。

走上天山一看，
杀气无边无岸。
做了跌弹班鸠，
说与寄书胡雁。





(Wails of wild geese within)

I have a way out. I'll tear a piece of silk and write a letter to be tied on the foot of a wild goose, begging him to let me go home. There remains the possibility that he'll let me go. Heavens, heavens, heavens, it's a pity that Prime Minister Xi Naluo is dead!

(To the tune of Shuanghai'er)

The general and the prime minister can never stay alone,
Because it is difficult to fight single-handed.
Like leaves driven by wind or sands floating on waters,
I am in a trance, with no way of escape.
I'm like a defeated jade dragon with shredding scales,
And like a routed beast with wet furs.
I have to beg the wild goose
To wail for me,
Asking for forgiveness.

(To the tune of Coda)

With attacks from the southern Hans
And roars from the Tubo soldiers,
Home is a long way from here.
My troops are ashamed of my previous victories,
Which come to nought with the last battle.

**I look from the Tianshan Mountain
And see battle scenes like boundless seas.
Like a turtledove hit by a pellet,
I have to send letters by wild geese.**



第十七出 勒功

【夜行船】

〔生引众上〕紫塞长驱飞虎豹，
拥貔貅万里咆哮。
黑月阴山，
黄云白草，
是万里封侯故道。

日落辕门鼓角鸣，千群面缚出番城。洗兵鱼海云迎阵，秣马龙堆月照营。

我卢生，总领得胜军十万，抢过阳关，一面飞书奏捷，一面乘胜长驱，至此将次千里之程，深入吐蕃之境。但兵法虚虚实实，且龙莽号为知兵，恐有埋伏，不免一路打围而去，直拿倒了龙莽，方为罕也。

〔众应介〕

〔行介〕



Scene Seventeen **Carving the Merits**

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his soldiers)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Yexingchuan)

We drive along the border fortresses in rapid speed,
With warriors roaring all the way.

The Yinshan Mountain with its darkened moon,
Yellow clouds and white grass

Is the ancient road toward lordship.

*At sunset drums and bugles echo in the camp/ When thousands
of Tubo soldiers surrender their cities./ Our troops clean their weap-
ons in Fish Sea/ And feed their horses on Dragon Hill.*

I am Lu Sheng. Taking command of a hundred thousand victorious troops, I have recovered Yangguan Pass. I have sent speedy report of victory to the court while I push on in the flush of victory for a thousand miles into the Tubo land. However, I must be on guard against tricks and schemes because Re Longmang is known as an expert in the arts of war. I must close the encirclement to guard against any ambush until I capture Re Longmang to crown my victory.

(The soldiers respond and march on)

Handan Dream
Scene Seventeen
PDG

【惜奴娇序】

大展龙韬，
看长城之外，
沙塞飘摇。

〔众〕将军令，
骤雨惊风来到。

迢迢，
千里边城，
到处插上了大唐旗号。
不小，
看图画上秦关汉塞，
广长多少？

〔小卒上〕报，报，报，前面黑坳儿内飞鸦惊起，恐有伏兵。

〔生〕是也。上有黑云，下有伏兵。快搜剿前去！

〔小番将领众上〕煞嘛嘛，克喇喇。

〔战介〕

〔番败走下介〕

〔生〕此贼，几乎中他之计。



LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Xijiaoxu)

By skilful military strategies,
The Tubo fortresses outside the Great Wall
Fall into our hands one by one.

SOLDIERS:

The commander's orders
Come in stormy power.
On and on,
In cities along the thousand-mile borders,
Tang's flags wave on the city-walls.
One after another,
The passes and fortresses are added
To the Han maps.

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

Report, report, report! As crows are startled in the dale, there might be
ambush ahead.

LU SHENG:

That's true. "Where there are black clouds above, there is ambush below." Make a search at once.

(Enter a Tubo captain, followed by his soldiers)

TUBO CAPTAIN:

Shalala, kelele!

(Starts to fight with the Han soldiers. The Tubo captain is defeated. Exit)

LU SHENG:

What a bandit! I nearly fell into his trap.



〔众〕谅他小小，何足道哉！

【黑麻序】

难饶，
点点腥臊，
费龙争虎斗一番搜剿。
看风飞草动，
杀的他零星落雹。

〔生〕萧条，
血染了弓刀，
风吹起战袍。

〔雁叫介〕

〔生射介〕雁云高，
宝雕弓扣响，
风前横落。

〔众喝采介〕呈上将军，雁足之上，带有数行帛书。

〔生看介〕此地是天山，天分汉与番。莫教飞鸟尽，留取报恩环。

〔生笑介〕诸军且退后。





SOLDIERS:

This small potato cannot stir up much troubled waters.

(To the tune of Heimaxu)

What a curse!

For these remaining Tubo troops,

We have made a thorough search.

Like rustles of leaves in the wind,

We have thrown them into utter panic.

LU SHENG:

What destitution!

Blood has stained our swords;

The wind is blowing at our war robes.

(Wails of wild geese)

LU SHENG:

(Shoots at the wild geese)

To shoot at the wild geese around,

I stretch my bow

And hit one to the ground.

SOLDIERS:

(Hail)

Here is the wild goose, General. On the foot of the goose, there is a piece of silk with a few lines written on it.

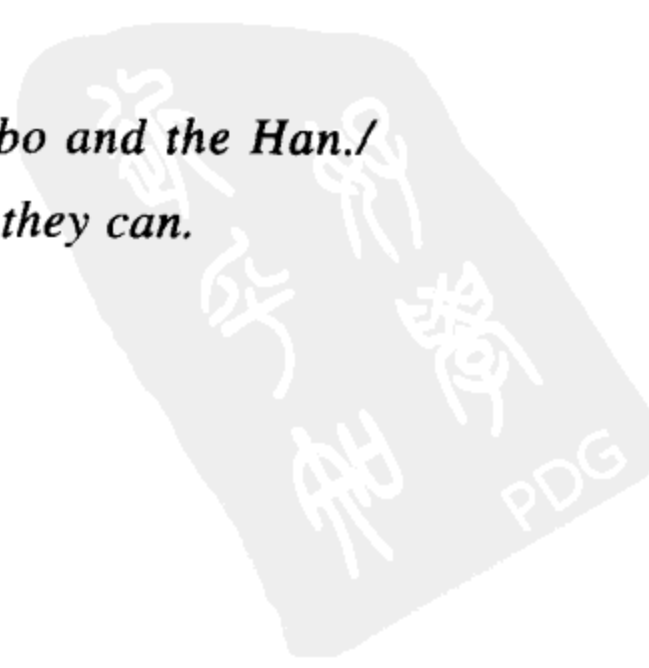
LU SHENG:

(Reads)

*Here you are in Tianshan,/ Which divides Tubo and the Han./
Do not kill all the birds,/ Which may requite when they can.*

(Smiles)

Stay back, all of you.



〔背介〕此诗乃热龙莽求我还师，莫教飞鸟尽，留取报恩环。是了，飞鸟尽，良弓藏。看来龙莽也是一条好汉，且留着他。〔回介〕此山名为何山？

〔众〕是天山。

〔生〕玉门关过来多少？

〔众〕九百九十九里。

〔生〕怎生少一里？

〔众〕天山上一片石占了一里。

〔生〕从来有人征战至此者乎？

〔众〕从古未有。

〔生笑介〕怪的古诗云：空留一片石，万古在天山。吾今起自书生，仗圣主威灵，破虏至此，足矣。众将军，可磨削天山一片石，纪功而还。

〔众应磨石介〕





(Aside)

This is a letter from Re Longmang, begging me to withdraw my troops. "Do not kill all the birds, Which may requite when they can." Yes, when all the birds are killed, the best bow will be shelved. Since Re Longmang is a true warrior, I'll let him go.

(To the soldiers)

What's the name of this mountain?

SOLDIERS:

It's called Tianshan Mountain.

LU SHENG:

How far is it away from the Yumen Pass?

SOLDIERS:

Nine hundred and ninety-nine miles.

LU SHENG:

Where is the missing mile?

SOLDIERS:

A slab of rock on the Tianshan Mountain occupies one mile.

LU SHENG:

Has anyone else ever marched as far as this mountain?

SOLDIERS:

Never before.

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

No wonder that an ancient poem reads like this: *There remains a slab of stone,/ That will for ever stay alone.* I have started my career as a scholar and crushed the Tubo troops here at the blessing of His Majesty. Therefore, I am fully contented. Brave warriors, let's cut a slab from Mourt Tianshan and make a victorious return after carving our meritorious deeds on it.

(The soldiers respond and begin to cut and carve a slab of rock)

新華書店
PDG

【园林好犯】

头直上天山那高，
打摩崖刨钁划锹，
向中间平治了一道。
山似纸笔如刀，
把元帅高名插九霄。

〔生〕待我题名。〔念介〕大唐天子命将征西，出塞千里，斩虏百万，至于天山，勒石而还。作镇万古，永永无极。开元某年某月某日，征西大元帅邯鄲卢生题。〔放笔笑介〕众将军，千秋万岁后，以卢生为何如？

〔众应介〕是。

【忒忒令犯】

〔众〕上题着大唐年开元圣朝，
下题着大元帅征西的爵号。
直接上了祁连一道，
折抹了黄河数套。
虽则这几行题，



SOLDIERS:

(To the tune of Yuanlinhaofan)

On the towering Tianshan Mountain overhead,
We apply our hoes and spades
To cut a slab of rock.
Taking the mountain as paper and the axe as pen,
We carve the name of our distinguished commander.

LU SHENG:

I'll make the inscription.

(Reads)

At the imperial edict of Tang to quench the west, the troops went west, marched in the desert for a thousand miles and killed a million Tubo soldiers. The troops have reached the Tianshan Mountain and will return victoriously after carving a slab of rock. This rock will remain forever and ever. The inscription is made by Lu Sheng, Marshall of Quenching the West, on this day, this month, and this year of Emperor Xuanzong's reign.

(Lays down his pen and laughs heartily)

Brave warriors, what will people think of Lu Sheng with the passing of centuries and millenniums?

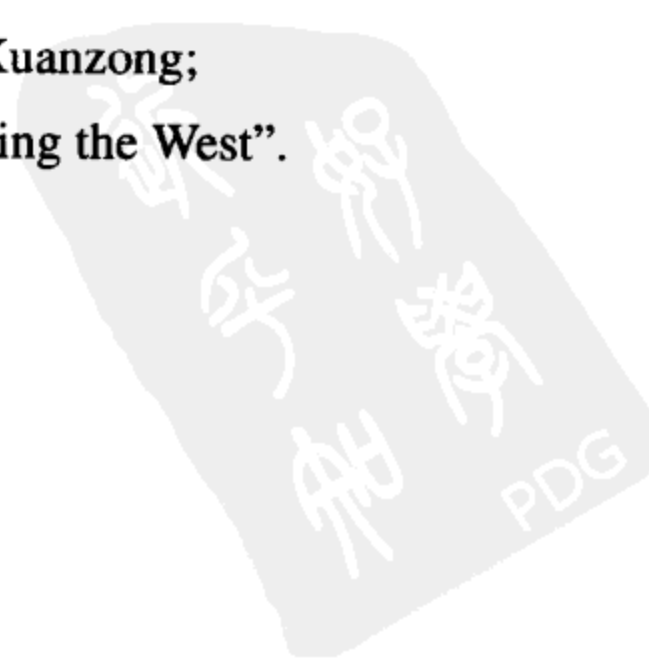
SOLDIERS:

(Respond)

Naturally.

(To the tune of Tetelingfan)

Above is inscribed the year of Tang's Emperor Xuanzong;
Below is inscribed the title "Marshall of Quenching the West".
We went all the way up the Qilian Mountains,
Making twists and turns along the Yellow River.
These lines of inscription



一片石，
千椎万凿。
这壁厢唐家尽头，
那壁厢番家对交，
万千年天山立草为标。

〔生〕题则题了，我则怕莓苔风雨，石裂山崩，那时泯没我功劳了。

〔众〕圣天子万灵拥护，大将军八面威风，自然万古鲜明，千秋灿烂。

【双蝴蝶】

〔生〕便风雨莓苔的气不消，
一字字雁行排天际遥。

也未必早晚间山移石爆，
长则在关河上星回日耀，
但望着题名记神惊鬼叫。

便做到没字碑，
也磨洗认前朝。

〔报上〕故国山河阔，新恩日月高。

禀老爷：圣上看了捷书，举朝文武大宴三日；封老爷定西侯，食邑三千户，钦取还朝，加太子太保兵部尚书同平章军国大事。圣旨差



Are carved on a slab of rock
With countless picks and chisels.
With Tang on this side
And Tubo on that side,
The milestone will forever stand on Tianshan.

LU SHENG:

Although we have made the inscription, I am afraid that our merits will be buried in moss after storms or disruptions.

SOLDIERS:

Since the gods will bless His Majesty and you are valiant, the rock will remain unshakable forever and ever.

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Shuanghudie)

In disregard of the moss and storm,

The lines of inscription

Tower to the sky.

In disregard of the slides and disruptions,

They will shine forever over the mountains and rivers

And scare away the spirits and devils.

Even if the rock becomes a wordless monument,

Once washed, it proves a relic of the past.

(Enter Messenger)

MESSENGER:

The native country has a vast territory; The new grace shines as the sun and moon.

Master Lu, on seeing your report of victory, His Majesty decreed three days of banqueting for the officials and officers. You have been granted the title of Marquis of Conquering the West, receiving the land tax of three thousand households. When you return to the capital, you will



官迎取已到，望老爷即便班师。

〔众贺介〕

〔生〕闻此圣恩，便当不俟驾而回。但塞外之事，须处置停留。自天山至阳关，千里之内，起三座大城，墩台连接，无事屯田养马，有事声援策应，不许有违。

【沉醉东风】

守定着天山这条，
休卖了卢龙一道。
少则少千里之遥，
须则要号头明，
烽瞭远，
常川看好。

〔众跪介〕

承教，
现放着军政司条例分毫，
但钦依小将们知道。

〔生〕这等，就此更衣了。

〔内捧幞袍上〕





be conferred the titles of Prince Instructor, Defense Minister and Honorary Prime Minister. As His Majesty has sent an envoy to accompany you to the capital, will Your Excellency set off at once?

SOLDIERS:

Congratulations! Congratulations!

LU SHENG:

I should return at once when I hear the favours from His Majesty, but I must make arrangements for everything in the border areas. Within the distance of a thousand miles from the Tianshan Mountain to the Yangguan Pass, you must build three large cities connected with garrison terraces. You can cultivate the fields and feed the horses in times of peace while you can reinforce and support each other in times of war. You must follow my instructions.

(To the tune of Chenzuidongfeng)

You must safeguard the Tianshan Mountain

And never neglect the Lulong region.

Within the distance of at least a thousand miles,

The bugles must be heard clearly,

The troops in garrisons must be on watch

And always keep high vigilance.

SOLDIERS:

(Kneel)

We shall follow your instructions

And obey the imperial rules and regulations

Laid down by the administrations.

LU SHENG:

In that case, I'm going to change my clothes.

(Enter a eunuch with a kerchief and a robe)



〔更衣介〕

【锦花香】

〔生〕你既然承托，
我敢违宣召？
好些时梦魂飞过了午门桥。

〔叹介〕拜辞这金戈铁马，
卸下了征袍。
和你三载驱劳，
一时抛调，
惨风烟泪满阳关道。

〔行介〕

【锦水棹】

阳关道，
来回到。
长安道，
难轻造。
便做我未老得还朝，
被风沙也朱颜半凋。
从军苦也从军乐，
听了些孤雁横秋，
画角连宵。
金钲奏，
金钲奏，
画鼓敲，
嘶风战马把归鞍趯。
人争看霍飘姚，
留不住汉班超。





LU SHENG:

(Changes his clothes)

*(To the tune of **Jinhuaxiang**)*

Since you will follow my instructions,
How can I disobey the imperial edict?
My soul has long crossed the palace bridge.

(Sighs)

I shall take leave of the warriors
And take off my battle robe.
After three years of hardships together,
I shall leave you behind
And go to Yangguan Pass in woe and tears.

(Walks on)

*(To the tune of **Jinshuizhao**)*

The road to Yangguan Pass
Is the way by which I come and go.
The road to Chang'an
Is not easy to take.
Although I can return before I am too old,
I have been worn with wind and sands.
I have suffered and enjoyed in the army,
Listening to the wild geese in autumn
And listening to the bugles by night.
Amid ringing bells,
Amid ringing bells
And beating drums,
I return on the saddle of a battle steed.
I shall be regarded as Huo Qubing, a famous general,
And return as Ban Chao, an envoy abroad.



〔鼓吹介〕

〔众〕

【尾声】

满辕门擂鼓回军乐，
拥定个出塞将军入汉朝。
〔生〕列位将军，
休要得忘了俺数载功劳，
把一座有表记的名山须看的好。

许国从来彻庙堂，
连年不为在疆场。
将军天上封侯印，
御史台中异姓王。



(Sound of drums and bugles within)

SOLDIERS:

(To the tune of Coda)

With drums and music echoing in the camp,
The general who has fought on the border will return.

LU SHENG:

Brave warriors,

Do not forget my merits in these years;
Guard well this famous mountain with its monument.

**Ministers serve in the palace court,
But I have fought in the battlefield.
I'll be conferred the title of a lord
And have a position firmly sealed.**



第十八出 闰喜

【桃源忆故人】

〔旦引老旦、贴上〕卢郎未老因缘大，
赘居崔氏清河。
夫贵妻荣堪贺，
忽地把人分破。

〔合〕问天天方便些几个，
归到画堂清妥。

【长相思】博陵崔，清河崔，昔日崔徽今又徽，今生情为谁？
去关西，渡河西，你南望相思我向北也思，丁东风马儿。

姥姥，一从卢郎征西，杳无信息，不知彼中征战若何？

〔老〕仗皇家福力，必然取胜，则是姐姐消瘦了几分。

Scene Eighteen **Good News for the Wife**

(Enter Miss Cui, followed by Maidservant and Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Taoyuanyiguren)

The young Master Lu had a happy marriage —
He married Miss Cui and lived in Qinghe.
Man and wife lived a distinguished life,
But were suddenly separated.

ALL:

May heaven bless us
So that he will return home and live a peaceful life.

MISS CUI:

(To the tune Changxiangsi)

*As there was a Miss Cui in Boling,/ So there is a Miss Cui in
Qinghe./ The lovesick Cui Hui is now born again,/ But who is she in
love with?/ You have gone to Guanxi/ And crossed the river in Hexi./
While you look south and I look north,/ How the dangling bell tinkles!*

Auntie, I have never heard from Master Lu since he went to fight in the west. I don't know how he is doing with his military affairs.

MAIDSERVANT:

He is bound to win by the blessing of His Majesty. However, you have grown wan these days.



Handan Dream
Scene Eighteen
PDG

【摊破金字令】

〔旦〕不茶不饭，
所事慵妆里。

〔老〕他是为官。

〔旦〕为官身跋涉，
把令政成抛躲。

〔老〕远路风尘，
知他是怎么？

〔旦〕则为他人才得过，
聪明又颇，
好“功名”两字生折磨。

〔合〕春光去了啊，
秋光即渐多。

扇掩轻罗，
泪点层波，

则为他着人儿那些情意可。

【夜雨打梧桐】

〔旦〕拈整翠钿窝，
闷把镜儿啊。

〔贴〕后花园走走跳跳。



MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Tanpojinziling)

I have no taste for tea or meals,
Never in a mood to dress and make up.

MAIDSERVANT:

Anyway he is an official.

MISS CUI:

On business he keeps his mind,
But leaves his wife behind.

MAIDSERVANT:

When he weathers the wind and sands,
How can we know what he is doing?

MISS CUI:

He has intelligence
And wisdom to his claim,
But suffers from “fame and name”.

ALL:

Spring is gone
And autumn is near.
The wife shelters her face with her gauze fan
And sheds a flood of tears
For her man’s alluring affection.

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Yeyudawutong)

I tidy my emerald pins
And face the mirror without a word.

MAIDSERVANT:

What about taking a stroll in the back garden?



〔旦〕待腾那，
和你花园游和。

〔行介〕

做一个宽抬瘦玉，
慢展凌波，
霎儿间蹬着步怎那？

〔旦住介〕

〔老〕似这水红花也啰，
不为奴哥，
花也因何？

〔合〕甚情啊，
夏日长犹可，
冬宵短得么？

〔老〕梅香，取排箫弦子，鼓弄一番，和姐姐消遣。

〔贴、众吹弹介〕

〔旦〕歇了。

【摊破金字令】

砌一会品箫弦索，
燥的人没奈何。
少待我翠屏深坐，
静打磨陀，
这好光阴闲着了了我。





MISS CUI:

(Walks on)

When I leisurely move my feet
And walk slowly,
What if I should trip my steps?

(Stops)

MAIDSERVANT:

If the lotus flowers
Do not blossom for the beloved,
Why should they come into blooms?

ALL:

With profound affection,
It's easy to pass the long summer day
But is it possible to cut short the winter night?

MAIDSERVANT:

Meixiang, fetch the flute and the lute and play a bit to while away the
time.

(Meixiang and maidservants play the flute and the lute)

MISS CUI:

That's enough.

(To the tune of Tanpojinziling)

The music of the flute and the lute
Throws me into sorrow.
I'll sit in the room for a while
To idle away my time.
I have nothing to do in this pleasant season.





[贴] 看你营勾了身奇，
受用了情哥。
还待恁般寻索，
特地吟哦，
有一般儿孤寡教怎生过？
[合] 春光去了啊，
秋光即渐多。
扇掩轻罗，
泪点层波，
则为他着人儿那些情意可。

【夜雨打梧桐】

[旦] 盼雕鞍，
你何日归来和我。
渺关河，
淡烟横抹。

[老] 懒去后花园，向前门而望，倘有边报，亦未可知？

[旦] 正是，正是。

[行介]

[内打歌介] 虽咱青春伤大，
幽恨偏多，
听青青子儿谁唱歌？





MEIXIANG:

You have seduced this man
And made love with him.
And now you'll look for him
And make all the moans.
How is a widow to spend her life?

ALL:

Spring is gone
And autumn is near.
The wife shelters her face with her gauze fan
And sheds a flood of tears
For her man's alluring affection.

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Yeyudawutong)

I expect the horse
To bring him back to me.
The hills and rills afar
Are enshrouded in mist.

MAIDSERVANT:

If you don't want to go to the back garden, let's gaze out of the front gate. There might be some message from the border area.

MISS CUI:

That's true. That's true.

(Walks)

VOICE WITHIN:

(Sings a ballad)

Although young maids worry about their age
With too much regret,
Let's listen to their songs.



〔贴〕 略约倚门暖，
翠闪了双蛾，
抬头望来，
兀自你凤钗微颤。

〔合〕 甚情啊，
夏日长犹可，
冬宵短得么？

〔扮将官上〕 羽檄飞三捷，恩光下九重。

报上夫人：老爷用兵得胜，飞奏朝廷。万岁十分欢喜，着大小文武官员，宴贺三日；封老爷为定西侯，食邑三千户。马上差官钦取还朝，掌理兵部尚书，加太子太保同平章军国大事，早晚见朝也。



MEIXIANG:

When I lean on the gate and look outside,
I see your knitted brows.
When I look up,
I see your slant phoenix hairpin.

ALL:

With profound affection,
It's easy to pass the long summer day
But is it possible to cut short the winter night?
(Enter an officer)

OFFICER:

An urgent message reports victories;/ Favours come from His Majesty.

Madam, when His Excellency won victory after victory and sent an urgent message to the court, His Majesty was delighted and told the ministers and generals to celebrate for three days. His Excellency has been conferred the title of Marquis of Conquering the West, receiving the land tax of three thousand households. His Majesty has sent a missionary to call him back at once, to take up the position of Defence Minister with the titles of Prince Instructor and Honorary Prime Minister. He is to serve at court morning and evening.



〔旦〕 这等，谢天谢地！

【尾声】

〔旦〕 喜蛛儿头直上吊下到裙拖，
天来大喜音热坏我的耳朵，
则排比十里笙歌接着他。

去时儿女悲，
归来笳鼓竞。
借问行路人：
何如霍去病？





MISS CUI:

Thank heavens!

(To the tune of Coda)

As the lucky spider hangs on my skirt,
So the sudden good news burns my ears.
Let's arrange song and dance to meet him.

**At the time when he left, I was so sad;
When he returns, drums and music ring.
May I venture to ask the passing lad
How he compares my man with the hero Huo Qubing?**



第十九出 飞语

【秋夜月】

〔净引众上〕四马车，
才下的这东华路。
但是官僚多俯伏，
有一班儿不睹事难容恕。

〔笑介〕

敢今番可图，
敢今番可图。

〔净〕深喜吾皇听不聪，一朝偏信宇文融。今生不要寻冤业，无奈前生作耗虫。

自家宇文融，当朝首相。数年前，状元卢生不肯拜我门下，心常恨之。寻了一个开河的题目处置他，他到奏了功，开河三百里。俺只得又寻个西番征战的题目处置他，他又奏了功，开边一千里。圣上封为定西侯，加太子太保，兼兵部尚书，还朝同平章军国事。到如今再





Scene Nineteen **Slandering**

(Enter Yuwen Rong, followed by his attendants)

YUWEN RONG:

(To the tune of Qiuyeyue)

The carriage and four

Has just reached the court.

Most of the officials are servile,

But I cannot tolerate those who are thoughtless.

(Giggles)

I'll make it today;

I'll make it today.

*To my great joy, His Majesty is biased/ And listens to me alone
on this earth./ I would not make trouble this life,/ But I was wicked by
birth.*

I'm Yuwen Rong, the present-day Prime Minister. A few years ago, the Number-One Scholar Lu Sheng refused to be a servile student to me. Therefore, I've always borne grudges against him. I tried to get him into the mire by assigning him the job of digging the channels. However, who knows that he achieved the feat of digging a three-hundred-mile canal. When I tried again to get him into trouble by assigning him the job of fighting the Tubo troops, he achieved the feat of expanding one thousand miles of borders. His Majesty endowed him with the title of Marquis of

没有第三个题目了。沉吟数日，潜遣腹心之人，访缉他阴事，说他贿赂番将，佯输卖阵，虚作军功。到得天山地方，雁足之上，开了番将私书，自言自语，即刻收兵，不行追赶。〔笑介〕此非通番卖国之明验乎？把这一个题目下落他，再动不得手了。我已草下奏稿在此，只为近日萧嵩同平章事，本上要连他签押，恐有异同。我已排下机谋，知他可到？

【西地锦】

〔萧上〕同在中书相府，
平章两字何如？

〔笑介〕

喜卢生归到握兵符，
和咱双成玉柱。

〔见介〕

〔萧〕平明登紫阁，

〔净〕日晏下彤闱。



Conquering the West, Prince Instructor, Defense Minister and Honorary Prime Minister. By now I haven't yet found another way to get him into a trap. After a few days of meditation, I decided to send a reliable agent to probe into his private secrets. It is reported that he bribed the Tubo general into feigning a defeat and thus won an easy victory. When he reached the Tianshan Mountain area, he got a letter from the Tubo general tied at the foot of a wild goose. After he read the letter, he murmured to himself that he would withdraw the troops and stop pursuing the enemy.

(Giggles)

Isn't this an evident proof that he had secret communication with the enemy and committed treason? If I let him go on this issue, I will never get a better chance. I have drafted an impeachment against him, but I wonder whether the recently promoted Honorary Prime Minister Xiao Song will sign on it or not. Now that I've set a trap for him, I don't know when he will come.

(Enter Xiao Song)

XIAO SONG:

(To the tune of Xidijin)

Both in the office with topmost claim,
Prime Minister is a worthy name.

(Smiles)

With Lu Sheng in charge of military affairs,
He and I become pillars treading on airs.

(Greets Yuwen Rong)

We enter the palace hall at dawn

YUWEN RONG:

And leave the imperial office at dusk.



〔萧〕扰扰朝中子，

〔净〕徒劳歌是非。

〔萧〕老平章，是非从何而起？

〔净〕你不知满朝说卢生通番卖国，大逆当诛。若不奏知，干连政府。

〔萧〕怎见得？

〔净〕你说他为何到得天山，竟然转马？原来与番将热龙莽交通贿赂，接受私书。

〔萧〕卢生是有功之臣，未可造次。

【八声甘州】

〔净笑介〕他欺君卖主，
勾连外国，
漏泄机谋。

〔萧〕怕没有此事，此乃番将闻风远遁，成此大功也。



XIAO SONG:

The fastidious ministers at court

YUWEN RONG:

Spread the gossip in vain.

XIAO SONG:

Your Highness, where comes the gossip?

YUWEN RONG:

Don't you know? It goes around the court that Lu Sheng should be executed for his towering crime of having secret communication with the Tubo troops and committing treason. If we don't report it to the emperor, we'll be held responsible.

XIAO SONG:

What do you mean?

YUWEN RONG:

Why do you think he reached the Tianshan Mountain and suddenly turned back? It happened that he accepted bribery and a private letter from the Tubo general.

XIAO SONG:

As Lu Sheng is a meritorious minister, we'd better refrain ourselves.

YUWEN RONG:

(Laughs)

*(To the tune of **Bashengganzhou**)*

He cheats and betrays His Majesty;

He keeps illicit relations with foreign nations

And leaks out national secrets.

XIAO SONG:

I don't think that's the true story. As the Tubo general fled out of fear, it's a great success for Lu Sheng.



〔净笑介〕那龙莽啊，
佯输诈败，
就里都难料取。

既不啊，
兵临虏穴乘胜取，
为甚天山看帛书。

〔合〕踌躇，
这事体非小可之图。

【前腔】

〔萧〕有无，
这中间情事，
隔边庭吊远，
要审个真虚。

〔净〕千真万真；既不啊，得了番书，合当奏上。

〔萧〕那将在军中啊，
随机进止，
况收复了千里边隅。

〔净怒介〕你朋党欺君。





YUWEN RONG:

(Laughs)

Re Longmang

May have feigned

To be defeated.

Otherwise,

Lu Sheng should have crushed the Tubo headquarters;

Why should he have read the letter in private?

YU WENRONG, XIAO SONG:

Don't rush to a conclusion

As it is no small matter.

XIAO SONG:

(To the previous tune)

To be true or not true —

That is the question.

As the border areas are far away,

We have to make sure.

YUWEN RONG:

The story is absolutely true; otherwise, Lu Sheng should have reported it to His Majesty when he received the letter from the Tubo general.

XIAO SONG:

The commander in the army

May make decisions according to the circumstances.

What's more, he's recovered the border areas.

YUWEN RONG:

(Gets angry)

You're colluding to deceive His Majesty.



〔萧〕我甘为朋党相劝阻，
肯坐看忠臣受枉诛。

〔合前〕

〔净笑介〕原来你为同年，不为朝廷。这事我已做下了，有本稿在此，你看。

〔萧看念介〕中书省平章军国大事臣宇文融、同平章事门下侍郎臣萧嵩一本，为诛除奸将事：有前征西节度使今封定西侯兼兵部尚书同平章军国事卢生，与吐蕃将热龙莽交通献贿，龙莽佯败而归，卢生假张功伐。到于天山地方，擅接龙莽私书，不行追剿。通番卖国，其罪当诛。臣融臣嵩顿首顿首谨奏。呀，这等重大事情，老平章不先通闻画知，朦胧具奏。虽然如此，也要下官肯押花字。



XIAO SONG:

I'd rather collude to give my advice
Than see a loyal minister to be wronged.

YU WENRONG, XIAO SONG:

Don't rush to a conclusion
As it is no small matter.

YUWEN RONG:

(Laughs)

Oh I see. You're defending your colleague instead of your state. I've got everything ready. Here's the manuscript for the impeachment. Just have a look.

XIAO SONG:

(Reads)

Right Prime Minister Yuwen Rong and Left Prime Minister Xiao Song are to present an impeachment against a treacherous general Lu Sheng, the former Administrator and Military Commander in Hexi and the present Marquis of the West, Defense Minister and Honorary Prime Minister, received letters and bribes from the Tubo general Re Longmang. While Re Longmang feigned a defeat and retreated, Lu Sheng feigned to make advances. On arriving at the Tianshan Region, Lu Sheng received a private letter from Re Longmang and then withdrew his troops. Lu Sheng must be beheaded for high treason. Your obedient ministers Yuwen Rong and Xiao Song bow and report to Your Majesty. For such critical matters, Your Excellency is going to make a vague impeachment without giving me any previous notice. In such circumstances, you are compelling me to sign on it!

〔净怒介〕萧嵩，你敢叫三声不押花字么？

〔萧叫三声不押介〕

〔净笑介〕好胆量！教中书科取过笔来，添你一个“通同卖国”四字，待你申诉去。

〔萧背叹介〕同刃相推，俱入祸门，此事非可以口舌争之。下官表字一忠，平时奏本花押，草作“一忠”二字，今日使些智术，于花押上“一”字之下，加他两点，做个“不忠”二字，向后可以相机而行。

〔回介〕老平章息怒，下官情愿押花。〔押介〕

〔净笑介〕我说你没有这大胆。明日早朝，齐班奏去。



YUWEN RONG:

(Irritated)

Do you dare to say three “no’s”?

XIAO SONG:

No! No! No!

YUWEN RONG:

(Sneers)

How daring you are! Tell the secretary to fetch a pen and add the lines to accuse you of high treason as well. You will have your time to plead for yourself.

XIAO SONG:

(Sighs aside)

“Misfortune befalls him that contends.” It’s hard for me to contend with him on these matters. I used to present my memorial to the emperor with the signature of “Faithful”, but today I’ll have to play some tricks by adding an “un” before my signature so that I may find some excuse in the future.

(To Yuwen Rong)

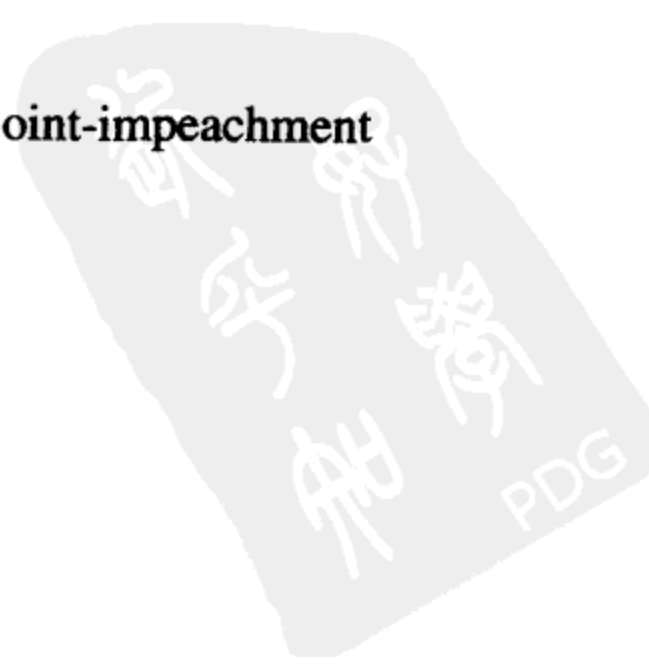
Please calm your anger, Your Excellency. I’m willing to sign.

(Signs his name)

YUWEN RONG:

(Laughs)

I said that you would not be so bold. Let’s present our joint-impeachment to His Majesty tomorrow morning.



[萧] 功臣不可诬，
[净] 奸党必须诛。
[萧] 有恨非君子，
[净] 无毒不丈夫。





XIAO SONG:

The heroes are not to be smeared with art and craft;

YUWEN RONG:

The treacherous pretenders must be wiped out.

XIAO SONG:

No gentleman e'er shows regret or doubt;

YUWEN RONG:

No genuine man e'er goes without a vicious heart.



第二十出 死甯

〔堂候官上〕铁券山河国，金牌将相家。

自家定西侯卢老爷府中堂候官便是。我家老爷掌管天下兵马数年，同平章军国事，文武百官，皆出其门。圣恩加礼，一日之内，三次接见。看看日势向午，将次朝回，不免伺候。早则夫人到来也。

〔旦引老旦、贴上〕奴家崔氏是也。俺公相领谢天恩，位兼将相。钦赐府第一区，朱门画戟，紫阁雕檐。皆因边功重大，以致朝礼尊隆。休说公相，便是为妻子的，说来惊天动地。奴家是一品夫人；养下孩儿，但是长的，都与了恩荫，真是罕稀也。

Scene Twenty **Narrow Escape from Death**

(Enter Butler)

BUTLER:

Medals are conferred from the state/ To officials of the topmost rate.

I am the butler to Master Lu, Marquis of Conquering the West. In command of all the troops for several years, Master Lu has been Honorary Prime Minister. All the officers and officials in the court are his disciples. As a special favour to him, His Majesty gives audience to him three times a day. As it's about noontime and Master Lu will soon be back from his second audience in the court, I'll be waiting for him now. Here comes Madame Cui.

(Enter Miss Cui, followed by Maidservant and Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

I am Miss Cui. With blessings from His Majesty, my husband has been promoted to the highest civil and military positions. The residence bestowed by His Majesty is equipped with a magnificent gate and decorative buildings. He is highly respected in the court because of his brilliant military exploits in the border areas. Not to speak of my husband, I as his wife am no less influential. I am entitled as the First-Rank Lady and all my grown-up children are promoted to high positions. How extraordinary it is!



[内作瓦裂声介]

[旦惊介] 老嬷嬷，甚么响？

[老旦看介] 是堂檐之上，一片鸳鸯瓦，碎下来了。

[旦惊介] 呀，鸳鸯瓦为何而碎？

[贴望介] 哎哟，一个金弹儿抛打乌鸦，因而碎瓦。

[旦叹介] 圣人云：乌鸦知风，虫蚁知雨。皮肉跳而横事来，裙带解而喜信至。鸳鸯者，夫妇之情也；乌鸦者，晦黑之声也；落弹者，失圆之象也；碎瓦者，分飞之意也。天啊，眼下莫非有十分惊报乎？

【赏花时】

俺这里户倚三星展碧纱，

见了些坐拥三台立正衙。

树色绕檐牙，

谁近的鸳鸯翠瓦，

金弹打流鸦？

[内响道介]





(Noise of tiles being broken within)

MISS CUI:

(Taken aback)

Old maid, what's the noise?

MAIDSERVANT:

(Takes a look)

A mandarin-duck tile has fallen broken from the eaves.

MISS CUI:

(Astonished)

Alas, how is it that a mandarin-duck tile has fallen broken?

MEIXIANG:

(Looks)

Oh, the tile is broken by a golden pellet to shoot at a crow.

MISS CUI:

(Sighs)

As is said by a saint: The crow knows where the wind blows and the ant knows when the rain falls. Misfortunes come when the skin and flesh shivers; good tidings come when the skirt-belt is untied." The mandarin-ducks symbolize the love between man and wife; the crows caw with bad omens; the fallen pellet is a sign of disunion; the broken tile means separation. Gracious heavens, does it mean that shocking news is coming?

(To the tune of Shanghuashi)

I sit in my mansion, tall and magnificent,
And see subordinates standing in the hall.
In the shade of trees beside the eaves,
Who can approach the mandarin-duck tiles
And shoot at crows with golden pellets?

(Noise of an approaching procession)



〔旦〕公相朝回，看酒伺候。

〔生引队子上〕下官卢生，在圣人跟前平章了几桩机务，吃了堂食，回府去也。

【么】

俺这里路转东华倚翠华，

佩玉鸣金宰相家。

新筑旧堤沙，

难同戏耍，

春色御沟花。

〔见介〕

〔旦〕公相朝回，奴家开了皇封御酒，与相公把一杯。

〔生〕生受了。〔内奏乐介〕俺先与夫人对饮数杯，要连声叫干，不干者多饮一杯。

〔旦〕奉令了。

〔生饮介〕夫荣妻贵酒，干。



MISS CUI:

Now that my man is returning from the court, get the wine ready.

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his attendants)

LU SHENG:

I am Lu Sheng. After I consulted on some affairs before His Majesty and ate lunch, I am going home now.

(To the tune of Yao)

In a decorative carriage I pass the Donghua Gate
And go home girdled with a jade belt and ushered by gongs.
The new embankment is built on old sands,
But I can hardly enjoy the sights with my wife
Along the palace moat in all its vernal splendour.

(Lu Sheng and Miss Cui greet each other)

MISS CUI:

As you are just back from the court, I've opened a jar of royal wine and will make a toast to you.

LU SHENG:

Thank you very much.

(Music within)

LU SHENG:

I'll first drink a few cups with you and have them bottoms up. For each cup you do not drink up, you'll have to drink one more cup of wine.

MISS CUI:

Agreed.

LU SHENG:

(Drinks the wine)

This is a cup for the distinction of man and wife. Bottoms up!



[旦看介] 公相干了，到奴家唤：夫贵妻荣酒，干。

[生笑介] 夫人欠干。

[旦笑饮介] 这杯到干了，正是小槽酒滴珍珠红。

[生笑介] 夫人，你的槽儿也不小了。

[内鼓介] 报，报，听说人马枪刀，打东华门出，未知何故也？

[生] 由他，俺与夫人唱干饮酒。

[旦饮介] 妻贵夫荣酒，干。

[生] 夫人倒在上面了。这杯干的紧，待我唤：妻贵夫荣酒，干。

[旦] 公相有点了。





MISS CUI:

You've finished your cup. Now it's my turn. A cup for the distinction of man and wife. Bottoms up!

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

You haven't drained your cup.

MISS CUI:

(Smiles and drinks)

I've drained this cup. As the poem has it, *The wine down the narrow orifice is as red as the pearls.*

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

Madam, your orifice is wide enough.

(Drumbeats within)

VOICE WITHIN:

Report, report! It's said that armed soldiers have come out of the Donghua Gate. We don't know why they are coming?

LU SHENG:

Never mind about them. I'll call bottoms up and drain the cup with you.

MISS CUI:

(Drinks)

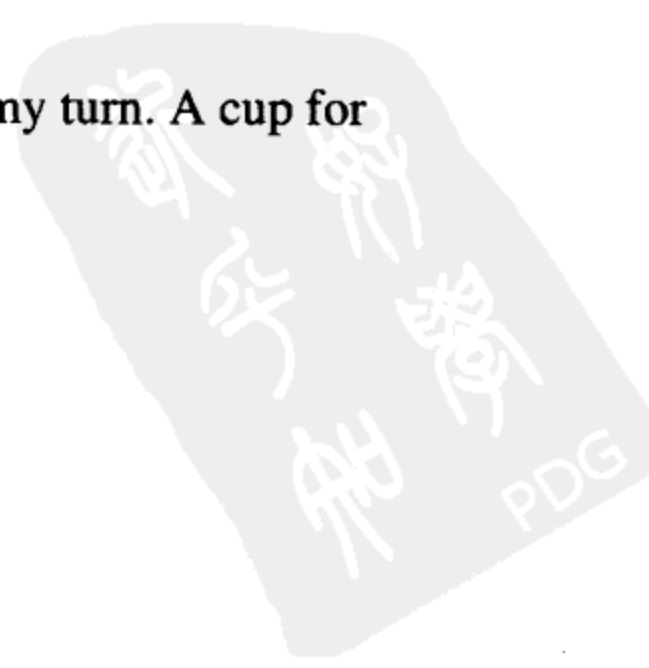
A cup for the distinction of wife and man. Bottoms up!

LU SHENG:

You've taken the lead and drained this cup. Now it's my turn. A cup for the distinction of wife and man. Bottoms up.

MISS CUI:

You have not drained your cup.



〔生〕夫人，这是酒泻金茎露涓滴。

〔旦笑介〕相公，你的茎长是涓的。

〔生笑介〕

〔内鼓介〕

〔堂候官上介〕报，报，外面人马自东华门出来，填街塞巷，好不喧闹也。

〔生〕且由他，俺与夫人叫第三千。

〔儿子走上哭介〕老爷，老夫人，人马枪刀，济济排排，将近府门来也。

〔生惊起介〕

【北醉花阴】

这些时直宿朝房梦喧杂，

整日价红围翠匝。

铃阁远静无哗，

是潭潭相府人家，

敢边厢大行踏？

〔听介〕

〔内呼喝叫“拿，拿！”介〕



LU SHENG:

Madam, as the poem has it, "*The wine on the gilded stick flows in drips.*"

MISS CUI:

Master, your stick is always dripping.

(Lu Sheng laughs)

(Drumbeats within)

(Enter Butler)

BUTLER:

Report, report! Armed soldiers have come out of the Donghua Gate and filled the streets and lanes. What a roar they're making!

LU SHENG:

Never mind about them. I'll dry the third cup with my wife.

(Enter Lu Sheng's sons, weeping)

SONS:

Dad and Mom, the armed soldiers in battle array are approaching our residence.

LU SHENG:

(Startled)

(To the tune of Northern Zuihuayin)

In all these days,

I dream a lot while serving night shift in the court,

Surrounded by pretty ladies in red and green.

My residence should be kept quiet;

In this magnificent mansion,

Who dares to make such a noise?

(Listens)

(Cries of "Arrest him! Arrest him!" within)



〔生〕不住的，
叫拿拿。

敢是地方走了贼，反了狱？既不啊，
怎的响刀枪人哄马？

〔众扮官校持枪索上〕

〔叫众军围住介〕

〔贴、老旦惊走〕

〔生恼介〕谁敢无礼！

【南画眉序】

〔众〕圣旨着擒拿，

〔生〕是驾上差来的，请了。

〔众〕奏发中书到门下。

〔生慌介〕门下为谁？

〔众〕竟收拿公相，

此外无他。

〔生怕介〕原来是差拿本爵，所犯何罪？



LU SHENG:

They keep shouting

“Arrest him! Arrest him!”

Have the thieves run away or escaped from prison? Otherwise,

Why are there noises of weapons and soldiers?

(Enter officers with spears and ropes, ordering the soldiers to surround the house)

(Exeunt Maidservant and Meixiang in a panic)

LU SHENG:

(Annoyed)

Who dares!

OFFICERS:

(To the tune of Southern Huameixu)

The imperial edict to arrest you

LU SHENG:

Oh, you are imperial envoys. Come in please.

OFFICERS:

Is brought to your house from the Central Office.

LU SHENG:

(In a panic)

Whom are you going to arrest in my house?

OFFICERS:

We've come to arrest you,

To arrest you alone.

LU SHENG:

(Frightened)

So you've come to arrest me. What am I guilty of?



〔众〕中书丞相奏老爷罪重哩，
这犯由不比常科，
干系着重情军法。

〔生〕有何负国？而至于斯。

〔官〕下官不知，有驾票在此，跪听宣读。

〔生、旦跪〕

〔官念介〕奉圣旨：前节度使卢生，交通番将，图谋不轨。即刻拿赴云阳市，明正典刑，不许违误。钦此！

〔生、旦叩头起，哭“天”介〕波查，
祸起天来大，
怎泣奏当今鸾驾！

〔生〕这事情怎的起啊？

【北喜迁莺】

走的来风驰雷发，
半空中没个根芽。
待我面奏诉冤。
〔众〕闭上朝门了。

OFFICERS:

The Right Prime Minister has accused you of a serious crime.

It is no ordinary crime,

A crime that violates the martial law.

LU SHENG:

Why should I come to this when I've done nothing wrong to the country?

OFFICER:

I don't know. Here is the arrest edict. On your knees and listen.

(Lu Sheng and Miss Cui kneel on the ground)

OFFICER:

(Reads)

Here is the imperial edict: The former Administrator and Military Commander Lu Sheng exchanged illicit letters with the Tubo general for ulterior motives. He is to be arrested, brought to the Yunyang execution ground and put to death in public without delay. This is the imperial edict.

(Lu Sheng and Miss Cui kowtow and then rise to their feet crying "Heavens")

LU SHENG, MISS CUI:

Gracious heavens!

Oh, oh!

When misfortune falls from the sky,

How can we air our grievances to His Majesty?

LU SHENG:

Where do all the troubles come from?

(To the tune of Northern Xiqianying)

As swift as the wind and the thunder,

Misfortune is a bolt from the blue sky.

I'll air my grievances in front of His Majesty.

OFFICERS:

The royal court is closed.





〔生〕争也么差，
着俺当朝拦驾，
你省可的慢打，
商量咱，
到晚衙。

〔众〕有旨不容退衙。

〔生哭介〕夫人，夫人，吾家本山东，有良田数顷，足以御寒馁，何苦求禄，而今及此？思复衣短裘，乘青驹，行邯郸道中，不可得矣。取佩刀来，颠不喇自裁刮。

〔生作刎〕

〔旦救介〕

〔众〕圣旨不准自裁，要明正典刑哩。

〔生〕是了，是了，大臣生也明白，死也明白。夫人，牵这些业畜，午门前叫冤，俺市曹去也。

迟和疾刚刀一下。

便违圣旨，

除死无加。〔下〕





LU SHENG:

Will you be so kind as to

Allow me to see His Majesty in court

By tarrying a bit

So that I can

Wait till the late audience?

OFFICERS:

The imperial edict forbids it.

LU SHENG:

(Weeps)

Madam, madam, I was born to the east of Mount Taihang and had a few acres of land to make both ends meet. Why should I have sought official career and come to this! I shall never be able to go along the way to Handan, wearing a short fur-coat and riding a black donkey again! Fetch a knife!

I'd better kill myself with a knife.

(Attempts to kill himself and is stopped by Miss Cui)

OFFICERS:

According to the imperial edict, you are not to kill yourself but be put to death in public.

LU SHENG:

Yes, that's it. A minister should live a sensible life and die a sensible death. Madam, bring our sons to air grievances in front of the palace gate. I'm going to the execution ground.

Sooner or later,

I shall be beheaded.

Even if I run counter to the imperial edict,

Nothing more comes but death.

(Exeunt all)



〔高力士上〕吾为高力士，谁救老尚书？今日为斩功臣，闭了正殿，看有甚么官员奏事来。

〔旦同儿上〕相公市曹去了，俺牵儿子午门叫冤去。十步当一步，前面正阳门了。〔叫介〕万岁爷爷，冤苦哪！

〔高〕万岁爷为斩功臣，掩了正殿，谁敢啰唆！

〔旦〕奴家是卢生之妻，诰封一品夫人崔氏，领这一班儿子，来此叫冤啊。

〔高背叹介〕满朝文武，要他妻儿叫冤，可怜人也。〔回介〕卢夫人么，有何冤枉，就此铺宣。

〔旦叩头介〕万岁，万岁，臣妾崔氏伸冤：



(Enter Eunuch Gao)

EUNUCH GAO:

I am Eunuch Gao; Who will save the Defense Minister? The royal court is closed today because a meritorious minister is to be put to death. I'll wait and see which minister is going to present a memorial to His Majesty.

(Enter Miss Cui with her sons)

MISS CUI:

Now that my man is going to the execution ground, I'm bringing my sons to air grievances in front of the palace gate. I'll make haste and approach the Zhengyang Gate.

(Shouts)

Gracious Emperor, Lu Sheng is grievously wronged!

EUNUCH GAO:

The royal court is closed because a meritorious minister is to be put to death. Who is it that dares to make such a roar?

MISS CUI:

I am Lu Sheng's wife, entitled the First-Rank Lady by His Majesty. I'm bringing his sons to air grievances.

EUNUCH GAO:

(Sighs aside)

No ministers in the court but this woman with her sons are airing grievances. How pitiful she is!

(Turns back)

Are you Madam Lu? Just air your grievances here.

MISS CUI:

(Kneels on the ground)

Gracious Emperor, Gracious Emperor! Lu Sheng's wife is airing grievances!



【南画眉序】

宿世旧冤家，
当把卢生活坑煞。
有甚驾前所犯、
吃几个金瓜？
把通番罪名暗加，
谋叛事关天当耍。

〔合〕波查，
祸起天来大，
怎泣奏当今鸾驾。

〔高哭介〕可怜，可怜。你在此候旨，俺为你奏去。

〔旦〕在此掘土为香，祷告天地。〔拜介〕崔氏在此叫冤，天天，拨转圣人龙威，超拔儿夫狗命啊。这许多时，还未见传旨。

〔高同裴光庭上〕圣旨到：既卢生有冤，着裴光庭领赦，往云阳市，免其一死。远窜广南崖州鬼门关安置，即刻起程。谢恩！



(To the tune of Southern Huameixu)

A longtime enemy
Tries to persecute Lu Sheng.
What wrong has my man done in court
That he is to be put to death?
Illicit relations with the Tubo general
And high treason are concocted crimes.

MISS CUI, EUNUCH GAO:

Oh, oh!
When misfortune falls from the sky,
How can we air our grievances to His Majesty?

EUNUCH GAO:

(Weeps)

How pitiable! How pitiable! Wait here for the imperial edict and I'll present your grievances to His Majesty.

MISS CUI:

I'll take the dust as my incense and pray to heaven and earth.

(Kowtows)

Your obedient servant Cui is airing grievances here. Heavens, heavens! Change the sacred mind of His Majesty and save the life of my man! Such a long time has passed and the imperial edict has not arrived yet.

(Enter Eunuch Gao with Pei Guangting)

EUNUCH GAO:

Here is the imperial edict: "As there is some injustice in Lu Sheng's case, Pei Guangting is to bring the order of amnesty to the Yunyang execution ground and pardon Lu Sheng from death. Lu Sheng is to go on exile in the Ghost Gate Pass of Yazhou in southern Guangdong. He should set off at once. Pay tribute to the Emperor!"

[高哭介] 可怜，可怜，唳鹤无情听，啼鸟有赦来。〔下〕

[内鼓介]

[众绑押生囚服裹头上]

【北出队子】

[生] 排列着飞天罗刹，

[扮刽子，尖刀，向前叩头介]

[生] 甚么人？

[刽] 是伏事老爷的刽子手。

[生怕介] 吓煞俺也。

看了他捧刀尖势不佳。

[刽] 有个一字旗儿，禀老爷插上。

[生看介] 是个甚么字！

[众] 是个“斩”字。

[生] 恭谢天恩了。卢生只道是千刀万剐，却只赐一个“斩”字儿，领戴，领戴。

(Weeps)

How pitiable! How pitiable! *While no one listens to cranes' weeping words;/ An order of amnesty comes with singing birds.*

(Exit)

(Drumbeats within)

(Enter Lu Sheng dressed in prison garb and kerchief, escorted by soldiers)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Northern Chuduizi)

The devils with wings stand in line,

(Enter the executioner with a sharp knife, who comes forward and kowtows)

LU SHENG:

Who are you?

EXECUTIONER:

I am the executioner to wait on you.

LU SHENG:

(Frightened)

I'm scared out of my wits.

The blade of his knife shows ill omen.

EXECUTIONER:

Please wear the one-word flag on your back, Your Excellency.

LU SHENG:

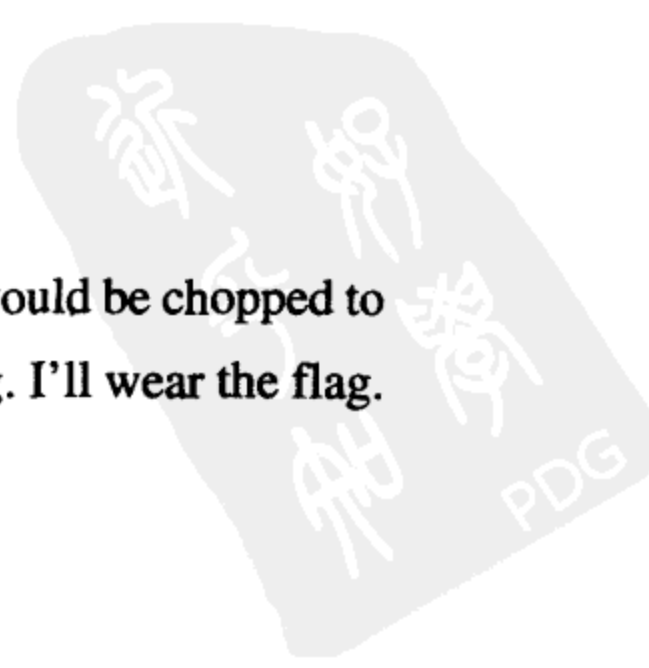
What's the word?

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

The word "Beheading".

LU SHENG:

Thanks for the grace of His Majesty. I thought that I would be chopped to pieces, but I shall be beheaded only. I'll wear the flag. I'll wear the flag.



〔下锣下鼓，插旗介〕

〔生〕蓬席之下，酒筵为何而设？

〔众〕光禄寺摆有御赐囚筵，一样插花茶饭。

〔生〕是了，这旗啊，

当了引魂幡帽插宫花。

锣鼓啊，

他当了引路笙歌赴晚衙。

这席面啊，

当了个施焰口的功臣筵上鲊。

〔众〕趁早受用些，是时候了。

〔生〕朝家茶饭，罪臣也吃够了。则黄泉无酒店，沽酒向谁人。
罪臣跪领圣恩一杯酒。〔跪饮介〕怎咽下也！

【么】

暂时间酒淋喉下，

还望你祭功臣浇奠茶。



(Amid sound of gongs and drums, the soldiers plant the one-word flag on Lu Sheng's back)

LU SHENG:

For whom is the banquet prepared on the tent mat?

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

The Royal Banquet Hall has a dinner ready for the convict awaiting execution. You can wear a flower and enjoy your meal.

LU SHENG:

Yes, this flag

Serves as the royal flower to guide the dead soul.

The drums and gongs

Play the music accompanying the late audience.

The dinner

Provides salted fish for the hungry ghost.

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

Make haste to dine and wine. It's about time.

LU SHENG:

I've had enough of royal dinners in the court. However, *As the underworld has no alehouse sign, / From whom can I buy wine?*

I'll kneel on the ground and drink a cup of wine bestowed by His Majesty.

(Kneels and drinks)

How can I gulp it!

(To the tune of Yao)

For the moment,

The wine moistens my throat;

I hope that His Majesty

Will offer sacrifice to a meritorious minister.



[众] 相公领了寿酒行罢。

[生叩头介] 罪臣谢酒了。

[众] 咦，看的人一边些，误了时候。

[生绑行介] 一任他前遮后拥闹挤喳，
挤的俺前合后偃走踢踏，

难道他有甚么劫场的人也则看着耍。

[众叫，锣鼓介]

[生问介] 前面幡竿何处？

[众] 西角头了。

【南滴溜子】

幡竿下，

幡竿下，

立标为罚。

是云阳市，



EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

Be on your way now that you've drunk the wine, Your Highness.

LU SHENG:

(Kowtows)

Here's my gratitude to His Majesty for the wine.

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

Hey, stand aside, onlookers, lest you delay the time.

LU SHENG:

(Walks on, tightly bound)

With roaring crowds back and forth,

I am squeezed and have to

Stumble my way to the execution site.

Is it that

The robbers also enjoy the sight?

*(The executioner and soldiers shout the way amid gong-beats
and drumbeats)*

LU SHENG:

(Asks)

What is the place with flag poles?

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

It is the West Corner.

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Southern Diliuzi)

Beneath the flagpoles,

Beneath the flagpoles,

A post is set for punishment.

The Yunyang execution ground,



云阳市，
风流洒角。

〔众〕休说老爷一位，
少甚么朝宰功臣这答，
套头儿不称孤，
便道寡。

用些胶水摩发，
滞了俺一手吹毛，
到头也没法。

〔生恼介〕

〔挣断绑索介〕

【北刮地风】

呀，
讨不的怒发冲冠两鬓花。

〔剑做摩生颈介〕

老爷颈子嫩，不受苦。

〔生〕咳，把似你试刀痕，
俺颈玉无瑕，

云阳市好一抹凌烟画。

〔众〕老爷也曾杀人来。

〔生〕哎也，

俺曾施军令斩首如麻，
领头军该到咱。





The Yunyang execution ground
Is a refined corner.

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

You are no exception, Your Highness,
Many ministers of distinction
Come here alone
And never turn around.

Like caressing the head with glue,
Your hairs will stick to my hands;
There is no alternative.

LU SHENG:

(Breaks apart the ropes in anger)
(To the tune of Northern Guadifeng)

Oh,

My hair stands erect in anger.

EXECUTIONER:

(Slips the back of his knife on Lu Sheng's neck)

Your tender neck can hardly sustain the pain.

LU SHENG:

Alas, for you to test your knife,

My neck is stainless without a flaw;

The Yunyang execution ground looks like a grand painting.

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

Have you killed anyone, Your Highness?

LU SHENG:

Well, by martial law,

I had countless heads cut at my orders

And now it's my turn to lose my head.



〔众〕这是落魂桥了。

〔生〕几年间回首京华，
到了这落魂桥下。

〔内吹喇叭介〕

〔刽子摇旗介〕时候了，请老爷升天。

〔生笑介〕则你这狠夜叉也闲吊牙，
刀过处生天直下。哎也，央及你断头话须详察，
一时刻莫得要争差。

把俺虎头燕颌高提下，
怕血淋浸展污了俺袍花。

〔众〕老爷跪下。

〔生跪受绑〕

〔刽磨刀介〕

〔内风起介〕

〔刽〕好风也，刮的这黄沙。哎哟，老爷的颈子在哪里？

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

Here we are at the Soul-Leaving Bridge.

LU SHENG:

For several years

I've been here to look back at the capital town

And crossed the Soul-Leaving Bridge.

(Sound of bugles within)

EXECUTIONER:

(Waves the flag)

It's time for you to ascend to heaven, Your Highness.

LU SHENG:

(Laughs)

Malicious as you look like a devil,

You also mouth fine words.

When the knife falls, I shall be born again in heaven. Alas, please listen to my last words carefully. At that very moment,

Do not make a miss.

See to it that you hold my head high

Lest blood should stain my robe.

EXECUTIONER, SOLDIERS:

On your knees, Your Highness.

(Lu Sheng kneels to be bound up)

(The executioner sharpens his knife)

(Sound of wind within)

EXECUTIONER:

What a gust of wind that blows the sands all over! Oops, where's your neck, Your Highness?



[摩介] 有了，老爷挺着。

[生低头]

[刽子轮刀介]

[内急叫介] 圣旨到，留人！留人！

[裴领旨同旦急上]

【南双声子】

天恩大，
天恩大，
鸣冤鼓由人打。
皇宣下，
皇宣下，
云阳市告了假。
省刑罚，
省刑罚。
担惊吓，
担惊吓。
一刻丝儿，
放人刀下。

圣旨到：卢生罪当万死，朕体上天好生之德，量免一刀，谪去广南鬼门关安置，不许顷刻停留。谢恩！

[放绑介]



(Feels)

Here it is. Stretch your neck, Your Highness.

(Lu Sheng bends his head)

(The executioner raises the knife)

VOICE OF URGENT SHOUTS WITHIN:

The imperial edict is coming! Stop the execution! Stop the execution!

*(Enter Pei Guangting in a hurry carrying the imperial edict,
followed by Miss Cui)*

PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of Southern Shuangshengzi)

The imperial grace is great;

The imperial grace is great;

You can beat the drums to air your grievances.

The imperial edict is coming;

The imperial edict is coming;

There will be no execution in Yunyang.

No punishment today;

No punishment today.

Don't be frightened;

Don't be frightened.

At an hair's breadth,

He escapes death from the knife.

Here's the imperial edict: Although Lu Sheng is guilty of a crime that deserves ten thousand deaths, I pardon him from death for heavenly grace.

Lu Sheng is to go on exile in the Ghost Gate Pass of Yazhou in southern Guangdong. There should not be a moment's delay. Pay tribute to the Emperor!

(Lu Sheng is unbound)

Handan Dream
Scene Twenty
PDG

〔生倒地叩头万岁介〕生受圣人大恩了。来者是谁！

〔裴〕是小弟裴光庭。

〔生〕贤弟，贤弟，俺的头可有也！

〔裴〕待我瞧瞧了。〔拍介〕老兄好一个寿星头。

【北四门子】

〔生〕猛魂灵寄在刀头下，

荷，荷，荷，

还把俺嶮头颅手自抹。

裴年兄，俺闲口相问：奏本秉笔者宇文公，也要萧年兄肯画知。

〔叹介〕要题知“斩”字下连名他，

相伴着中书怎押花？

〔裴〕敢萧年兄也不知。

〔生〕难道，难道，

则怕老萧何，

也放的下这淮阴胯？





LU SHENG:

(Lies prostrate on the ground and then kowtows)

Long live the Emperor! I am gratified with the grace of His Majesty. Who is the envoy?

PEI GUANGTING:

This is Pei Guangting.

LU SHENG:

Brother, brother, do I still have my head on me?

PEI GUANGTING:

Let me have a look.

(Looks and pats Lu Sheng on the head)

What a head of longevity you have!

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Northern Simenzi)

My soul lingers at the edge of a knife;

Oh, oh, oh,

I nearly committed suicide with a knife.

Minister Pei, may I ask why Minister Xiao also signed when the memorial was drafted by Yuwen Rong?

(Sighs)

In a case that involves execution,

How can he sign with the Prime Minister?

PEI GUANGTING:

I'm afraid that Minister Xiao knows nothing about it.

LU SHENG:

Do you mean to say, do you mean to say that

A minister like old Xiao He

Can do away with a general like Han Xin?



〔风起叹介〕看了些法场上的沙，
血场上的花，
可怜煞将军战马。

〔裴〕老兄与嫂嫂在此叙别，小弟回圣上话去。小心烟瘴地，回头雨露天。请了。〔下〕

〔旦哭介〕怎生来话儿都说不出来？奴家有一壶酒，一来和你压惊，二来饯行。

〔生〕卑人见过那些御囚茶饭，早醉饱也。

〔旦〕儿子都在午门叩头去了，等他来瞧一瞧去。

〔生〕由他，由他，他来徒乱人意。夫人，不要他来相见罢了。

〔旦哭介〕俺的天啊，也把一杯酒，略尽妻子之情。

【南鲍老催】

唏唏吓吓，



(Sighs when wind starts)

When I look at the sand on the execution ground
And the flowers on the bloody field,
I feel pity for the generals and their steeds.

PEI GUANGTING:

You may say farewell to your wife here. I'll go back and report to His Majesty. *Take good care when you are in the swamps/ As gentle rain will fall when the time arrives.*

Good-bye!

(Exit)

MISS CUI:

(Weeps)

How is it that words get stuck in my throat? I've brought a kettle of wine to calm you down and to see you off.

LU SHENG:

I've wined and dined in prison at the grace of His Majesty. I have had enough.

MISS CUI:

Our sons are kowtowing at the palace gate. Have a look at them before you leave.

LU SHENG:

Forget about it! Forget about it! They will only disturb my mind. Don't let them see me here, Madam.

MISS CUI:

(Weeps)

Oh heavens! I'll give you a toast to show my passions as your wife and on behalf of our sons.

(To the tune of Southern Baolaocui)

Oh, oh! Oops, oops!



〔酒杯惊跌介〕

〔旦哎哟介〕战兢兢把不住台盘滑。
扑生生遍体上寒毛乍，
吸厮厮，
也哭的，
声干哑。

〔内鼓介〕

〔内〕卢爷，快行，快行。有旨着五城催促，不可久停。

〔末小旦扮儿子哭上〕我的爹啊！

〔旦〕这都是你儿子，怎下的去也！

〔生〕是你妇人家，不知朝廷说我图谋不轨，如今安置我在鬼门关外。罪配之人，限时限刻。天啊，人非土木，谁忍骨肉生离？则怕累了贤妻，害了这几个业种，到为不便。

〔儿扯要同去介〕

〔生〕去不得也，儿。

〔同哭介〕

眼中儿女空勾搭，
脚头夫妇难安割，



(Drops the cup in panic)

Alas!

Trembling with fear, I can hardly hold the plate.

I am shivering with cold;

Sobbing and howling,

I moan and cry

In a hoarse voice.

(Drumbeats within)

VOICE WITHIN:

Master Lu, hurry up! Hurry up! The imperial edict comes from the capital town to urge the departure without delay.

(Enter Lu Sheng's sons in tears)

SONS:

Dear Dad!

MISS CUI:

How can your sons tear themselves away from you!

LU SHENG:

As a woman, you do not know that the royal court says that I must go on exile outside the Ghost Gate Pass because I have ulterior motives. A criminal on exile has to leave at the fixed time. Oh heavens, as man is not made of soil or wood, who can bear separation from his flesh and blood? I'm afraid that I've involved you and our sons in all the trouble and inconvenience.

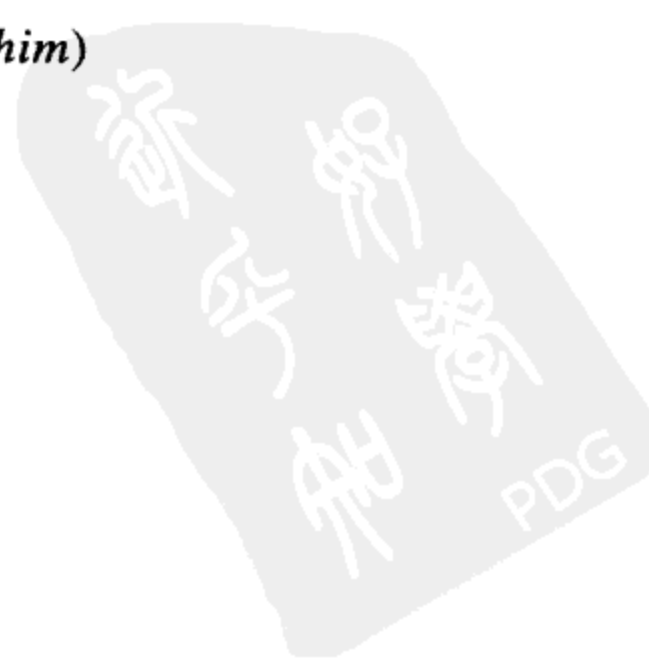
(Lu Sheng's sons grasp him, eager to go with him)

You ought not to go with me, my dear sons!

(Weeps with his sons)

My sons cannot stay with me;

My wife cannot live with me;



同死去做一榻。

[旦闷倒]

[生扯介]

【北水仙子】

呀，呀，呀，

哭坏了他。

扯，扯，扯，

扯起他且休把望夫山立着化。

[众儿哭介]

[生] 苦，苦，苦，

苦的这男女煎渣。

痛，痛，痛，

痛的俺肝肠激刮。

我，我，我，

瘴江边死没了渣。

你，你，你，

你夫人权守着生寡。

[旦] 你再瞧瞧儿子么。

[生] 罢，罢，罢，

儿女场中替不的咱。

好，好，好，

这三言半语告了君王假。

我去，请了。





We can only share a bed in death.

(Miss Cui faints)

LU SHENG:

(Holds Miss Cui)

(To the tune of Northern Shuixianzi)

Oh, oh, oh!

She's cried her eyes out.

Pull, pull, pull! Pull her up

Lest she becomes a stone statue.

(Lu Sheng's sons weep)

LU SHENG:

Suffer, suffer, suffer!

They will suffer too much.

Pain, pain, pain!

The pain stabs at my heart.

I, I, I!

When I die beside a noxious river,

You, you, you!

Madam, you will become a widow.

MISS CUI:

Have another look at your sons!

LU SHENG:

Well, well, well!

My sons cannot take my place.

Now, now, now!

With these words I've taken leave of His Majesty.

It's time for me to leave. Good-bye!



[旦哭介] 相公那里去？

[生] 去，去，去，
去那无雁处海角天涯。

[虚下]

[旦哭介] 儿子回去罢。难道为妻子的，不送上他一程？

【南斗双鸡】

君恩免杀，
奴心似刚。
没个人儿和他，
和他把包袱打。
大臣身价，
说的来长业煞。

[生上见介] 夫人，你怎生又赶上来？

[旦] 为你没个伴当，放心不下。我袖了半截银锞子，你路上顾觅。

[生] 罪人谁敢相近？我独自觅食而行。你还拿这半截锞子回去，买柴籴米，休的苦了儿女啊。

MISS CUI:

Where are you going?

LU SHENG:

Go, go, go!

I'm going to the remotest corner of the earth.

(Exit)

MISS CUI:

(Weeps)

Go back home, sons! As his wife, am I not going to accompany him a bit?

(To the tune of Southern Doushuangji)

Although my man is pardoned by His Majesty,

I feel the sword stabbing at my heart.

There is no one to help him,

To help him pack luggage.

As a minister,

Why should he have come to this?

(Reenter Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

(Greets Miss Cui)

Why are you catching up with me again, Madam?

MISS CUI:

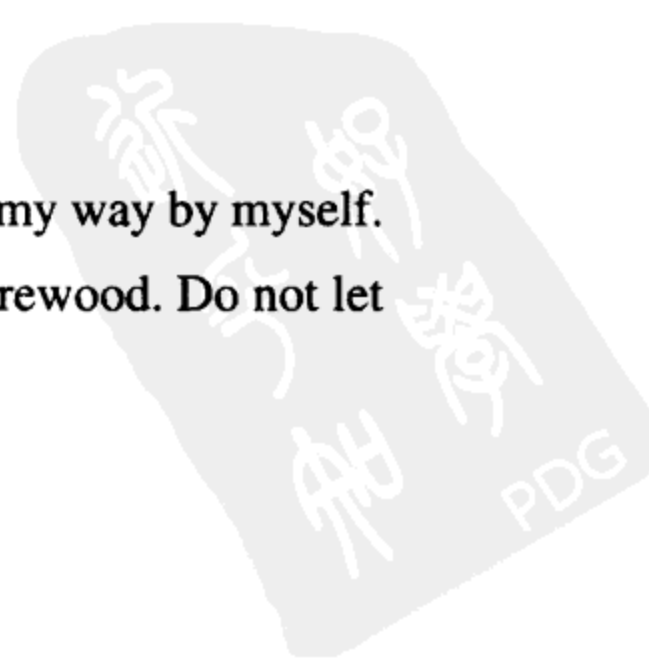
I cannot set my mind at ease because there is no one to accompany you.

I've brought a small chunk of silver in my sleeve for you to spend on the way.

LU SHENG:

Who dares to come close to me as a convict? I'll beg my way by myself.

Please bring the silver back and buy some rice and firewood. Do not let our sons suffer!



【北尾】

罪人家顾不出个人儿罢？

我还怕的有别样施行咱。

夫人，夫人，

你则索小心儿守着我万里生还也朝上马。

十大功劳误宰臣，

鬼门关外一孤身。

流泪眼观流泪眼，

断肠人送断肠人。



(To the tune of Northern Coda)

Can a convict's family have much hope?

I fear that other tricks might be done on us.

Madam, madam,

Just keep waiting with patience

Until I come back and win fame again.

A man of worthy deeds is harmed by lies;

On exile to the Ghost Gate Pass he departs.

Weeping eyes look at weeping eyes;

A broken heart sees off a broken heart.



第二十一出 谗快

【缕缕金】

〔宇文笑上〕口里蜜，
腹中刀。
奸雄谁似我，
逞英豪？
来的遵吾道。
那般痴老，
一万重烟瘴怎生逃？
家门尽休了。

学生谗臣宇文融便是。一不做，二不休，卢生那厮开河三百里，开边一千里，可谓扶天翊圣大功臣矣。被我奏他通番谋叛，押斩市曹。可恨他妻子清河崔氏，奏免其死，窜居海南烟瘴地方。那里有个鬼门关，怎生活的去？中吾计也，中吾计也。则那崔氏，虽一妇人，留在外间，还怕有他萧、裴同年，拨置生事。我昨密奏一本：崔氏乃



Scene Twenty-One **The Slanderer's Satisfaction**

(Enter Yuwen Rong, in laughter)

YUWEN RONG:

(To the tune of Lülijin)

I have a honey tongue

And a dagger heart.

Who is so vile as I

And yet serves as a lord?

Those who come must do as I say.

How can a fool like Lu Sheng

Escape from miasma and be on homeward way?

His family is done away with.

I am the slander minister Yuwen Rong. In for a chip, in for a chunk. Lu Sheng is a meritorious minister, who has dug 300 miles of canal and expanded 1000 miles of border territory. When I presented a memorial to His Majesty, saying that he had illicit relations with Tubo, he was to be put to death in public. It is unfortunate that his wife Miss Cui from Qinghe begged His Majesty for pardon from death and Lu Sheng was sent on exile to a place full of miasma in Hainan. How can he escape from death when he crosses the Ghost Gate Pass? He's got into my trap! However, a mere woman as she is, Miss Cui might stir up trouble at the instigation of Xiao and Pei if she is left unrestrained. I presented a secret memorial



叛臣之妻，当没为官婢；其子叛臣之种，俱应窜去远方。圣旨准奏，其子随便居住，崔氏没入外机坊织作。得了此旨，我即刻差官京城巡捉使，星夜将崔氏囚之机坊，将他儿子捻出京城去。好来回话也。

〔大使上〕兼充五城使，未入九流官。禀老爷回话。

〔宇〕拿崔氏到局坊去了？

〔使〕容禀：

【黄莺儿】

半老尚多娇，
听拘拿粉泪漂，
我穿通驾上人惊倒。
家私尽抄，
儿女尽逃，
则一名犯妇今收到。



to His Majesty yesterday, saying, "As the wife of a traitorous minister, Miss Cui should be reduced to the state of a slave maid; as the descendants of a traitorous minister, Lu Sheng's sons should be banished to a distant location." His Majesty decreed, "Lu Sheng's sons are to live outside the capital and Miss Cui is to serve in the Royal Weaving Mill." No sooner had I obtained the imperial edict than I sent a capital envoy to confine Miss Cui in the Weaving Mill and to expel Lu Sheng's sons out of the capital town. I'm now waiting for a reply from the envoy.

(Enter Envoy)

ENVOY:

An envoy in the capital town/ Is not an official of the lowest rank.

I've come back to report to you, Your Excellency.

YUWEN RONG:

Have you brought Miss Cui to the Royal Weaving Mill?

ENVOY:

Please listen to me.

*(To the tune of **Huangying'er**)*

Still pretty in her middle age,

She wept

When she heard of her detention.

She fainted when she heard the edict.

All her properties confiscated,

All her sons on the run,

She is a criminal under custody.



[合] 好轻敲，
把冤家散了，
长是乐陶陶。

[宇] 你这个官儿到能事，记你一功，送吏部纪录去。

[使叩头谢介]

杀人须见血，
立功须要彻。
都是会中人，
不劳言下说。





YUWEN RONG, ENVOY:

It's easily done
That the foe is banished.
How happy we are!

YUWEN RONG:

As you are very capable, you'll be rewarded for your merits. Put in file in the Ministry of Personnel.

ENVOY:

(Kowtows to show his gratitude)

**Kill one and see him bleed;
Do a merit and do it well.
As we are of the same breed,
You do not have to tell.**



第二十二出 备苦

〔净扮贼上〕脸上几根毛，僭号“鬼头刀”。

小子连州人，一生翦径。这几日空闲，有个兄弟在古梅村，寻他干事去。〔行介〕兄弟在家么？

〔丑扮贼上〕半生光浪荡，混名“下剔上”。

〔净〕怎生叫做下剔上？

〔丑〕但是讨宝，没有的，不管死活，从额下一剔剔上去。

〔净〕快当，快当。兄弟，这几日空过怎好？

〔内虎吼介〕



Scene Twenty-Two **Sufferings on Exile**

(Enter Highwayman A)

HIGHWAYMAN A:

With hairs on my face all my life,/ I have been nicknamed "Ghost-Head Knife".

I was born in Lianzhou and have been a highwayman as my life career. As I have nothing to do these days, I'll call on my brother in Gumei Village to resume our business.

(Walks on)

Is my brother in?

(Enter Highwayman B)

HIGHWAYMAN B:

A loafer half my life,/ I'm called "Shave-Up".

HIGHWAYMAN A:

Why are you called "Shave-Up"?

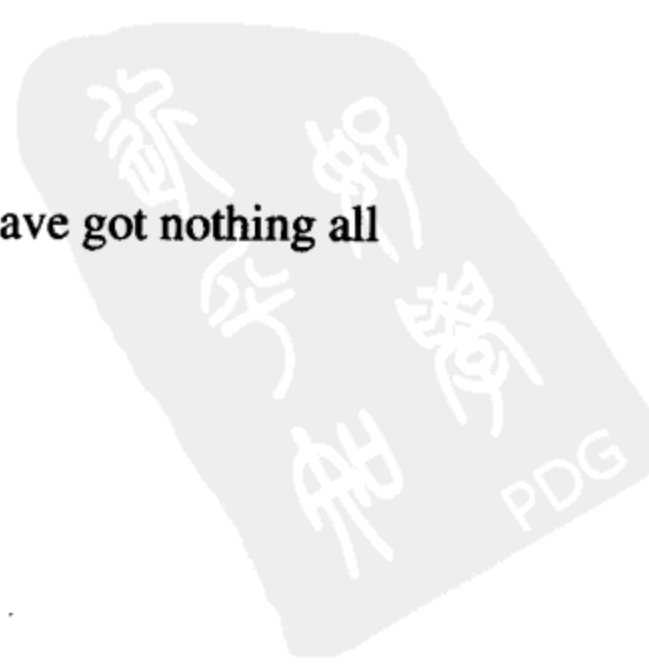
HIGHWAYMAN B:

If I do not get anything when I say "Money or life", I'll just shave up his chin with a knife.

HIGHWAYMAN A:

Cool, cool! However, what shall we do now that we have got nothing all these days, brother?

(Tiger roar within)



〔丑〕虎来了，和哥哥前路等人去。谁知虎狼外，更有狠心人。

〔下〕

〔生伞上〕行路难，行路难。不在水，不在山。朝承恩，暮赐死。行路难，有如此。

我卢生，身居将相，立大功劳。免死投荒，无人敢近。一路乞食而来，直到潭州。州守同年，偷送一个小厮，小名呆打孩，背负而来。过了连州地方，与广东接界，只得拼命前去。那小厮也走动些么？〔叫介〕呆打孩，呆打孩。

〔童担上〕走乏了，秀才挑了去。

〔生〕你再挑一程儿么？〔行介〕

【江儿水】

眼见得身难济路怎熬？

凌云台画不到这风尘貌，

玉门关想不上崖州道。

HIGHWAYMAN B:

A tiger is coming. Let's wait for the passers-by ahead.

*Compared with the tigers and wolves,
Men are even more cruel.*

(Exeunt Highwaymen A and B)

(Enter Lu Sheng, carrying an umbrella)

LU SHENG:

*Hard is the way;/ Hard is the way./ Hard is not the hill;/ Hard is
not the rill./ Distinction in the morn/ And death in the eve./ Hard is
the way/ That men grieve.*

I, Lu Sheng, used to rank high in office for my meritorious deeds, but went on exile after a narrow escape from death without anyone daring to say a word for me. I begged all the way up to Tanzhou, where a former colleague of mine secretly gave me a servant-boy by the name of Trance, who carries the luggage for me. Now that I've passed Lianzhou and approached Guangdong, I have to go on at the risk of my life. Is the servant-boy strong enough to go on?

(Calls aloud)

Trance! Trance!

(Enter Trance, shouldering the luggage with a pole)

TRANCE:

I'm so tired. Will you carry the luggage for a while?

LU SHENG:

Will you carry the luggage for a little while more?

(Walks on)

(To the tune of Jiang'ershui)

I can hardly walk on any more,

In scenes not to be found in the capital town,

On my way to Yazhou not conceivable in Yumen Pass.



[童] 脑领上黑碌碌的一大古子来了。

[生] 禁声！那是瘴气头，号为瘴母。

[叹介] 黑碌碌瘴影天笼罩。

和你护着嘴鼻过去。〔走介〕好了，瘴头过了。

[童] 又一个瘴头。

[生] 怎了？怎了？

这里有天难靠，

北地里坚牢，

偏到的南方寿夭。

[内虎啸介]

[童哭介] 大虫来了，走不动。

[生] 着了瘴么？有甚么大虫？

[童] 那不是大虫？

[虎跳上]



TRANCE:

A dark expanse of cloud is pending overhead.

LU SHENG:

Shut up! This is the head of noxious gas, called miasma.

(Sighs)

The dark clouds of miasma cover the sky.

Let's move on, covering our mouths.

(Walks on)

Well, we've crossed the miasma.

TRANCE:

Another miasma is coming.

LU SHENG:

How can it be? How can it be?

I cannot rely on heaven here;

I have survived in the north,

But will die in the south.

(Tiger-roar within)

TRANCE:

(Weeps)

A tiger is coming. I cannot move a step any more.

LU SHENG:

Are you bewitched? Where's the tiger?

TRANCE:

Haven't you seen the tiger there?

(A tiger jumps onto the stage)



〔生惊介〕天也！天也！

【忒忒令】

是不是山精野猫？

观模样定然为豹。

古语云：刀不斩无罪之汉，虎不食无肉之人。咱卢生身上无肉也。

〔童〕我呆打孩一发瘦哩。

〔生〕瘦书生怎做得这、
一餐东道？

赛得过扑赵盾、

小神獒。

〔虎跳介〕

〔生〕怎生不转额前来跳，
意儿不好。

虎有三步打，待咱张起伞来。

〔张伞作斗介〕

〔内叫〕畜生，不得无礼！

〔虎咬童下〕

〔生哭介〕大虫拖去呆打孩了，且独自行去。〔行介〕我闲想起来，朝中黄罗凉伞，不能够遮护我身，这一把破雨伞，到遮了我身；





LU SHENG:

(Startled)

Oh heavens! Heavens!

(To the tune of Teteling)

Is it a mountain sprite or a wild cat?

It does look like a leopard.

As the ancient saying goes, *The knife does not kill an innocent man;/*
The tiger does not eat a fleshless man.

There's no flesh on me.

TRANCE:

I am even thinner than you.

LU SHENG:

How can a bony scholar

Serve as a meal?

The tiger is more fierce

Than the hound that bites.

(The tiger jumps up)

LU SHENG:

It jumps without turning its head,

A sign of bad omen.

As the tiger usually makes three jumps, I'll open my umbrella.

(Opens his umbrella, ready to fight with the tiger)

VOICE WITHIN:

Behave yourself, you beast!

(Exit the tiger, holding Trance in its mouth)

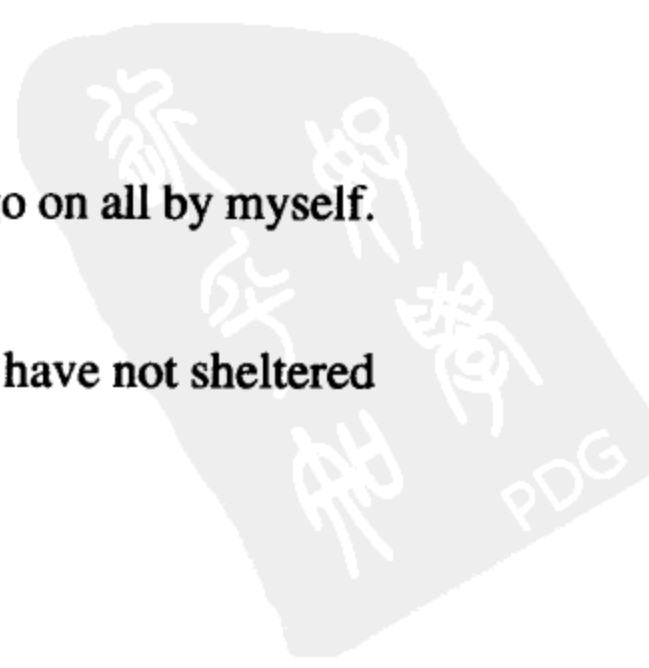
LU SHENG:

(Weeps)

Now that the tiger has carried away Trance, I have to go on all by myself.

(Walks on)

It so happens that the silk umbrellas in the royal court have not sheltered



满朝受恩之人，不能替我的命，倒是呆打孩替了我命；看来万物有缘哩。

〔丑、净持刀赶上〕汉子那里去？

〔生惊介〕往海南的。

〔丑〕讨宝来，讨宝来。

〔生〕贫子有甚么宝？

【五供养】

雨衣风帽，

念卢生出仕在朝。

〔净〕在朝一发有宝了。

〔生〕些须曾有宝，

尽被虎狼饕。

〔丑〕难道老虎连金银都吃去了？讨打！讨打！

〔刀背打介〕

〔生〕不要打，小生也是个有意思的人。



me, but my tattered umbrella has. Those who have received favour from me in the court cannot save my life, but Trance has died in my stead. It seems that everything in the world is predestined.

(Enter Highwaymen A and B, carrying knives in their hands)

HIGHWAYMEN A AND B:

Where are you going, man?

LU SHENG:

(Frightened)

I'm going to Hainan.

HIGHWAYMAN B:

Leave your treasures! Leave your treasures!

LU SHENG:

What treasure can I have as a poor scholar?

(To the tune of Wugongyang)

With a raincoat and a wind-cap,

I've been expelled from the court.

HIGHWAYMAN A:

You must have treasures since you are from the court.

LU SHENG:

I used to have treasures,

But tigers and wolves have devoured them.

HIGHWAYMAN B:

Do you mean to say that the tiger has devoured your gold and silver?

You're asking for a beating! You're asking for a beating!

(Beats Lu Sheng with the back of his knife)

LU SHENG:

Spare me! I'm a man with an intelligent mind.



〔丑〕要你有意思做甚那？

〔生〕小生是个有功劳之人。

〔丑〕功劳甚么用？讨宝来。

〔生叹介〕咳，

我想诸余不要，

则买身钱荷包在腰。

谁人知意思，

何处显功劳？

骂你一声黑心贼盗。

〔丑〕没有宝，又骂我贼，下别上宰了。

〔杀生介〕

〔生作死介〕

〔丑〕前生有今日，来岁是周年。〔下〕

〔生醒介〕哎哟，这颈子歪一边去，湿淋侵怎的？〔看介〕是血哩，谁在我颈额下抹了一刀。喜的不曾斩喉，且把颈子端正起来。



HIGHWAYMAN B:

What's the use of your intelligent mind?

LU SHENG:

I'm a man with meritorious deeds.

HIGHWAYMAN B:

What's the use of your meritorious deeds? Leave your treasures!

LU SHENG:

(Sighs)

Alas,

You want nothing

But my gold and silver.

Who knows my intelligence?

Where shall I display my feats?

You heartless highwaymen!

HIGHWAYMAN B:

As you do not give me your treasure and calls me names, I'll shave you up with my knife.

(Kills Lu Sheng)

(Lu Sheng feigns to be dead)

HIGHWAYMAN B:

You are predestined to die this way;/ Next year people will commemorate you today.

(Exeunt the highwaymen)

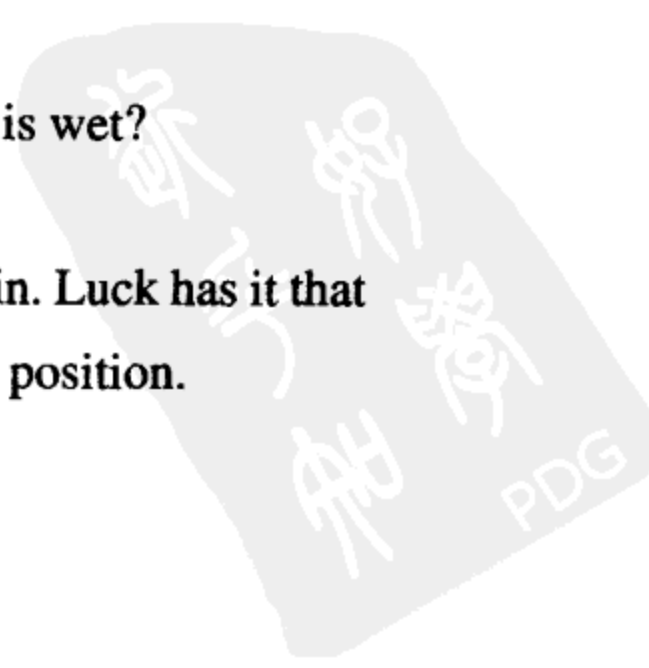
LU SHENG:

(Comes to life again)

Oh, my neck is slanting aside. How is it that my neck is wet?

(Looks)

It's blood! Someone has slipped his knife under my chin. Luck has it that he has not cut my throat. I'll turn my neck to the right position.



〔踉起正头，叫疼介〕呀，原来大海子。〔望介〕〔疼介〕恰好一只船儿也。

〔舟子上〕何来血腥气，触污海潮风。汉子，救你一命。

〔众不许生上介〕

〔舟子劝上介〕

【玉筲子】

〔众〕是乌艚还是白艚？

浪崩天雪花飞到。

〔内风起介〕

〔众〕飓风起了，
恶风头打住篷梢，
似大海把针捞。

浮萍一叶希，
带我残生浩渺。

〔生〕好了，前面青山一带，是海岸了。

〔舟〕哎哟，鲸鱼晒翅黑了天，这船人休了。

(Turns his neck on tiptoe)

Oops! Oh, here's the sea!

(Looks and feels the pain)

A boat is coming.

(Enter boatmen)

BOATMAN A:

Where comes the blood/ That pollutes the sea wind?

I'll save your life, man.

(The other boatmen refuse to let Lu Sheng embark the boat)

(Boatman A helps Lu Sheng embark the ship)

BOATMEN:

(To the tune of Yuzhazi)

Is it a black boat or a white boat?

The waves are pouring from the sky.

(Sound of wind within)

BOATMEN:

A hurricane is coming.

The strong wind breaks the mast,

As if looking for a needle in the sea.

The boat is like a floating leaf,

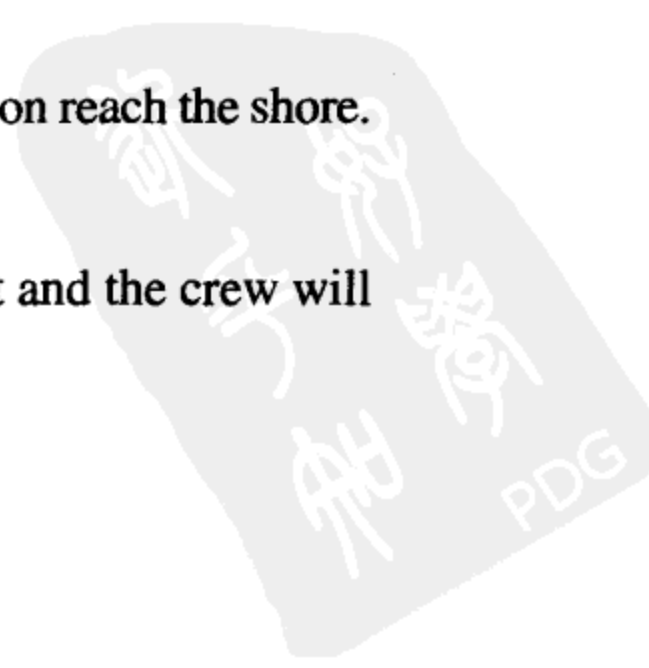
Carrying little hope with it.

LU SHENG:

Look, the green mountains are looming ahead. We'll soon reach the shore.

BOATMAN A:

Alas, a huge whale is rising out of the water. The boat and the crew will perish.



〔众哭介〕

【江神子】

则道晚山如扇插云高，

怎开交？

遇鲸鳌。

则他眼似明珠，

摄摄的把人瞧。

翅邦儿何处落？

才一闪，

命秋毫。

〔内普鲁空空声介〕

〔众〕坏了！

〔船覆，众下介〕

〔生得木板，漂走，哭上介〕哎哟，天妃圣母娘娘，一片木板儿，中甚用啊？〔风起介〕好了，好了，一阵飓风来。前面是岸，尽力跳上去。〔跳介〕谢天谢地！〔内大风吼介〕〔生抱颈介〕哎，紧巴着这颈子，可吹不去呢。



BOATMEN:

(Weep)

(To the tune of Jiangshenzi)

The whale looks like a towering mountain;

What shall we do with it?

What shall we do with the whale?

Its eyes are as bright as pearls,

Staring at us all.

Where will its fins fall?

When it wavers its fins,

We can hardly keep alive.

(Sound of roaring waves within)

BOATMEN:

It's too bad!

(The boat overturns)

(Exeunt the boatmen)

(Lu Sheng grasps at a plank and floats off stage)

(Reenter Lu Sheng, weeping)

LU SHENG:

Alas, gracious Heavenly Queen Mother! What's the use of a plank?

(Sound of wind within)

Good luck! Gook luck! A gust of hurricane is coming. The shore lies ahead and I'll jump on it.

(Jumps)

Thank heavens!

(Sound of roaring wind within)

LU SHENG:

(Holds his neck tightly)

Well, I'll hold my neck tightly lest it be blown off.



〔风吼，哭介〕吹去颈子怎好？靠着石亭子倒了去也。〔倒介〕

〔扮众鬼上〕

〔各色随意舞弄介〕

〔末扮天曹上〕众鬼不得无礼！呀，此人有血腥气。〔看介〕原来颡下刀伤，将我一股髭须，替他塞了刀口。

〔鬼替捋须塞口，诨介〕

〔天曹〕卢生，听吾分付：二十年丞相府，一千日鬼门关。

〔下〕

〔生醒介〕哎哟，好不多的鬼也！分明一人将髭须塞了颡下刀口，又报我二十年丞相府，一千日鬼门关。呀，真个长下胡子了。

〔扮二樵夫，黑脸蓬头，绳扛打歌上〕打柴打柴打打子柴，万鬼台前一树槐。



(Sound of roaring wind within)

LU SHENG:

(Weeps)

What shall I do if the neck is blown off? I'll lean against the stone pavilion and collapse.

(Falls)

(Enter ghosts, dancing in diverse manners)

(Enter the Heavenly Minister)

HEAVENLY MINISTER:

Behave yourselves, ghosts! Well, this man smells of blood.

(Looks)

His neck is hurt by a knife. Pull a lock of my whiskers to fill in his wound.

(The ghosts pull a lock of whiskers from the Heavenly Minister and fill in Lu Sheng's wound, joking to each other)

HEAVENLY MINISTER:

Listen to me now, Lu Sheng: *You'll be Prime Minister for twenty years/ After a thousand days in the Ghost Gate Pass.*

(Exeunt the Heavenly Minister and the ghosts)

LU SHENG:

(Comes to senses again)

Alas! I've seen so many ghosts! Someone filled in my wound with whiskers and said that I would be Prime Minister for twenty years after a thousand days in the Ghost Gate Pass. Oh, a whisker is indeed growing on my chin.

(Enter two woodmen with black faces and dishevelled hair, carrying firewood on their shoulders and singing)

WOODMEN:

Gather firewood, gather firewood,/ A scholar-tree grows before the Ghost Terrace.



〔生惊介〕又两个鬼来了。

〔樵〕是黑鬼。

〔生〕一发吓杀我也！

〔樵〕我们是这崖州蛮户，生来骨髓都黑，因此州里人都叫做黑鬼。我是砍柴的。

〔生〕原来这等。你这里白日有鬼？

〔樵〕你不看亭子大金字？

〔生看念介〕呀，卢生到了鬼门关，眼见无活的也。

〔樵〕你是何等人，自来送死。

〔生〕我是大唐功臣，流配来此。

〔樵〕州里多见人说：有大官宦赶来，不许他官房住坐，连民房也不许借他。

〔生〕好苦！



LU SHENG:

(Startled)

Yet two ghosts are coming!

WOODMEN:

Two Black Ghosts are coming.

LU SHENG:

I'll be scared to death!

WOODMAN A:

We are natives here in Yazhou. We are called Black Ghosts because we have black complexions. I am a woodman.

LU SHENG:

Oh I see. Do you see ghosts here in broad daylight?

WOODMAN A:

Haven't you read the gilded characters on the pavilion?

LU SHENG:

(Looks and reads)

Well, I've reached the Ghost Gate Pass. It seems that I can hardly survive.

WOODMAN A:

Who are you that have come here to court death?

LU SHENG:

I'm a meritorious minister of the Tang Dynasty on exile here.

WOODMAN A:

It's said in Yazhou that high officials on exile here are not allowed to live either in government houses or in private houses.

LU SHENG:

How miserable I am!



〔樵〕可怜，可怜，我碓房住去。

〔生〕怎生叫做碓房？

〔樵〕你是不知，这鬼门关大小鬼约有四万八千，但是飓风起时，白日里出跳。则是鬼矮的离地三寸，高的不上一丈。下面住，鬼打搅得荒，我们山崖树杪架些排栏，夜间护着个四德狗子睡。

〔生〕怎生叫四德狗子？

〔樵〕他一德咬贼，二德咬野兽，三德咬老鼠，四德咬鬼。

〔生〕罢了，罢了，没奈何护着狗子睡了。则我被伤之人，碓不上去。

〔樵〕绳子抬罢。〔抬介〕

【清江引】

狗排栏架造无边妙，

个里难轻造。

山崖斗又高，

棘刺儿尖还俏，

黑碌碌的回回直上到杪。



WOODMAN A:

How pitiful! How pitiful! Come and live in my blockhouse.

LU SHENG:

What is a blockhouse?

WOODMAN A:

You know, there are about forty-eight thousand ghosts in the Ghost Gate Pass. When a hurricane comes, they come jumping around in the broad daylight. These ghosts are as short as three inches and the tallest are no more than a feet. We'll be disturbed if we live on the plains. That's why we have built wood fences on the cliff and sleep with four-virtue dogs at night.

LU SHENG:

What are four-virtue dogs?

WOODMAN A:

Their first virtue is to bite thieves; their second virtue is to bite beasts; their third virtue is to bite mice; their fourth virtue is to bite ghosts.

LU SHENG:

Well, well, I'll have to sleep with the dogs. The problem is that I am wounded and cannot climb the cliff.

WOODMEN:

We'll carry you up the cliff with ropes.

(Carry Lu Sheng with ropes)

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

The dog fence is a wonder,

Hard for us to build.

The cliff is steep and tall,

With thorns sharp and in good shape,

Climbing their way to the tree top.



【前腔】

八人抬盆煞那团花轿，
这样还波俏。
草绳系着腰，
黑鬼儿梭梭跳，
这敢是老平章到头的受用了？

逃得残生命，
鸛鷓寄一枝。
情知不是伴，
事急且相随。



(To the previous tune)

In a sedan carried by eight men,
We wind our way up the cliff.
With straw ropes around our waists,
We Black Ghosts jump and skip.
Is this the best a prime minister can enjoy?

**After a narrow escape from death,
He is like a wren to take a breath.
Although they are not of his kind,
They are the best he can find.**



第二十三出 织恨

〔末扮机坊大使官上〕平生不作皱眉事，天下应无切齿人。

自家京城巡捉使，为抄劄卢家有功，超升外织作坊一个大使，此乃当朝宰相宇文老爷之恩也。老爷还要处置卢家，但是他夫人织造粗恶，未完事件，都要起发他一场。想起来也是个一品夫人，大使官多大，去凌辱他。〔想介〕有计了：督造太监将到，撺掇他去凌辱便了。在此伺候。

〔丑扮内官上〕本是南内押班使，带作西头供奉官。

吾乃掌管织造穿宫内使便是，好几个月不曾下局。大使何在？



Scene Twenty-Three **Sufferings in the Weaving Mill**

(Enter Commissioner of the Weaving Mill)

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAIVING MILL:

If a man does nothing wrong,/ He will ne'er be hated lifelong.

I used to be an envoy in the capital town. As I did a good job in confiscating Lu's family, I have been promoted to be the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill thanks to the favours of Prime Minister Yuwen Rong, who would like to further persecute the Lus. Lu's wife is not good at weaving. Whenever her job is not done well, she will get a scolding. However, how can a small potato like the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill insult a First-Rank Lady?

(Thinks hard)

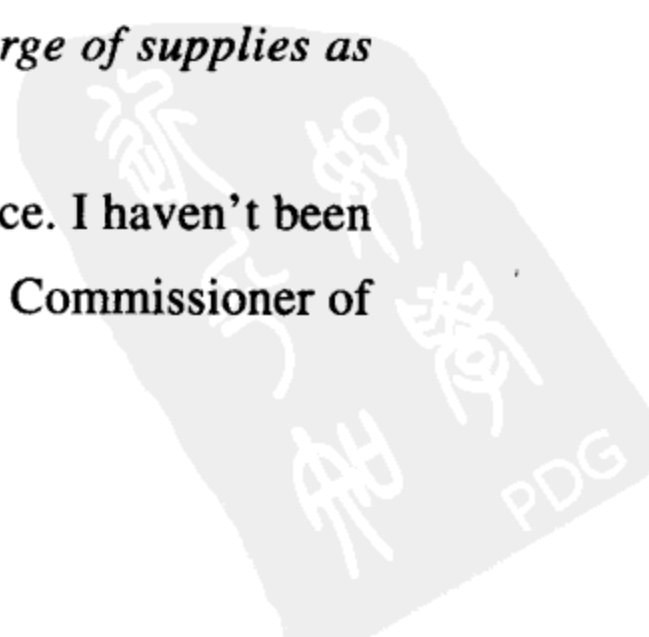
Yes, I've conceived a trick: when the eunuch in charge of weaving arrives, I'll instigate him to insult her. For the moment, I'll wait for him here.

(Enter the eunuch in charge of weaving)

EUNUCH:

As a ranking eunuch in the palace,/ I'm in charge of supplies as well.

I am a eunuch in charge of weaving for the palace. I haven't been to the Weaving Mill for several months. Where's the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill?



〔末见介〕公公下局，小官整备茶饭伺候。

〔丑〕你知近日朝廷有大喜事么？

〔末〕不知。

〔丑〕乃是吐蕃国降顺中华，带领西番一十六国侍子来朝，所费锦段赏犒不赀，故来催攒。你可知事？

〔末〕小官知事，只是外机坊钱粮有限，无可孝敬公公。

〔丑恼介〕不孝敬公公么？多大孙孙子哩！

〔末〕不敢说，有一场大孝敬，只要老公公消受得。

〔丑〕怎么大孝敬？

〔末〕老公公半年不到此间，有个织妇，系卢尚书妻小。那尚书积贯通番，得些宝玉珍珠，都在那妻子手里。



COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(Greets the eunuch)

Welcome to the mill. I've got tea and dinner ready for you.

EUNUCH:

Have you heard of the good tidings for the royal court?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

No, I haven't.

EUNUCH:

The Tubo Kingdom has surrendered and has brought ministers from sixteen states to pay tribute to His Majesty. As there are not enough satins to give them as gifts, I've come to speed up the weaving of satins. Are you intelligent enough?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

Of course I am intelligent. The pity is that the Weaving Mill is short of money and I've got no cash to present to you.

EUNUCH:

(Annoyed)

You've got no cash to present to me? What a big potato you are!

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

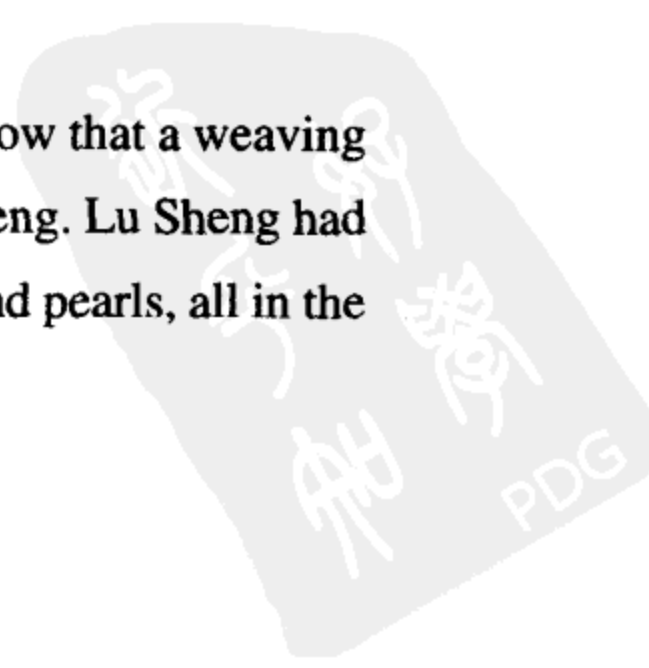
May I venture to tell you that there is a handsome sum for you if only you dare to accept it?

EUNUCH:

What do you mean by a "handsome sum"?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

As you haven't been here for half a year, you don't know that a weaving woman has arrived, who is the wife of Minister Lu Sheng. Lu Sheng had illicit relations with Tubo and amassed a lot of gems and pearls, all in the hands of his wife.



〔丑〕难道他双手送来？

〔末〕马不吊不肥，人不吊不招。吊将起来就招了。

〔丑〕我内家人心慈。

〔末〕小官打耳眯子。

〔丑〕着，凭仗太监公公，欺负卢家妈妈。〔下〕

〔旦、贴抱锦上〕

【破齐阵】

一旦内家奴婢，
十年相国夫人。
零落归坊，
淋漓当户，
织处寸肠挑尽。
怎禁得咿轧机中语？
待学个回环锦上文，
啼残双翠颦。



EUNUCH:

Do you expect her to offer the treasures at her own free will?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

A horse won't get fat if you do not hang it;/ A man will not confess if you do not hang him.

She will offer treasures if you hang her up.

EUNUCH:

I am soft-hearted.

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

I'll whisper in your ears as to what to do.

EUNUCH:

So it's settled.

As a eunuch all my life,

I'll bully Lu's wife.

(Exeunt the eunuch and the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill)

(Enter Miss Cui and Meixiang, holding satins in their hands)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Poqizhen)

A weaver in the Weaving Mill now

Was First-Rank Lady for ten years.

Reduced to a wretched state

In the Weaving Mill,

I weave with a broken heart.

How can I bear the noise of the mill?

The satin is done,

But tears will soon exhaust.



【端人娇】小织机坊，烟锁几重帘箔。挑灯罢，停梭梦着。流人江岭，半夜归来飘泊。宫墙近也，又被啼鸟惊觉。望断银河心缅邈，恨蓬首居然织作。天寒翠袖，试采鸳双掠。正脉脉秦川，回文泪落。

奴家卢尚书之妻清河崔氏。儿夫罪投烟瘴，奴家没入机坊，止许梅香一人相随。暗想公相在朝，夫荣妻贵，府堂之内，奴婢数百余人。奴有金貂，婢皆文绣。谁知一旦时事变迁？这也不在话下了。只是夫离子散，好不伤心啊。

【渔家傲】

机房静织妇思夫痛子身，
海南路叹孔雀南飞，
海图难认。

〔贴〕到宫谱宜男双鸳处，
怕钿愁晕。

梅香啊，
昔日个锦簇花围，
今日傍宫坊布裙。

〔合〕问天天，
怎旧日今朝今朝来是两人？





(To the tune of Tirenjiao)

*A Weaving Mill/ Is enshrouded in the mist./ I brighten the lamp/
And stop my shuttles in a dream. / My man on exile/ Returns at mid-
night./ We are approaching the palace wall/ When I am awakened by
the birdcall./ I gaze into the Milky Way/ And weave with disheveled
hair./ In the chilly night,/ I try to embroider the mandarin ducks./ At
sight of the river over which birds fly,/ My tears begin to gush in
flood.*

I am Miss Cui of Qinghe, wife of Minister Lu. When my man was sent in exile to the region of miasma, I was sent to the royal Weaving Mill, with none but Meixiang to accompany me. When my man was serving in the court, man and wife lived a life of abundance and distinction. For the hundreds of servant boys and servant maids, the boys were decorated with gold and mink while the maids were clothed in embroidery. Who knows the vicissitudes of life? Well, forget about it. How sad I am now that I am separated from my man and my sons!

(To the tune of Yujia'ao)

I stop weaving at the thought of my man and sons;
My man has gone south to Hainan,
A place hard to detect on a sea chart.

MEIXIANG:

It's better for her man to stay with her,
Lest she should feel too sad.

Oh, Meixiang!

I used to stay amid silk and blooms,
But now work in the mill in plain dress.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

We'll ask the heavens
Why we should live through two worlds.



〔旦〕在此三年，满朝仕宦，没个替相公表白冤情。

〔贴〕好苦！好苦！

【摊破地锦花】

〔旦〕大冤亲，
把锦片似前程刖。

一谜谜尘，
白日里黑了天门。

待学苏妻，
织锦回文。

〔合〕奏明君，
倘然间有见日分。

〔贴〕夫人，织锦回文，献上御览，召还相公，亦未可知。笔砚在此，先填了词，好上样锦。

〔旦写介〕宫词二首，调寄菩萨蛮。待我铺了金缕朱丝，梅香班织。

〔贴〕是如此。



MISS CUI:

I have been confined here for three years. No one in the court has ever tried to redress the injustice done on my man.

MEIXIANG:

How miserable we are! How miserable we are!

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Tanpodijinhua)

The grand foe
Has destroyed our career.
A swirl of dust
Has darkened the Heavenly Gate.
I'll learn from the ancient wife,
Who wove a palindrome for her mate.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

If we make a petition to the wise emperor,
There might be a day to get redressed.

MEIXIANG:

Madam, if you weave your petition in a palindrome and have it presented to His Majesty, there might be the possibility of bringing Master Lu home. Here is the ink and the ink-slab. Please write the words to be woven into the satin.

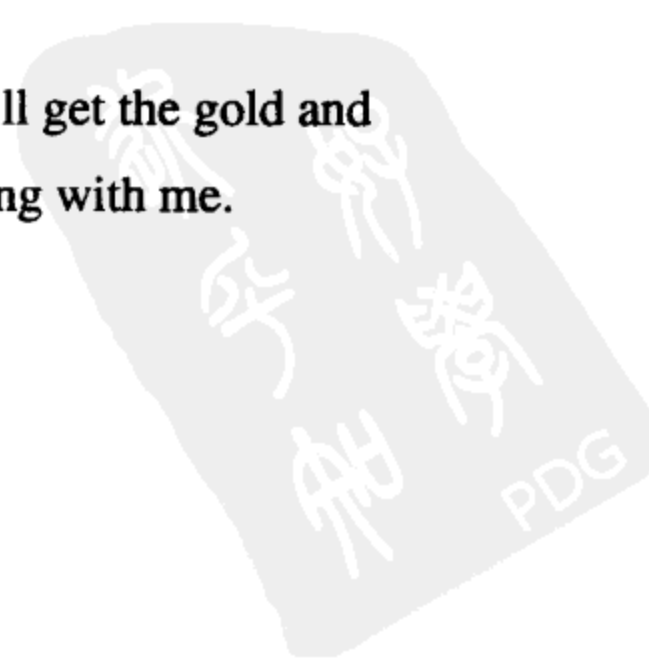
MISS CUI:

(Writes)

Here are two palace poems to the tune of *Pusaman*. I'll get the gold and red silk threads ready and Meixiang will do the weaving with me.

MEIXIANG:

Yes, Madam.



[旦铺锦上织介]

【剔银灯】

无情绪丝头乱厮引，
无断倒挑丝儿厮认。
一缕缕金衬着一丝丝柔肠恨，
一字字诗隐着一层层花毡晕。

[合] 回文玉纤抛损，
一溜溜梭儿撺过泪墨痕。

[内喝介]

[贴] 催锦的官儿将到，夫人趲起些。

【麻婆子】

[旦] 织就织就官锦上，
辞儿受苦辛。

蟋蟀蟋蟀天将冷，
停梭怅远人。

穿花锦滴泪眸昏，
一勾丝到得天涯尽。

[内喝介]

[合] 促织人催紧，
愁杀病官身。

[末同丑响道上]





MISS CUI:

(Gets the satin ready and starts to weave)

(To the tune of Tiyindeng)

I weave the messy silk in a low mood,

And try to find the broken thread.

The golden threads go with my endless woe;

My words are hidden in the flowery design.

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

The palindrome wears out my tender hands,

While the spindles pass through the stains of tears.

(Sound of hailing the way within)

MEIXIANG:

As the satin-collector is coming, you'd better hurry up, Madam.

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Mapozi)

Woven into the royal satin,

My words are worn out.

On hearing crickets chirp in the cold,

I stop the spindles to look afar.

When I weave, tears blur my eyes,

With thoughts flying to the end of the earth.

(Sound of hailing the way within)

MISS CUI, MEIXIANG:

While satin-collectors are coming soon,

Woe and worry makes me all the more fragile.

(Enter the eunuch and Commissioner of the Weaving Mill, hailing their way)



【粉蝶儿】

帽带馄饨，
高带着牙牌风韵。

〔末〕已到机坊。

〔丑〕还不见机户迎接，可恶，可恶！

〔贴慌介〕督造内使来到。夫人，患难之中，只索迎接。

〔旦〕我乃一品夫人，有体面的，你去便了。

〔贴应，跪接介〕机户迎接公公。

〔丑笑介〕好好，起来，起来。你就是卢夫人哩？

〔贴〕机户叫做梅香。

〔丑问末介〕怎么叫做梅香？

〔末〕梅香者，丫头之总名也。春间讨的是春梅，冬天讨的是





EUNUCH:

(To the tune of Fendie'er)

Wearing a hat with dumpling-shaped wings,
I walk in haughty strides.

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

Here we are at the Weaving Mill.

EUNUCH:

I haven't seen the weavers waiting here to greet us. What a curse! What a curse!

MEIXIANG:

(Flustered)

The eunuch in charge of weaving has arrived. As we are in the mire, we have to greet them, Madam.

MISS CUI:

As I am a First-Rank Lady with dignity, you'll go in my stead, Meixiang.

MEIXIANG:

(Responds and kneels to make a greeting)

The weaver is greeting Your Highness.

EUNUCH:

(Giggles)

Well, stand up, stand up. Are you Madam Lu?

MEIXIANG:

My name is Meixiang.

EUNUCH:

(To the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill)

Why is she called Meixiang?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

Meixiang is a general term for the maids, which means fragrance of the plum-blossom. If you enter the residence in spring, you'll be called Spring



冬梅，头上害喇驴的叫做喇梅。这不知是卢尚书哪一时讨的？总名梅香。

[丑笑介] 梅香，梅香，有甚香处？

[末] 梅香者，暗香也。都在衣服里下半截。

[低介] 吊起，那一阵阵香，满屋窜来。

[丑低] 你才说珠宝一事，这丫头可知？

[末] 他是卢尚书的通房，怎生不知？

[丑叹介] 则他便是卢尚书通房，其实欠通。

[末] 不要管他，只听我说一句，你发作一番便了。

[丑] 领教了。

[见介] 卢家的哪里？

[旦] 公公少礼。



Plum-Blossom. If you enter the residence in winter, you'll be called Winter Plum-Blossom. If you have scars on your head, you'll be called Scarred Plum-Blossom. I don't know when she entered Minister Lu's residence that she is called by the general term Meixiang.

EUNUCH:

(Giggles)

Meixiang, Meixiang, what fragrance does she have?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

Meixiang has secret fragrance hidden in the lower half of her clothes.

(In a low voice)

When she is hanged up in the hall, her fragrance will spread all over.

EUNUCH:

(Whispers)

Do you think she knows about the treasures you mentioned?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

As she is a concubine of Minister Lu, how can she know nothing about it?

EUNUCH:

(Sighs)

Even if she is a concubine of Minister Lu, I don't think she knows much about it.

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

Never mind. You just burst into anger at my signal.

EUNUCH:

All right.

(Makes a greeting)

Is that Lu Sheng's wife?

MISS CUI:

Thank you, Your Highness.



〔丑恼介〕哎哟，你是管下的机户，不磕头，却教公公少礼。难道做公公的你处磕头不成？且抬犒赏夷人的锦缎来瞧。

〔末〕千字文编号，有个八段锦，犒赏夷人字号：宣威沙漠，臣伏戎羌。每个字号该锦八疋，八八六十四疋。

〔丑〕呈样来。

〔贴呈锦介〕这宣威沙漠的样锦。

〔末耳语介〕

〔丑〕呀，锦文器薄，不中，不中。

〔贴又呈锦介〕这是臣伏戎羌的锦。

〔末耳语介〕

〔丑〕忒软了。

〔贴〕公公是不知，这宣威沙漠字号的锦，就要纱一般薄；臣伏戎羌的锦，就要绒一般软软的；都是钦降锦样儿。



EUNUCH:

(Annoyed)

Oh, as a weaver under my surveillance, you do not fall on your knees but just say “Thank you” to me. Am I to fall on my knees in front of you? Show me the satin for gifts to the Tubo envoys.

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

According to the order of the *Thousand-Word Essay*, there are eight kinds of satin as gifts to the Tubo envoys: “Display Power in Deserts; Subdue the Tubo Tribes.” There must be eight bolts for each word, sixty-four bolts in all.

EUNUCH:

Show me the satin samples.

MEIXIANG:

(Presents the satin)

This is the sample for “Display Power in Deserts”.

(The Commissioner of the Weaving Mill whispers to the eunuch)

EUNUCH:

Well, the satin is too thin. It won't do. It won't do.

MEIXIANG:

(Presents the satin)

This is the sample for “Subdue the Tubo Tribes”.

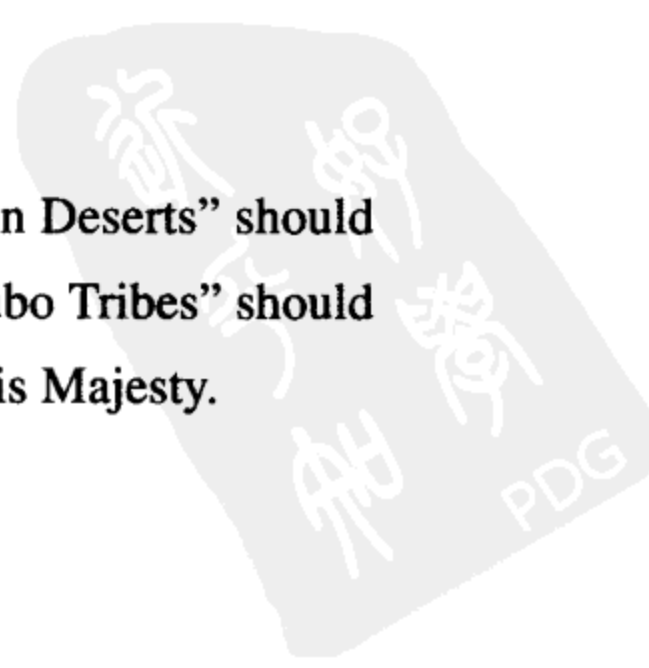
(Commissioner of the Weaving Mill whispers to the eunuch)

EUNUCH:

The satin is too soft.

MEIXIANG:

You don't know that the satin with “Display Power in Deserts” should be as thin as gauze and the satin with “Subdue the Tubo Tribes” should be as soft as downs. This is the pattern decreed by His Majesty.



〔丑问末介〕敢是钦降的？你去点数来。

〔末点介〕只有七七四十九疋，少造了八八六十四疋。

〔丑恼介〕好打哩！

〔做打介〕

〔贴遮〕

〔旦哭介〕

【普天乐犯】

锦官院，
把时光尽，
织作署风雷迅。

〔末耳语介〕

〔丑〕是哩，这锦上丝文长是断的，且不打正身，打这丫头伤春
懒慢。

〔旦〕他作官身甚伤春？

到是俺缕金丝肠断怀人。

〔末耳语介〕

〔丑〕是哩，怀人便是伤春，伤春便是怀人，好打，好打。





EUNUCH:

(To Commissioner of the Weaving Mill)

Isn't the pattern decreed by His Majesty? You go and count the bolts.

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(Counts)

There are only forty-nine bolts, lacking sixty-four.

EUNUCH:

(Gets angry)

You are asking for a sound beating.

(Beats Meixiang)

(Meixiang shelters herself)

MISS CUI:

(Weeps)

(To the tune of Putianlefan)

The Weaving Mill

Urges me;

The weaving office pushes me.

(Commissioner of the Weaving Mill whispers to the eunuch)

EUNUCH:

Yes, the silk in the satin is often broken. For the time being, I'll beat the maid in her madam's stead for her lovesickness and laziness.

MISS CUI:

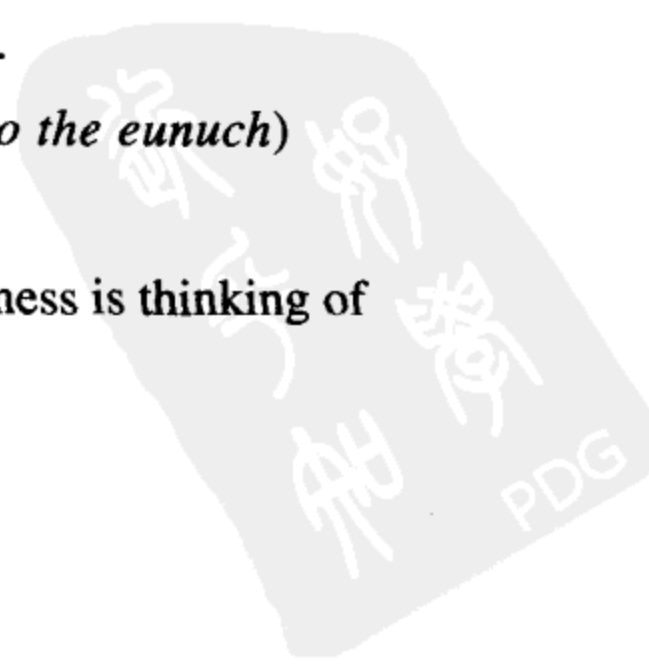
How can she be lovesick now that she's in custody?

I'm weaving and thinking of my man all the time.

(Commissioner of the Weaving Mill whispers to the eunuch)

EUNUCH:

Yes, thinking of her man is lovesickness and lovesickness is thinking of her man. Give her a sound beating! A sound beating!



[旦背哭介] 织锦字字萦方寸，
怎觑的一丝丝都是泪痕滚？

[回身指末介]

恨无端贝锦胡云，

[指锦介]

似这官锦如云，

甚干忙，

要巴巴羯羯你这内家人。

[末背嘴介] 妇人骂老公公哩。骂你巴，又骂你羯狗，好发作了。

[丑恼介] 呀，偏我巴，你不巴！我羯，你不羯！本待不寻思你，不怕不寻思你，待我亲自问他。那囚妇过来，听是你丈夫交通番国，有宝玉珍珠多少，拿送公公镶帽顶、闹妆鸾带可好？

[旦] 家私都打没了，那讨哪？

[末耳介]

[丑] 是了，马不吊不肥，人不打不招。先把梅香吊起来。

[吊介]



MISS CUI:

(Weeps aside)

With words woven into the satin,
Can't you see tears mixed with silk?

(Turns to point at the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill)

You're spinning yarns for no reason at all.

(Points at the satin)

The satin is as fine as the clouds in the sky;

Why on earth

Are you instigating the eunuch?

COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(To the eunuch)

She is calling you names. She's calling you son of a bitch, a dog. It's high time for you to burst out.

EUNUCH:

Oops, I am son of a bitch, and aren't you? I am a dog, and aren't you? I'd like to let you go, but you won't allow me to let you go. I'll question you by myself. Come nearer, you woman prisoner! I've heard that your husband had illicit relations with Tubo. How much treasure do you have? Share your treasure with me so that I can decorate my hat and buy a jade belt.

MISS CUI:

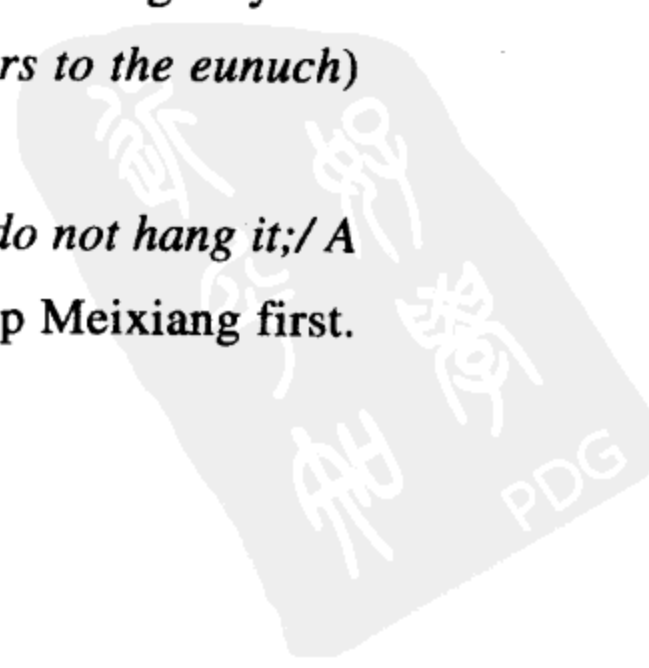
Now that everything has been confiscated, what do I have to give you?

(The Commissioner of the Weaving Mill whispers to the eunuch)

EUNUCH:

Yes, as the saying goes, *A horse won't get fat if you do not hang it;/ A man will not confess if you do not hang him.* Hang up Meixiang first.

(Hangs up Meixiang)





〔末假救介〕老公公休打他，他自招来。

〔丑打〕

〔贴不伏介〕哎哟，宝贝都没有了，珍珠到有些儿。

〔丑〕在那里？

〔贴〕裙窝里溜的。

〔贴尿诨介〕

〔丑〕这是梅香下载的香窰将出来了。

〔内喝道〕

〔丑、末慌介〕司礼监公公响道了。

〔走介〕

〔高上〕

【金鸡叫】

帽拥貂蝉，

红玉带蟒袍生晕。

可怜金屋里有向隅人，

何日金鸡传信？





COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(Feigns to protect Meixiang)

Don't beat her, Your Highness. Let her confess by herself.

(The eunuch beats Meixiang)

MEIXIANG:

(Refuses to comply)

Alas, while the treasure is all gone, there are some pearls.

EUNUCH:

Where are they?

MEIXIANG:

They are dripping inside my skirts.

(Pretends to piss)

EUNUCH:

The fragrance in Meixiang's lower part is rushing out.

(Sound of hailing the way inside)

EUNUCH, COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(In a panic)

They are hailing the way for the eunuch in charge of gifts.

(Exeunt)

(Enter Eunuch Gao)

EUNUCH GAO:

(To the tune of Jinjijiao)

With my hat decorated with a mink,

I wear a dazzling jade belt and a robe with pythons.

A pity that the lady stays alone at home;

When will good tidings come to her?



自家高力士便是。〔叹介〕我与平章卢老先生交游有年，一旦远
窜烟方，妻子没入外机坊织作。〔叹介〕好些时不曾看得他，知他安
否？

〔丑、末跪接介〕督造机坊内使大使叩头，迎接老爷。

〔高〕去。

〔进见介〕

〔高〕夫人拜揖。

〔旦〕不知老公公出巡，妾身有失迎接。

〔高〕几番遣人送些酱菜时鲜，可到呢？

〔旦〕都领下了。〔哭介〕老身好苦也！

【朱奴儿犯】

机丝脆怕驱忙摘紧，
机丝润看雨暄风熅。
又怕展污了几夜残灯烬，
奴便待尽时样花文贴进。



I am Eunuch Gao.

(Sighs)

I have kept a close friendship with Minister Lu for years. Once he was forced to go on exile, his wife was also compelled to work in the Royal Weaving Mill.

(Sighs)

As I haven't seen her for quite some time, I don't know how she's getting along.

EUNUCH, COMMISSIONER OF THE WEAVING MILL:

(Kneel on the ground to greet Eunuch Gao)

Eunuch in charge of weaving and Commissioner of the Weaving Mill kowtow to greet Your Highness.

EUNUCH GAO:

Step aside.

(Enters the Weaving Mill to greet Miss Cui)

I bow to you, Madam.

MISS CUI:

Excuse me for not greeting you outside as I didn't know you're coming.

EUNUCH GAO:

Have you received the pickled vegetables and green vegetables I've sent you off and on?

MISS CUI:

Yes, I have.

(Weeps)

How miserable I am!

(To the tune of Zhunu'erfan)

The silk is brittle so that I have to take great care;

The silk is moistened when storm comes.

For fear that the lamps will burn out,

I make haste to weave the design.



〔高〕使得，使得。

〔旦〕奴家还有一言告禀：官锦之外，奴家亲手制下粉锦一端，回文宫词二首，献上御览，也表白罪妇一片苦心。

〔高〕这不妨，便与献上御前，或有回天之喜。

〔合〕凄凉运，

凭谁问津？

问天公怎偏生折罚这弄梭人？

〔贴哭叫介〕老公公饶命！

〔高〕夫人，饶了这丫头罢。

〔旦〕不是老身难为他。不敢诉闻，都是贵衙门督造内使。

〔高〕怎的来？

〔旦〕到这里也不催锦，也不看锦，只是打闹，讨宝贝若干，珍珠若干。老公公，你说罪犯之妇，哪讨啊？



EUNUCH GAO:

That'll do. That'll do.

MISS CUI:

I have one more word to say. Aside from the royal satin, I've also woven a bolt of pink satin with a palindrome on it to be presented to His Majesty, so that I can lay bare my heart.

EUNUCH GAO:

That's fine. When it is presented to His Majesty, you might be rehabilitated.

EUNUCH GAO, MISS CUI:

For my miserable fate,
Who would like to care?
Gracious heavens,
Why are you punishing a poor weaver?

MEIXIANG:

(Cries aloud)

Spare my life, Your Highness!

EUNUCH GAO:

Just spare that maid, Madam.

MISS CUI:

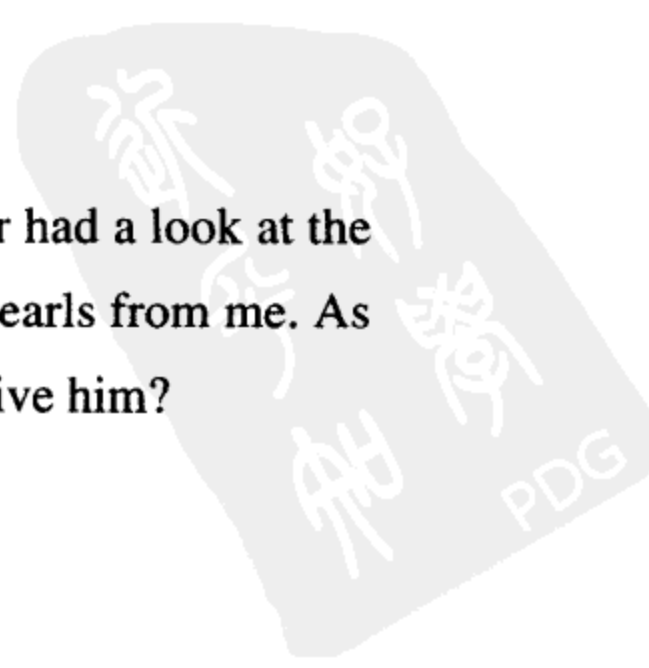
It's not I that have persecuted her. I did not dare to tell you that it was the eunuch in charge of weaving.

EUNUCH GAO:

What's the matter?

MISS CUI:

When he came here, he neither urged me on satin nor had a look at the satin. He just made a chaos by extorting treasure or pearls from me. As a convict's wife, what on earth do you think I could give him?



〔高恼介〕原来这等，小的儿，快放下来。

〔丑忙松绑介〕

〔高〕军校，带着小的，衙门伺候。

〔拿丑下介〕

〔旦〕也是大使作弄他。

〔高〕连那大使拿着。

〔拿介〕

【尾声】

〔高〕缕金箱点数了且随宜进。

〔旦〕聒杀人那促织儿声韵。

〔高〕夫人，老尚书啊，

终有日衣锦还乡你心放稳。

抛残红泪湿窗纱，

织就龟文献内家。

但得丝纶天上落，

犹如锦上再添花。



EUNUCH GAO:

(Annoyed)

Oh I see. Untie her at once, man.

(The eunuch unties Meixiang in haste)

EUNUCH GAO:

Military guard, arrest the eunuch and take him to the prison.

(Exit the eunuch under arrest)

MISS CUI:

The Commissioner of the Weaving Mill played a trick on him.

EUNUCH GAO:

Arrest the Commissioner of the Weaving Mill as well.

(The Commissioner of the Weaving Mill is arrested)

(To the tune of Coda)

Count the cases of satin and bring them with me;

MISS CUI:

What a depressing song the crickets and singing.

EUNUCH GAO:

Madam, Minister Lu

Will come back rehabilitated, I'm sure.

With drops of tears on window-sash like dew,

You wove a palindrome as your design.

If an edict is bestowed on you,

A better future life is sure to ensue.



第二十四出 功白

【六么令】

〔字文同萧上〕

〔字〕龙颜光现，
探龙珠怕醒龙眠。

〔萧〕五云高处共留连，
黄阁老，
紫微仙。

〔字〕万年枝上葫芦缠，
万年枝上葫芦缠。

〔萧〕老相公怎么说个葫芦缠？

〔字笑介〕脚不缠不小，官不缠不大哩。今日诸番侍子来朝，圣主御楼受贺，实乃满朝之庆也。



Scene Twenty-Four **Revealing the Truth**

(Enter Yuwen Rong with Xiao Song)

YUWEN RONG:

*(To the tune of *Liuyaoling*)*

As His Majesty is bright with wit,

I fear to wake the dragon when I get the pearl.

XIAO SONG:

We share the high positions

As prime ministers on earth

And immortals in the sky.

YUWEN RONG:

The gourd is bound onto the ancient branch;

The gourd is bound onto the ancient branch.

XIAO SONG:

Why do you mention the bound gourd?

YUWEN RONG:

As your feet cannot shrink without being bound, so your position cannot rise without being bound to someone. The Tubo envoys will come to have audience today and His Majesty is going to accept their greetings in the royal palace. It is an honour for all the ministers in the court.

新加坡
國家圖書館
PDG

〔萧〕恰好裴年兄以中书侍郎掌四夷馆事，前来引奏，必有可观。

【前腔】

〔裴上〕天朝馆伴，
尽华夷押入朝班。
雕题侍子汉衣冠，
同舞蹈，
拜金鸾，
长呼万岁天可汗，
长呼万岁天可汗。

〔裴〕二位平章老先生请了。今日侍子趋朝，君王受贺，旧规光禄寺排筵宴，织作坊赐文锦，俱已齐备，恭候驾临。

〔字〕众侍子礼当丹墀站立。

〔各侍子上〕古鲁古鲁，力喇力喇。近随汉使千堆宝，少答戎王万疋罗。

〔字〕分付诸番侍子，门外候驾。

〔各侍下〕

〔内响仗介〕

〔上引高力士众上〕





XIAO SONG:

Minister Pei is in charge of foreign affairs in the position of Vice Minister of the Central Office. When he comes to present the memorial, there must be something spectacular.

(Enter Pei Guangting)

PEI GUANGTING:

(To the previous tune)

In the guest house of the heavenly empire,
A number of Tubo envoys have arrived.
They follow our etiquettes
And bow in the imperial court,
Calling His Majesty the heavenly khan,
Calling His Majesty the heavenly khan.

How do you do, Your Excellencies. The Tubo envoys have come to the court to greet His Majesty. According to the time-honoured practice, a dinner is to be set in the Royal Banquet Hall and satins made in the Royal Weaving Mill are to be bestowed to them as gifts. Now that everything is ready, we'll wait for His Majesty to come.

YUWEN RONG:

The Tubo envoys should wait on the palace steps.

(Enter the Tubo envoys)

TUBO ENVOYS:

While envoys to Han bring a thousand piles of treasure,/ Ten thousand bolts of satin are gifts to the kings.

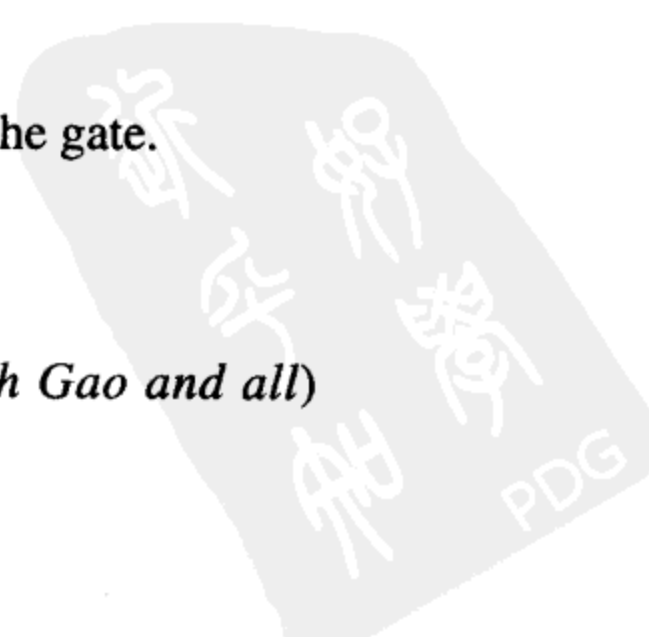
YUWEN RONG:

Tell the Tubo envoys to wait for His Majesty outside the gate.

(Exeunt the Tubo envoys)

(Sound of guards of honour within)

(Enter Emperor Xuanzong, followed by Eunuch Gao and all)



【夜行船】

日华高罩长明殿，
绕垂旒万里江山。
五国单于，
三韩侍子，
都俯伏在丹墀北面。

〔宇、萧见介〕

〔裴见介〕中书侍郎掌四夷馆事臣裴光庭谨奏我王：有吐蕃国侍子，领西番诸国侍子朝见。

〔高〕传旨：侍子丹墀下听旨。

〔裴呼万岁介〕

〔宇、萧、裴〕恭贺万岁，天威远播，臣等谨排御筵，奏上千秋万寿。

〔进酒介〕

【好事近】

花舞大唐年，
罄欢心太平重见。
喜一天铺满，
和风甘雨祥烟。



EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(To the tune of Yexingchuan)

While the sun shines over the Ever-Bright Palace,
The flags flutter all over the country.

The chiefs of five states

And envoys from three states

Lie prostrate in the palace hall.

(Yuwen Rong and Xiao Song pay tribute to Emperor Xuanzong)

PEI GUANGTING:

(Pays tribute to Emperor Xuanzong)

Vice Minister of the Central Office in charge of foreign affairs Pei Guangting presents a memorial to Your Majesty: The Tubo envoy brings envoys from different states to pay tribute to Your Majesty.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

TRANSMIT MY DECREE: Tell the envoys to listen to my decree outside the palace hall.

PEI GUANGTING:

Long live the Emperor.

YUWEN RONG, XIAO SONG AND PEI GUANGTING:

We congratulate Your Majesty on your widespread power. We have prepared a royal banquet for Your Majesty.

(Make a toast)

(To the tune of Haoshijin)

The flowers dance in the Tang Dynasty

To hail our times of peace.

We're glad to see that the sky is permeated

With mild breeze, sweet rain and benevolent smoke.



齐天福寿，
听海外，
讴歌来朝献。
御楼前细乐风传，
玉盏内金盘露偃。

〔内唱〕诸番侍子进酒。

〔侍子上〕古鲁古鲁，力喇力喇。吾乃吐蕃大将热龙莽之子，俺父亲当年战败，为卢元帅追剿，危急之际，白雁题书，求他拨转马头，放条归路。书云：莫教飞鸟尽，留取报恩环。今日远闻卢元帅到为咱父亲之故，负罪衔冤，父亲不忍，启奏番王，着咱充为侍子，领带各番侍子来朝。奏对之际，辩雪其冤。报恩之环，正在此矣。今当见驾，不得造次。

〔众古鲁介〕

〔俯伏呼万岁万岁万万岁，叩头起舞介〕

【千秋岁】

好尧天，
单照着唐朝殿，
十二柱金龙爪齐现。

Enjoying bliss and longevity,
You hear the chanting greetings
From abroad.

The gentle music is heard in front of the palace hall
And cups of tasty wine are placed on golden plates.

VOICE WITHIN:

The Tubo envoys are to make toasts.

(Enter the Tubo envoys)

TUBO ENVOY A:

Gulu gulu. Lile lile. I am son of the Tubo general Re Longmang. Years ago, my father was defeated and pursued by Marshal Lu. In face of imminent danger, he sent a letter by a wild goose, asking Marshal Lu to withdraw his troops and let him go. The letter says, "Do not kill all the birds; they will requite when they can." When Marshal Lu was held guilty for this, my father could not bear to hear about it and presented a memorial to the Tubo King, ordering me to be the envoy and bring envoys from all the western states to pay tribute to the Tang Dynasty. He told me to appeal for a redress of the injustice done on Marshal Lu when I have an audience with the emperor. It is the time to requite Marshal Lu's kindness. Now that I shall soon meet the Tang emperor, I'll be very prudent.

TUBO ENVOYS:

Gulu, gulu.

(Kowtow to Emperor Xuanzong)

Long live the Emperor.

(Kowtow again, rise to their feet and start to dance)

(To the tune of Qianqiusui)

Times of prosperity

Reign over the Tang palace alone,

With dragons climbing on the columns.



叠鼓声喧，
阑单单，
做一字儿寿星来献。
回回舞，
婆罗旋。
锦帽上，
花枝低颤。
舞袖班阑卷，
做狮蹲象跪，
俯伏阶前。

侍子们上天可汗万万岁一杯酒。

〔上〕劳你们国中远来，寡人何德致此？各言其故。

〔侍〕以前诸国，倚恃山川，自外王化。自经卢元帅西征，诸番震恐，方知萤火难同日光。敬遣小臣，瞻天朝贺。

〔上〕原来如此。岂非前节度使卢生乎？叫内侍，将钦赏花文锦匹，唱数分给了。赴四夷馆筵宴。



Amidst drumbeats,
A scroll of longevity
Is presented from the Tubo King.
The envoys dance,
Making whirls and swirls.
On our satin hats,
Twigs with flowers quiver.
Waving long sleeves,
We squat and kneel like lions and elephants,
Lying prostrate before the steps.

We envoys make a toast to the heavenly khan, wishing him a long, long life.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

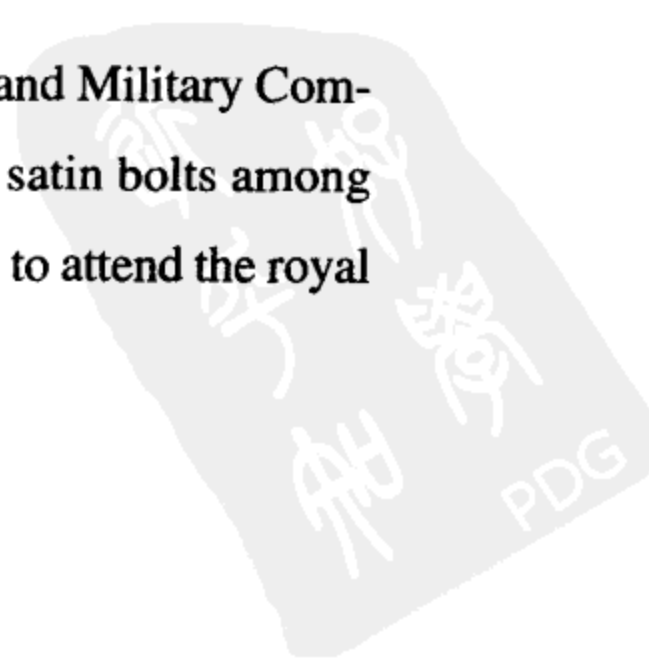
Thank you very much for your long journey from your states. What virtue do I have to receive your tribute? Please state your reasons.

TUBO ENVOY A:

The Tubo states used to count on the mountains and rivers to ignore the power of your empire. Since Marshal Lu made the western expedition, the Tubo states have been shocked and have come to understand that the fireflies cannot match the brilliance of the sun. Therefore, we are dispatched as envoys to pay respect to your heavenly dynasty.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Yes, I see. Did you mention the former Administrator and Military Commander Lu Sheng? Eunuchs, count and distribute the satin bolts among the Tubo envoys and bring them to the house for guests to attend the royal banquet.



〔高唱礼介〕侍子朝门外领赏，叩头。

〔侍子叩头呼万岁介〕自识天朝礼，方知将帅功。〔下〕

〔高数锦介〕侍子跪听颁锦：细法真红大百花四疋，绯红天马六疋，青紫飞鱼八疋，翠池狮子锦十疋，八答云雁锦二十疋，簇四金雕锦三十疋，大窠马打毯锦四十疋，天下乐锦五十疋，犒设红锦一百疋。启万岁爷：夷人官锦钦依散完。官锦之外，余下一端。

〔上〕取来寡人观之。〔看介〕原来织成几行字在上面。〔念介〕词寄菩萨蛮：“梅题远色春归得，迟乡瘴岭过愁客。孤影雁回斜，





EUNUCH GAO:

(Communicates the imperial edict)

Envoys, please accept your gifts in front of the palace gate. Down on your knees.

TUBO ENVOYS:

(Kowtow)

Long live the Emperor! *When we know the etiquettes of the heavenly empire,/ We know how the generals have made their achievements.*

(Exeunt)

EUNUCH GAO:

(Counts the bolts of satin)

Envoys, on your knees to accept the satins: four bolts of fine satin with the design of red flowers, six bolts of satin with the design of pink heavenly horses, eight bolts of satin with the design of purple flying fish, ten bolts of satin with the design of green lakes and lions, twenty bolts of satin with the design of wild geese, thirty bolts of satin with the design of gilded vultures, forty bolts of satin with the design of ballgames on horseback, fifty bolts of satin with the design of universal happiness, and one hundred bolts of red satin for reward. Your Majesty, the royal satins have been distributed among the Tubo envoys. Aside from the royal satins, there is another bolt.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Present it for my inspection.

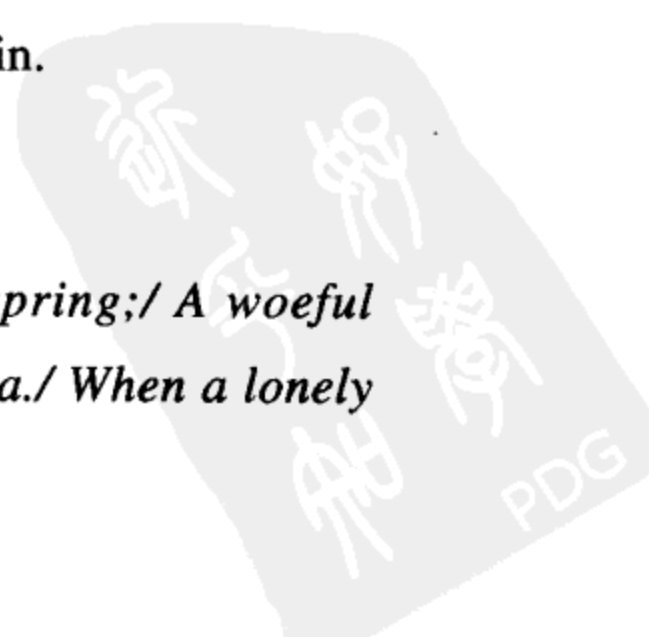
(Looks at the satin)

Oh, there are a few lines of words woven into the satin.

(Reads)

(To the tune of Pusaman):

"A far-off scene of plum-blossoms predicts spring;/ A woeful traveler passes through remote country with miasma./ When a lonely



峰寒逼翠纱。窗残抛锦室，织急还催织。锦官当夕情，啼断望河明。”“还生赦泣人天望，双成锦匹孤鸾怅。独泣见谁怜，流人苦瘴烟？生亲还弃杼，鸳配关河戍。远心天未知，人道赦来时。”

〔裴跪介〕臣览此词，可以回文读之：〔念介〕“明河望断啼情夕，当官锦织还催急。织室锦抛残，窗纱逼翠寒。峰斜回雁影，孤客愁过岭。瘴乡迟得归，春色远题梅。”“时来赦道人知未？天心远戍河关配。鸳杼弃远亲，生烟瘴苦人。流怜谁见泣？独怅鸾孤匹。锦成双望天，人泣赦生还。”

〔上〕奇哉，奇哉。看锦尾必有名姓。是了，外织作坊机户臣妾清河崔氏造进。呀，清河崔氏，何人也？



*wild goose flies homeward,/ The cold peaks cast their shadows on
the green window-sash./ When the sun sets behind the weaving room,/*
I weave and weave under pressure./ A weaver weeps for her man at
dusk,/ Shedding tears until daybreak."/ "I look to heaven for am-
nesty,/ A lonely weaver with two bolts of satin./ Who will show pity on
me,/ With my man on exile in the swamps?/ Separated alive,/ I have
my man in the remote land./ The heaven far away does not know my
heart,/ That expects the day of pardon."

PEI GUANGTING:

(On his knees)

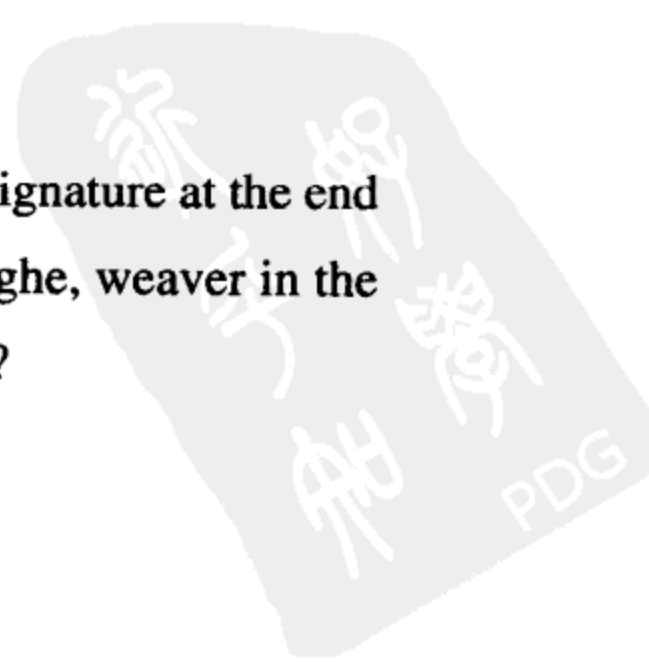
As far as I can see, this poem can be read backwards:

(Reads)

*"I weep at dusk when I look at the bright river/ While I weave
and weave under pressure./ I leave my satin in the weaving room,/*
*With my window-sash permeated with cold./ When the wild goose
casts its shadow on the hill,/ A woeful traveler is climbing a peak./*
*He is detained in the land of miasma,/ The spring scene is dotted with
plum-blossoms."/ "Do you know when my man will be pardoned?/*
*He is now on exile in the far-away land./ He is dear to me even
though we are separated,/ A man who suffers in the swamps./ Who*
has wept for a man on exile?/ I stay alone in front of the satin I
weave./ When I look up at the sky when the satin is done,/ I weep for
the pardon of my man."

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

How extraordinary! Extraordinary! There must be a signature at the end
of the bolt. Yes, here it is. Made by Miss Cui of Qinghe, weaver in the
Royal Weaving Mill. Well, Miss Cui, who is Miss Cui?



〔裴〕前征西节度使卢生之妻。

〔上〕呀，原来卢生家口，入官为奴。伤哉此情，可以赦之。

〔宇〕启上我王：卢生通番卖国，罪不容诛。

〔上〕萧卿以为何如？

〔萧〕听此侍子之言，卢生乃功臣也。

〔宇文恼介〕呀，萧嵩为臣，反复不忠，万岁可并诛之。

〔上〕他如何反复不忠？

〔宇〕论卢生本头，有萧嵩名字。

〔萧〕臣并无押花。

〔宇〕臣袖有原本在此，呈上。

〔高接本〕



PEI GUANGTING:

She is the wife of Lu Sheng, the former Administrator and Military Commander to Quench the West.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Oh, she is Lu Sheng's wife, serving as a slave in the Weaving Mill. As she is in such deep remorse, Lu Sheng is to be pardoned.

YUWEN RONG:

Your Majesty, Lu Sheng had illicit relations with Tubo and was guilty of high treason. He is not to be pardoned for his crimes.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

What's your opinion, Xiao Song?

XIAO SONG:

According to what the Tubo envoy has said, Lu Sheng is a meritorious minister.

YUWEN RONG:

(Annoyed)

Oops, Xiao Song is contradictive in his words and thus shows his disloyalty. Your Majesty, he is to be executed as well.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Why do you say that he is contradictive in his words and thus shows his disloyalty?

YUWEN RONG:

The memorial to impeach Lu Sheng has Xiao Song's signature on it.

XIAO SONG:

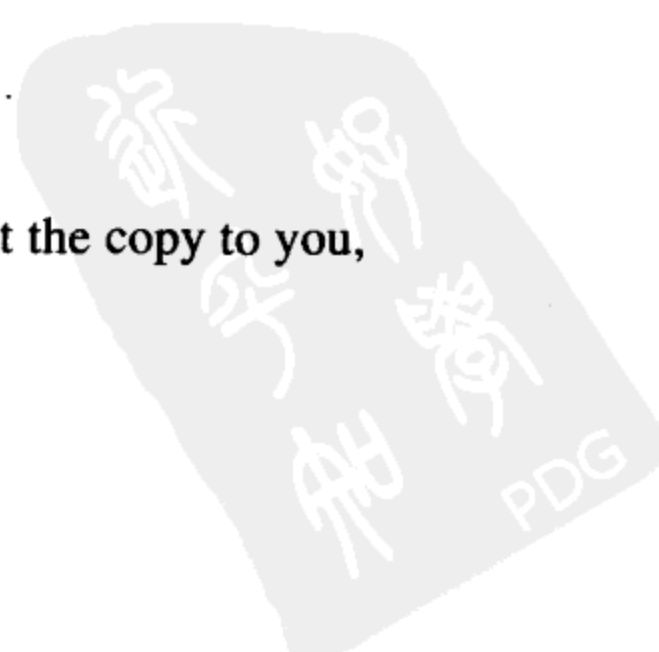
I have not signed.

YUWEN RONG:

Here is the original copy of the memorial. I'll present the copy to you,

Your Majesty.

(Eunuch Gao accepts the copy)



〔上览介〕平章军国大事臣宇文融，同平章事门下侍郎臣萧嵩谨奏。呀，是有萧嵩之名。再看奏尾，呀，萧卿押有花字，何得推无？

〔萧〕此非臣之真正花押。

〔上〕怎生是真正花押？

〔萧〕臣嵩表字一忠，平日奏事，花押草作“一忠”二字。及构陷卢生事情，宇文融预先造下连名奏本，协同臣进。臣出无奈，押此一花，暗于“一”字之下“忠”字之上，加了两点，是个“不忠”二字。见得宇文此奏，大为不忠，非臣本意。

〔宇〕万岁，看此人卖友欺君，当得何罪？

〔上怒介〕呀，宇文融与卢生同时将相，掩蔽其功，谮以大逆，欺君卖友，非融而谁？高力士，与我拿下！

〔高绑宇介〕



EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Reads)

“Right Prime Minister Yuwen Rong and Left Prime Minister Xiao Song are to present an impeachment...” Yes, Xiao Song’s name is on the memorial. I’ll have a look at the end of the memorial. Well, here is Xiao Song’s signature. How can you say that you haven’t signed?

XIAO SONG:

It’s not my genuine signature.

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

What is your genuine signature then?

XIAO SONG:

My name is Xiao Song, alias Yizhong, which means faithful. I used to present my memorial to Your Majesty with the signature of “Faithful”. However, in this case of framing Lu Sheng, Yuwen Rong prefabricated a memorial for me to present with him. I was compelled to make a signature, but added an “un” before “Faithful” to make it “Unfaithful”. As Yuwen Rong’s memorial revealed his disloyalty, I did not make the signature out of my free will.

YUWEN RONG:

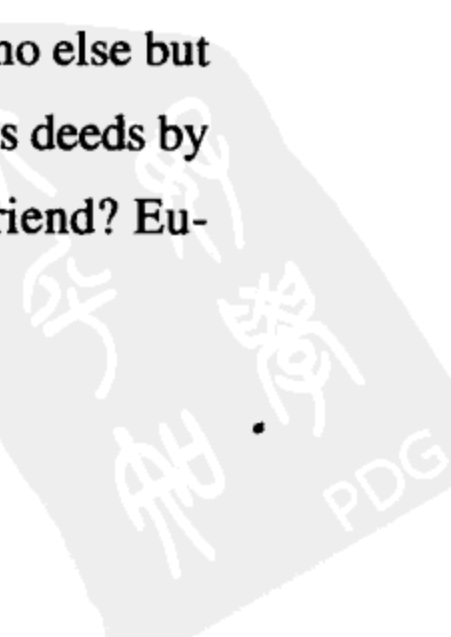
Your Majesty, Xiao Song has cheated the emperor and betrayed his friend. What crime is he guilty of?

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

(Irritated)

Yuwen Rong was a minister of the same rank as Lu Sheng. Who else but Yuwen Rong would like to overshadow Lu Sheng’s meritorious deeds by framing a false charge to cheat the emperor and betray his friend? Eunuch Gao, hold him under custody!

(Eunuch Gao binds Yuwen Rong)



〔宇〕哎哟，这难题目轮到我做了。到头终有报，来早与来迟。

〔下〕

〔上〕萧、裴二卿传旨：差官星夜钦取卢生还朝，拜为当朝首相；妻崔氏即时放出，复其一品夫人，仍赐官锦霞帔一袭；诸子门荫如故。〔叹介〕寡人若非吐蕃诸侍子之言啊？

【尾声】

十大功臣不雪的冤，

且和俺疏放他满门良贱。

〔众〕这是主圣臣忠道两全。

盆下无由见太阳，

南冠君子窜遐荒。

忽然汉诏还冠冕，

计日应随鸳鹭行。





YUWEN RONG:

Alas, this time misfortune falls on me. *Retribution comes in the end,/
Whether it's sooner or later.*

(Exit)

EMPEROR XUANZONG:

Xiao Song and Pei Guanting, deliver my decree: Lu Sheng is to be fetched back at once and nominated as Prime Minister. His wife Miss Cui is to be released at once, to resume her title as First-Rank Lady and be bestowed a cloak of royal satin. His sons are to be restored to their former positions.

(Sighs)

But for the words of the Tubo envoys, I

(To the tune of Coda)

Have wronged a meritorious minister.

His whole family is to be rehabilitated.

ALL:

Your Majesty and your ministers are all virtuous.

Unable to see the sun and wronged to the most,

A prisoner is sent on exile in a far-off land.

When he is restored to his former post,

He will serve the emperor and hold command.



第二十五出 召还

【赵皮鞋】

〔丑司户官上〕出身原在国儿监，
趁食求官口带馋。
蛇羹蚌酱饱腌臢，
海外的官箴过得碱。

小子崖州司户，真当海外天子。长梦做个高官，忽然半夜起水。好笑，好笑，一个司户官儿，怎能巴到尚书阁老地位？不想天吊下一个卢尚书来此安置，长说他与朝廷相知，还有钦取之日，小子因此再也不难为他。谁想上头没有他的路？昨日接了当朝宇文丞相密旨，说他最恨的是卢尚书，叫我结果了他的性命，许我钦取还朝，不次重用。思想起来，八品官做下这场方便事，讨了钦取，有甚不好？今早缺官署印，卢生可来参见也。

Scene Twenty-Five **Amnesty**

(Enter County Official)

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

(To the tune of Zhaopixie)

A former student in the imperial academy,
I am eager to pursue my official career.
Everyday I wine and dine,
For a remote official, his life is fine.

I am a County Official in Yazhou, A genuine king in a remote land. In dreams of being in a high position, I rise at midnight to piss on the sand. Funny, funny indeed. How can a County Official climb to the position of a minister? It happens that a Minister Lu has come to settle down here. It is said that he has connections in the court and may be rehabilitated someday. Therefore, I have not pressed him too much. Who knows whether he has connections in court or not? Yesterday I received a secret letter from Prime Minister Yuwen, saying that he hates Minister Lu the most and asking me to finish off his life. If I do as he tells me, he promises to summon me to the capital and to promote me. Well, if an eighth-rank official can do such an easy job and move to the capital, what is there to be blamed? As my superior is not in office this morning, Lu Sheng will come to pay respects to me.



【步蟾宫】

〔生上〕吃尽了南州青橄榄，
似忠臣苦带余甘。
三年憔悴甚江潭，
有百十倍的带围清减。

俺卢生，有罪流配此州。州无正官，便是司户官儿署掌，也不免过去见他。〔见介〕司户先生拜揖，请了。

〔丑恼介〕呀，你是何人？

〔生〕长在此相见的卢生。

〔丑〕你不说是卢生罢，卢生流配之人，目今掌印，便是你收管衙门，不应得你叩头站立伺候？叫我一声司户，就请了去。好打，好打。

〔生〕谁敢？

〔丑〕便叫牢子打哩。

〔众拖生打介〕

〔生〕有何罪过啊？



(Enter Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Buchangong)

I have eaten enough southern olives
With a bitter-sweet taste.

I have become skinny in these three years,
Much skinnier than I can imagine.

I am Lu Sheng, on exile here in Yazhou. As the County Magistrate is not
in office and the County Official is in charge, I have to go and see him.

(Greets County Official)

My respects to you, Sir.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

(Annoyed)

Well, who are you?

LU SHENG:

I am Lu Sheng, whom you often meet here.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

It's all right if you don't mention the name of Lu Sheng. Lu Sheng is a
man on exile. As I am in charge of this office to supervise you, shouldn't
you kowtow and stand aside to wait on me? As you just greet me with
"Sir", you're asking for a sound beating! You're asking for a sound
beating!

LU SHENG:

Who dares!

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

The attendants will beat you.

(The attendants drag Lu Sheng and beat him)

LU SHENG:

What am I to blame?





〔丑〕还不知罪！

【红衲袄】

打你个老头皮不向我门下参，
打你个硬骹儿不向我庭下跼。
打你个蠢流民尽着喽，
打你个暗通番该万斩。

〔生〕宇文融可恨，可恨。

〔丑〕宇文相公甚么样好人，你也骂他，
打你个骂当朝一古子的谈。

〔生〕不要哩，朝廷有用我之时。

〔丑〕打你个仗当今一块子的胆。

〔生笑介〕

〔丑〕打的你皮开肉绽还气严严也。
打了啊，
还待火烙你头皮铁寸嵌。

【前腔】

〔生〕我分的大朝家辩谄讪，
怎到你小官司行对勘？
则道住的是狗排栏身自耽，
谁想过了鬼门关刑较惨？
罢了，罢了，既在矮檐下，怎敢不低头？





COUNTY OFFICIAL:

Don't you know?

(To the tune of Hongna'ao)

I beat you because you do not greet me properly,
Because you do not stand in the office,
Because you talk all the nonsense,
Because you deserve ten thousand deaths for treason.

LU SHENG:

Yuwen Rong is hateful! Detestable!

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

Are you scolding such a good man as Prime Minister Yuwen?

I'll beat you because you scold a Prime Minister.

LU SHENG:

Don't worry. I'll return and serve in the court sometime.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

I'll beat you because you are so audacious.

(Lu Sheng laughs)

I'll beat you till you are bruised and lacerated;

After the sound beating,

I'll burn your head with hot iron.

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

I'll plead innocence in the higher court,

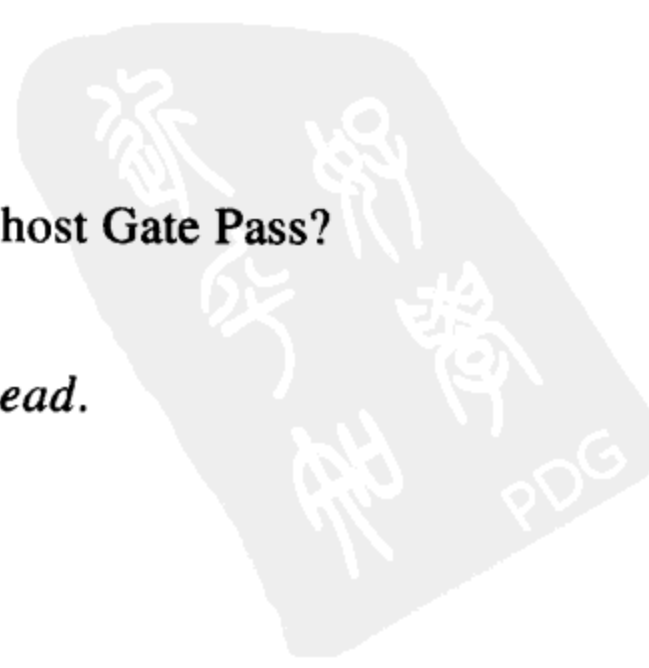
But not defend myself in your small office.

Now that I live within a dog fence,

How can I expect to suffer tortures across the Ghost Gate Pass?

Well, let it be.

Standing under eaves, / I cannot but bow my head.



扑着口三千段朝家事一谜的絨，
抢着头十二分你本官前再不敢。
你打的我血淋侵达喇的痛龕龕也，
怎再领得起你那十指钻钳泼火燂？

〔铁铃生头，火烙生足介〕

〔使臣带将官捧朝服上〕

【缕缕金】

将雨露，
洒烟岚。
皇宣催请急，
旧新参。
一点三台路，
海风吹暗。
堂堂天使此停骖，
过来的鬼门站。

〔内上报介〕天使到来，钦取宰相回朝。

〔丑惊喜介〕我的宇文老爷，小官还不曾替你干的事，就蒙你钦取我拜相回朝。领戴，领戴。且把老头儿监候。

〔作接使臣不跪〕





I keep silent as to whatever happened in court;
When I resume my position, you will never dare.
As I feel such great pain after the beating,
How can I bear the scorching iron?

(Lu Sheng is scorched on the head and feet)

(Enter Imperial Messenger, followed by attendants carrying a court costume)

IMPERIAL MESSENGER:

(To the tune of Lülüjin)

The gentle rain falls
From the misty sky.
The imperial decree is urgent
To call back the former minister.
The road to high position
Was darkened by the sea wind.
The Imperial Messenger stops here
When he crosses the Ghost Gate Pass.

(Enter an attendant)

ATTENDANT:

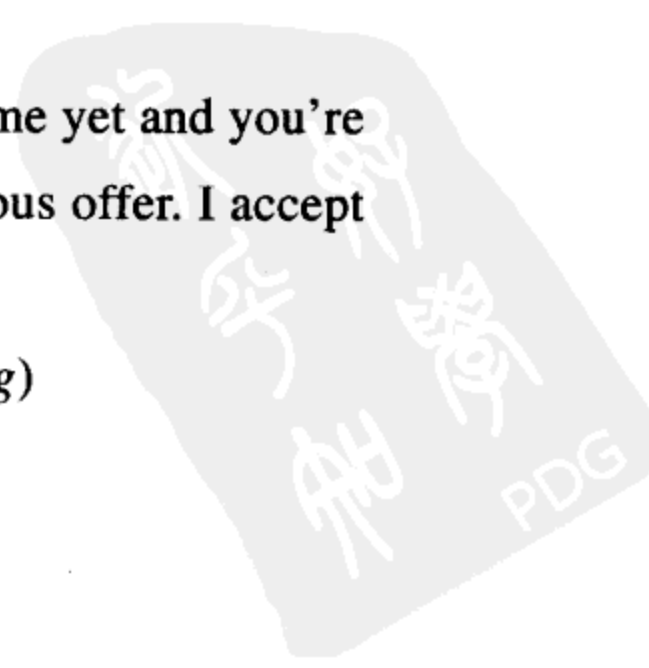
The Imperial Messenger has arrived to bring the Prime Minister to the capital.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

(Overjoyed)

Oh Master Yuwen, I haven't done what you've told me yet and you're going to bring me to the capital. I accept your gracious offer. I accept your gracious offer. Take the old man to prison.

(Greets Imperial Messenger without kowtowing)





〔使问介〕是甚么官儿，不跪？

〔丑〕天使来取司户回朝拜相，体面不跪。

〔使〕咄！快起去，卢老爷那里？

〔丑慌取生出介〕

〔使〕卢老先生憔悴至此！有钦赐朝服。

〔生更衣〕

〔户慌介〕

〔使读诏介〕皇帝诏曰：咨尔前征西节度使兵部尚书卢生，以朕一时不明，陷汝三年边瘴。宇文融今已伏诛，赐汝定西侯爵邑如故。钦取还朝，尊为上相，兼掌兵权。马头所到，先斩后奏。钦哉！谢恩。

〔使见介〕敢问老先生到此多年了！





IMPERIAL MESSENGER:

(Asks County Official)

What rank of official are you that you do not fall on your knees?

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

The Imperial Messenger is to bring me to the capital and to be nominated as the Prime Minister. I am too dignified to kowtow.

IMPERIAL MESSENGER:

Ugh, step aside! Where is Master Lu?

(County Official hurries to bring Lu Sheng)

IMPERIAL MESSENGER:

Oh, Master Lu, you look so wan and tired! Here's your court costume bestowed by His Majesty.

(Lu Sheng changes into the court costume)

(County Official is thrown into a panic)

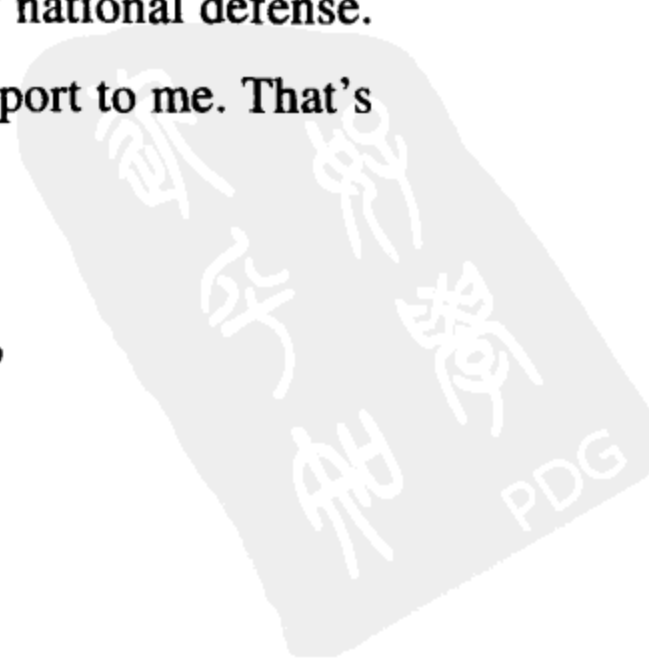
IMPERIAL MESSENGER:

(Reads the imperial edict)

Here is the imperial edict: The former Administrator and Military Commander to Quench the West and Defense Minister Lu Sheng, you have got in the mire for three years because I was bemuddled for a moment. Now that Yuwen Rong has been put to death, you will resume your title as Marquis of Conquering the West. When you return to the capital, you will be appointed Prime Minister and take charge of national defense. Wherever you go, you can kill anyone before you report to me. That's my edict.

(Greets Lu Sheng)

May I venture to ask how long you have stayed here?



【红芍药】

〔生〕有三年不到朝参，
云阳市别了妻男。
侥幸煞天恩免囚鞫，
日南珠满泪盘沾糝，
受尽热和咸，
才记起风清河淡。

〔合〕喜重归相府潭潭，
有的这青天湛湛。

〔丑自绑上〕

〔请罪介〕那里知朝廷真有用他之时？宇文公，宇文公，弄得我没上没下的，只得前去请死。〔见介〕司户小人，有眼不识泰山，绑缚阶前，合当万死。

〔生笑介〕起来，此亦世情之常耳。

【红衫儿】

是则是世间人，
都扯淡。
有的闲窥瞰，
也着些儿肚子包含。
都不计较你了。
自羞惭，
把你那絮叨叨口业都除忦。



LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Hongshaoyao)

I've been away from the court for three years
Since I left my wife and sons on the execution ground.
I was fortunate to be pardoned;
I've shed floods of tears in the south
Amid heat and salt
Before calm climate comes back to me.

ALL:

It's good news that Lu Sheng has resumed his position,
Thanks to the grace of His Majesty.

(Enter County Official, bound by himself)

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

(Admits his mistake and asks for punishment)

Who knows that he has indeed been rehabilitated. Yuwen Rong, Yuwen Rong, you have put me in the mire and I have to ask for a death sentence.

(Greets Lu Sheng)

I am a small man and did not recognize Your Excellency. I've bound myself to ask for a death penalty.

LU SHENG:

(Laughs)

Rise to your feet. You've just followed the way of the world.

(To the tune of Hongshan'er)

Men of the world
Have acted in a blind way.
For people who have done wrong,
I have to let go.
I won't hold any grudge against you.
If you feel ashamed,
You should repent for your vicious tongue.



〔丑〕老爷纵饶狗命，狗心不稳，颠倒号令施行了罢。

〔生笑介〕疑惑我后来么？

大人家说过了无欺蘸，
头直上青天监。

〔丑叩头介〕天大肚子的老爷，千岁千千岁！

〔生〕君命召，就此起行了。

〔黑鬼三人上〕黑鬼们来送老爷。

〔生〕劳苦你三年了。

【会河阳】

地折底走过，

琼、崖、万、儋。

谢你鬼门关口来相探。

〔丑〕地方要起老爷生祠，千年万载。

〔生〕要立生祠，立在他狗排栏之上，

生受，

他留我住站。



COUNTY OFFICIAL:

Even if you spare my life now, I won't rest at ease. You'd better finish me off at this very moment.

LU SHENG:

(Laughs)

Are you afraid of my future retaliation?

A great man never goes back on his word;

I swear by the azure heaven above.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

You are indeed broadminded, Your Excellency. I wish you a long life!

LU SHENG:

In answer to the imperial edict, I have to be on my way now.

(Enter three woodmen)

WOODMEN:

We Black Ghosts are here to see you off, Your Excellency.

LU SHENG:

Thank you for taking care of me in these three years.

(To the tune of Huiheyang)

I went all the way through

Qiongzhou, Yazhou, Wanzhou and Zhanzhou.

I thank you for meeting me at the Ghost Gate Pass.

COUNTY OFFICIAL:

A living temple is to be set up in your honour, so that you will be remembered for thousands of years.

LU SHENG:

The living temple is to be set up above their dog fences.

I'll accept homage

In the place where I stayed.



我魂梦游海南，
把名字他碣房嵌。
司户，
我去后好看觑黑鬼，
要他黑爷儿，
稳着那樵歌担；
蛋夫妻，
稳着那鱼船缆。
我去也。〔行介〕

【红绣鞋】

皇宣一纸鸾絨，
鸾絨。
车尘马足趁趲，
趁趲。
笑奸贪，
枉愚滥。
把时情憾，
皇恩感。
乌头蘸，
旧朝簪，
旧朝簪。

【尾声】

谗痕妒迹无沾嵌，
向凤凰池洗净征衫。
今后啊，
海外山川长则是画屏风边际览。





In a dream I've traveled to the South Sea
And embedded my name in the blockhouse.

County Official, take good care of these Black Ghosts when I am gone,
so that

These black uncles
Enjoy their life as woodmen;
And men and their wives
Live well in their fishing boats.

I'm leaving now.

(Walks on)

(To the tune of Hongxiuxie)

The imperial edict brings me to the capital,
To the capital.

The horse hooves kick up dust,
Kick up dust.

The vicious minister
Has eaten the bitter fruit.

I owe my gratitude
To the imperial grace.

On my black head is stuck
The former court hairpin,
The former court hairpin.

(To the tune of Coda)

Now that I've cleaned off stains of slander
I'll wash my warrior-coats in the palace lake.

From now on,

The far-away hills and rills
Will serve as scenes on paintings.



海外流人去，
朝中宰相归。
举头红日近，
回首白云低。



**On exile I went in plight;
As the Prime Minister I come back.
I look up and see the capital coming into sight
And white clouds hanging over my track.**



第二十六出 杂庆

【大趯鼓】

〔工部大使上〕

小官工作场，

功臣甲第，

盖造牌坊。

鲁班墨线千年样，

高阁楼台金玉装。

〔合〕赏犒无边愿他官高寿长。

自家工部营缮所一个大使，奉旨盖造卢老爷大功臣坊、敕书阁、宝翰楼、醉锦堂、翠华台、湖山、海子，约二十八所。各工奏完，卢府赏银三千锭，花酒不计其数，好气概也。





Scene Twenty-Six **Celebrations**

(Enter Chief Commissioner of the Ministry of Works)

CHIEF COMMISSIONER:

(To the tune of Dayagu)

I serve in the Ministry of Works

To build houses for meritorious ministers

And erect memorial archways.

While Carpenter Lu Ban's rules never change,

High mansions are decorated with gold and jade.

ALL:

We've received numerous rewards from him

And thus wish him high positions and a long life.

CHIEF COMMISSIONER:

I am Chief Commissioner of the Ministry of Works. By the imperial edict

I have erected a memorial archway for the great meritorious Minister Lu,

plus about twenty-eight mansions such as Royal Studio, Treasure Man-

sion, Drinking Hall, Jade Terrace and a garden of rockery and lakes. The

Lu family has given me three thousand pieces of silver and plentiful wine.

How generous he is!

Handan Dream
Scene Twenty-Six
PDG

【前腔】

〔厩马大使上〕小官群牧坊，
功臣赐马，
夜白飞黄。
方圆肥瘦都停当，
稳称他一路鸣珂裊袖香。

〔合前〕

学生飞龙厩一个管马大使，万岁爷御楼上见卢府各位公子，朝马肥瘦不一，诏赐内厩马三十匹，送到卢府乘坐。蒙卢府赏我大使官一秤马蹄金，押马的九十余人，各赏金钱一百贯，好不兴也。

【前腔】

〔户部大使上〕小官册籍廊，
为功臣田土，
诏拨皇庄。
山田水碓何为广？
更有金谷名园胜洛阳。

〔合前〕

小子户部黄册库大使，奉旨赏送钦赐田园数目：田三万顷，园林





(Enter Chief Commissioner of the Horse Stable)

CHIEF COMMISSIONER:

(To the previous tune)

I serve in the Horse Stable
To reward meritorious ministers with steeds,
Both white and yellow.
Well-shaped,
The steeds will gallop safe and sound.

ALL:

We've received numerous rewards from him
And thus wish him high positions and a long life.

I am Chief Commissioner of the Flying-Dragon Stable. When His Majesty gave audience to Minister Lu's sons, he saw from the palace that their horses were of different sizes and shapes. He decreed that thirty horses from the Royal Stable be brought to Minister Lu's residence. The Lu's family has given me a piece of gold and given the ninety-odd horse-keepers a hundred strings of coins each. How munificent he is!

(Enter Chief Commissioner of the Ministry of Revenue)

CHIEF COMMISSIONER:

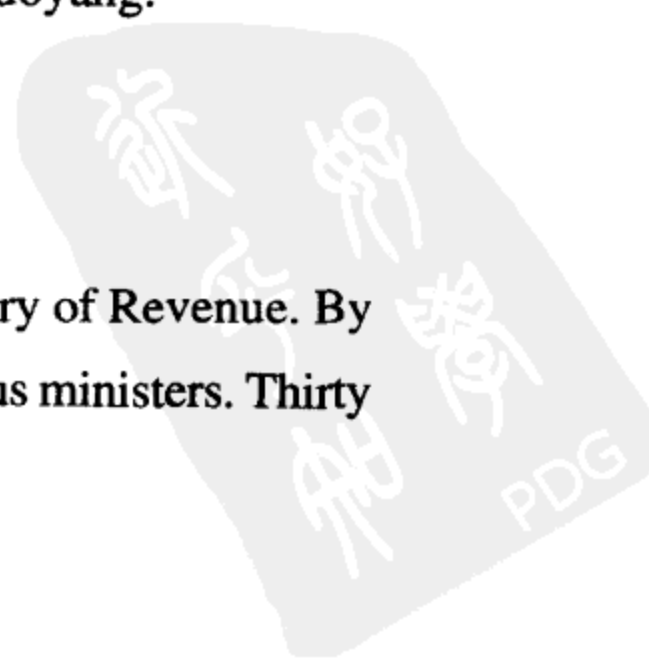
(To the previous tune)

I serve in the Ministry of Revenue
To allot fields to meritorious ministers
And establish farms.
How expansive can the farms be?
The well-known farms are better than those in Luoyang.

ALL:

We've received numerous rewards from him
And thus wish him high positions and a long life.

I am in charge of the Registration Office in the Ministry of Revenue. By the imperial edict I allot fields and gardens to meritorious ministers. Thirty



二十一所，送到卢府。蒙赏契尾钱一万缗，好利市也。

【前腔】

〔乐官绿衣花帽上〕小官内教坊，
要功臣行乐，
赐兴糟糠。

〔内〕连龟婆都去了。

〔乐〕偷卖了一个粉头，老婆替哩。

吹弹歌舞都停当，
只怕夫人是个吃醋王。

〔合前〕

贱子是新袭职的龟官儿，万岁爷赐功臣女乐，钦拔仙音院二十四名，以按二十四气。蒙礼部裴老爷差委，送去卢府。女妓都留着用，赏贱子研光插花帽一顶，百花衣一件，金钱一千贯，好不兴也。



thousand hectares of land and twenty-one gardens are allotted to Minister Lu. I have been given ten thousand coins for the contract. How charitable he is!

(Enter chief of Musicians, wearing a green coat and a flowery hat)

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

I serve in the Troupe of Court Music
To entertain meritorious ministers
And provide concubines.

VOICE WITHIN:

Even the bawd went to Minister Lu's residence.

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

I've sold a female singer by stealth and my wife went there instead.

I've prepared music, song and dance;
The only thing is that his wife might interfere.

ALL:

We've received numerous rewards from him
And thus wish him high positions and a long life.

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

I am the newly-appointed Chief of the Troupe of Court Music. His Majesty has bestowed female singers and dancers to the meritorious minister, twenty-four of them from the School of Fairy Music, in accordance with the twenty-four solar periods. At the order of Minister Pei of the Ministry of Rites, they have been brought to Minister Lu's residence. I have been given a flowery hat, a colourful coat, a thousand strings of coins. How munificent he is!

〔唱合前〕

〔与前三官见介〕

〔乐〕三位老先唱偈。

〔众恼介〕反了，反了，臭龟官敢来唱偈。

〔乐〕你官多大？

〔众〕更不大，也是一考三年，三考九年，朝廷正气大选，六品行头，出去为民之父母。你何等样？开口唱偈。〔打介〕也罢，不要打他，瞧他家小娘儿去。

〔乐〕老先，老先，我家小娘，连娘都牵在卢府去了。

〔众〕这等，权把你当小娘，唱个小曲儿。唱的好，罢。不然，呈告礼部堂上，打碎你的壳。

〔乐〕也罢，便做小娘，唱个银纽丝儿：

〔唱介〕爱的是奴家一貌也花，亲亲姊妹送卢家，好奢华。独自转回衙，风吹了绿帽纱，斜簪一朵花，小攒金袖软靴儿乍。撞着嘴唇

ALL:

We've received numerous rewards from him
And thus wish him high positions and a long life.

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

(Greets the Chief Commissioners)

My respects, worthy chiefs.

THREE CHIEF COMMISSIONERS:

(Annoyed)

Ridiculous! Ridiculous! The bawd of a chief musician is greeting us!

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

How high is your rank of offices?

THREE CHIEF COMMISSIONERS:

Our rank of offices is not high, but we have all passed imperial examinations, once in three years and thrice in nine years. We are of the sixth rank, serving as magistrates for the common folk. What kind of person are you, just greeting us like this?

(Beat Chief of Musicians)

Well, let him go and watch his girls.

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

Your Excellencies, Your Excellencies, not only my girls but also my wife has been brought to Minister Lu's residence.

THREE CHIEF COMMISSIONERS:

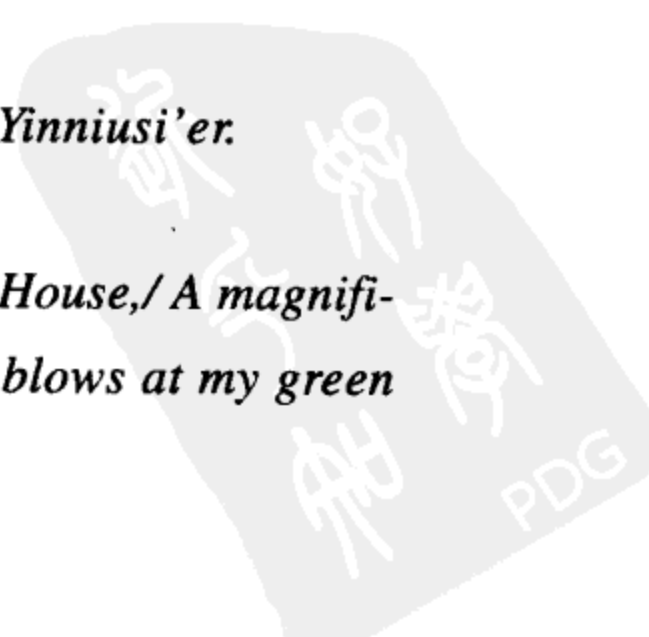
In this case, we just take you as a girl and you'll sing us a song. If you sing well, we'll let you go. If not, we'll report to the Ministry of Rites and have your head broken.

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

Well, I'll act as a girl and sing a song by the title of *Yinniuser*.

(Sings)

So pretty am I/ That I bring my sisters to Lu's House,/ A magnificent house./ I return home alone,/ When the wind blows at my green



皮疙癩，臭冤家，把咱背克喇，钻通斗不着也他。我的外郎夫啊，喇
龟儿我龟儿喇。

[众] 唱的好，再唱，再唱。

[乐] 罢了。

[众译]

[内响道介]

[众] 太老爷下朝房了，走，走，走。正是：

人逢开口笑，
花插满头归。





kerchief,/ Revealing my nosegay,/ My sleeves and my little shoes./ He puffs up his lips,/ Oh devil,/ And kisses me on my back,/ Leaving me powerless in his hands./ Oh my dear lover,/ I'm willing to play with you.

THREE CHIEF COMMISSIONERS:

Wonderful! Encore! Encore!

CHIEF OF MUSICIANS:

That'll do.

(The Chief Commissioners make jokes)

(Sound of hailing the way within)

ALL:

His Excellency has left the royal court. Let's go, let's go, let's go! It is true indeed:

A man smiles when he's in a good mood;

He returns with flowers on his hood.



第二十七出 极欲

【感皇恩】

〔旦引贴上〕依旧老平章，
平沙堤上，
宴罢千官拥门望。
归来袍袖，
长是御炉烟扬。
皇恩深几许？
如天广。

〔贴〕御宿田园，
御书楼榜，
御乐仙音整排当。

〔旦〕满床簪笏，
尽是绮罗生长。
年光休去也，
留清赏。

【集句】遥见飞尘入建章，红英扑地满筵香。谁知不向边城苦？
为报先开白玉堂。





Scene Twenty-Seven **Extreme Luxuries**

(Enter Miss Cui, followed by Meixiang)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Ganhuang'en)

As Prime Minister again,
He returns from a banquet on the bank
While men vie to have a look at him.
On his robe sleeves,
There remains the imperial grace.
How deep is the imperial grace?
As deep as the immense sky.

MEIXIANG:

In the royal garden,
Beside the royal study,
The royal music is ready.

MISS CUI:

Blessed by my man, my sons grew up in luxury.
And now all serve in the court.
Time, please stay with us,
So that we can enjoy.

(In the pattern of Collected Poems)

*When dust floats into the palace hall,/ The scattering flowers
bring sweet scents./ Who is not aware of hardships along the bor-
ders?/ The mansion is what His Majesty presents.*



相公自岭海归来，二十年当朝首相，今日进封赵国公，食邑九千户，官加上柱国太师。先荫儿男一齐升改：长子傅，翰林侍读学士；次子侗，吏部考功郎；三子俭，殿中侍御史；四子位，黄门给事中。这梅香伏侍相公，也养下一子，叫做卢倚，因他年小，挂选尚宝司丞。孙子十余人，都着送监读书。恩荣至矣。几日前父子侍宴御楼之上，万岁爷凭阑，望见我家朝马肥瘦不齐，即便选赐御马三十匹。宴罢之际，闻得老相公家中少用女乐，即便分拨仙音院女乐二十四名，以应二十四气。又赐田园楼馆，形胜非常。此时相公出朝，我教排设家宴，想俱整齐。相公早到。

〔众拥生上〕向晓入金门，侍宴龙楼下。身惹御炉烟，归来明月夜。



Since his return from the south, my man has been Prime Minister for twenty years. And now he is entitled Duke of Zhao with nine thousand tenant households and is promoted to the position of First-Rank Instructor. All our sons have been promoted as well: Our eldest son Zun becomes Scholar of the Royal Academy, our second son Ti becomes Assessing Secretary in the Ministry of Personnel, our third son Jian becomes Commander of Royal Guards, our fourth son Wei becomes Palace Announcer. As a concubine to my man, Meixiang also gave birth to a son by the name of Lu Yi. He has been nominated Assistant to the Seals Department because he is still young. Over a dozen of our grandsons are all attending the Imperial Academy. We have enjoyed extreme honour and distinction. A few days ago, when my man and sons attended a royal banquet, His Majesty saw from above that our horses were of different sizes and shapes. He decreed that thirty horses be selected from the Royal Stable and brought to our house. When the banquet was over, His Majesty heard that there were no female singers and dancers in our house, and so decreed that twenty-four be brought to our house from the School of Fairy Music, in accordance with the twenty-four solar periods. His Majesty also bestowed us land, gardens, mansions and houses, all of grand size. Now that it's time for my man to leave the palace, I've had a family dinner arranged. I suppose that the dinner is ready by now. My man is coming.

(Enter Lu Sheng, followed by his attendants)

LU SHENG:

*I entered the palace at dawn/ And had dinner at court site./
Soaked with imperial grace,/ I return late at night.*



我卢生，出将入相，五十余年。今进封赵国公，食邑九千户，四子尽升华要。礼绝百寮之上，盛在一门之中。侍宴方阑，下朝归府。不免缓步而行。

【北中吕·粉蝶儿】

锦绣全唐，
真乃是锦绣全唐。
闹堂餐偏醉上我头厅宰相，
有那些伴饮班行。
压沙堤，
归软马，
是我到有些美怀佳量。
转东华幕着我庭堂，
又逼札的我那夫人酬唱。

〔见介〕夫人，恭喜了，进封为赵国夫人。侍宴而归，不觉梨花月上。

〔旦〕妾因御赐楼台几所，因此开红妆宴，上翠华楼，陪公相尽通宵之兴。

〔生〕少待，少待，你四个儿子，都摆着一路头踏，鸣珂佩玉而回。





I, Lu Sheng, have been Military Commander and Prime Minister at court for over fifty years. Now I have been entitled Duke of Zhao with nine thousand tenant households while my sons are all promoted to high positions. My honour is above all the other ministers and my distinction pervades the whole family. When the royal banquet is over, I now leave the palace and return to my residence. I'm ambling my way home.

(To the tune of Northern Zhonglü Fendie'er)

How splendid is the Tang Dynasty!

How splendid is the Tang Dynasty!

During the banquet I alone got drunk

Amid toast after toast.

Along the river bank,

On my gentle horse,

I'm intoxicated with the wine.

Turning round the Donghua Gate I see my house,

Ready to drink another cup with my wife.

(Greets Miss Cui)

Congratulations, Madam, on your promotion to Lady of Zhao. When the royal banquet is over, the moon is already high in the sky.

MISS CUI:

Since His Majesty has bestowed us a few pavilions, I've prepared a family dinner accompanied by the female singers and dancers. I'll drink with you overnight in the Emerald Pavilion.

LU SHENG:

Wait, wait. With guards of honour in front, your four sons wearing jade are coming home on horseback.



〔四子冠带上〕兄弟同日升荫，拜见老爷老夫人去。〔见礼介〕礼乐衣冠地，文章富贵家。南山开寿域，东海溢流霞。爹娘在上，容孩儿们敬上一杯贺酒。

〔进酒介〕

【南泣颜回】

列桂捧琼觞，
满冠盖青云成浪。
穿朝入苑，
无非戚畹宫墙。
老爷，
你把朝堂稳坐，
一家儿门户山河壮。
保苍生你大古里驰名，
荷皇封小的儿沾赏。

〔旦〕院子，请官儿堂上饮酒。

〔四子跪介〕禀老爷老夫人，儿子荷爹娘福庇，新受皇恩，各衙门俱有公宴。

〔生〕正是，衙门公宴，不可迟迟。



(Enter four sons fully dressed)

FOUR SONS:

We four brothers are promoted on the same day. Let's go and pay respects to our parents.

(Bow to Lu Sheng and Miss Cui)

As descendants of Confucian tradition,/ We live in a house of distinction./ The southern mountain is a land of longevity;/ The east sea abounds in auspicious clouds."

Please accept our toast of congratulations, Dad and Mom.

(To the tune of Southern Qiyanhui)

Holding cups of sweet wine in our hands,

Your successful sons rise in positions.

We come and go in the palace,

As if visiting a relative's house.

Dear Dad,

Since your place is firm in the court,

The whole family gains distinction.

May Heaven bless you and bring you fame

So that we can also have a good name.

MISS CUI:

Butler, invite them to drink in the hall.

FOUR SONS:

(On their knees)

Dad and Mom, under your auspices, we have received new favours from His Majesty. Therefore, we have formal dinners in our respective offices.

LU SHENG:

Yes, you shouldn't be late for your formal dinners in your offices.



〔四子打躬退介〕暂赴驾行席，长趋燕喜堂。〔下〕

〔内作乐〕

〔生叹美介〕

〔旦〕老公相不知，此乃皇恩颁赐女乐二十四名，按二十四气，吹弹歌舞，可谓妙矣。

〔生〕哎哟，我只道是家常雅乐，原来教坊之女，咱人不可近他。

〔旦〕怎生不可近他？

〔生〕寻常女子，有色无声，名为哑色。其次有声而未必有色，能舞而未必能歌。只有教坊之女，搅箏琶，舞霓裳，乔合生，大迓鼓，醉罗歌，调笑令，但是标情夺趣，他所事皆知。所以君子可视也，不可陷也；可弃也，不可往也。且其幼色取自鲜妍，假母教其精细。容止则光风霁月，应对则流水行云。加之粉则太白，加之朱则



FOUR SONS:

(Bow and retire)

To attend the official dinner,/ We'll stride to the jubilant hall.

(Exeunt)

(Music within)

(Lu Sheng gasps in admiration)

MISS CUI:

You don't know, Master, His Majesty decreed that twenty-four singers and dancers be brought to our house from the School of Fairy Music, in accordance with the twenty-four solar periods. They can play music, sing and dance. They are charming indeed.

LU SHENG:

Alas, I thought that they just play soft music for the family, but they are girls from the School of Court Music. I should not get close to them.

MISS CUI:

Why should you not get close to them?

LU SHENG:

Ordinary girls are pretty but do not have a good voice: this is "dumb beauty". Other girls may have a good voice but are not necessarily pretty; they may dance but cannot sing. Only girls from the School of Court Music not only put on performances like Zither Music, Fairy Dance, Comic Talk, Ballad Singing, Solos and Duets but also are attractive and charming, knowing almost all the ropes. Therefore, a gentleman can watch them but not be indulged in them, can abandon them but not be attached to them. They were fresh and pretty in their earlier years and their teacher taught them to be exquisite. They are beautiful in figure and eloquent in conversation. They will look too pale if they put some white on their faces and they will look too red if they put on some rouge on their faces. They

太赤。高一分则太长，低一分则太短。诗家说道：月出皎兮，美人燎兮。巧笑倩兮，美目盼兮。那一盼你道是甚么盼，把你的心都盼去了。那一笑你道是甚么笑？把人那魂都笑倒了。故曰：皓齿蛾眉，乃伐性之斧；莺声燕语，乃叫命之泉；细唾黏津，乃腐肠之药；翻床跳席，乃厥痿之机。老子曰：五色令人目盲，五音令人耳聋。所以小人戒色，须戒其足。君子戒色，须戒其眼。相似这等女乐，咱人再也不可近他。

〔旦〕这等，公相可谓道学之士，何不写一奏本，送还朝廷便了。

〔生笑介〕这却有所不可。礼云：不敢虚君之赐。所谓却之不恭，受之惶愧了。

〔旦〕公相，听你说白一篇，到耽误了几个曲儿。叫女乐近前，劝公相酒。

〔女乐叩头介〕



will look too tall if they grow one inch more and they will look too short if they grow one inch less. As *The Book of Poetry* has it:

How fair the moon shines in the sky!

How lovely is the lady passing by!

Complement her dimpled cheeks

And make her black eyes glow.

Their glowing eyes will trap your heart and their smile with dimpled cheeks will entice your soul. Therefore it is said, White teeth and crescent eyebrows are axes that maim your nature; billing and cooing are owls that murder your life; slobber and slaver are poisons that corrode your bowels; bed play is the game that makes you impotent. In Laozi's words, the five colours can blind one's eyes; the five tones can deafen one's ears. Therefore, to refrain from sex, an inferior man must refrain his feet; to refrain from sex, a gentleman must refrain his eyes. And so I should not get close to these female singers and dancers.

MISS CUI:

In that case, you are a genuine orthodox scholar. Why don't you present a memorial to His Majesty and send them back?

LU SHENG:

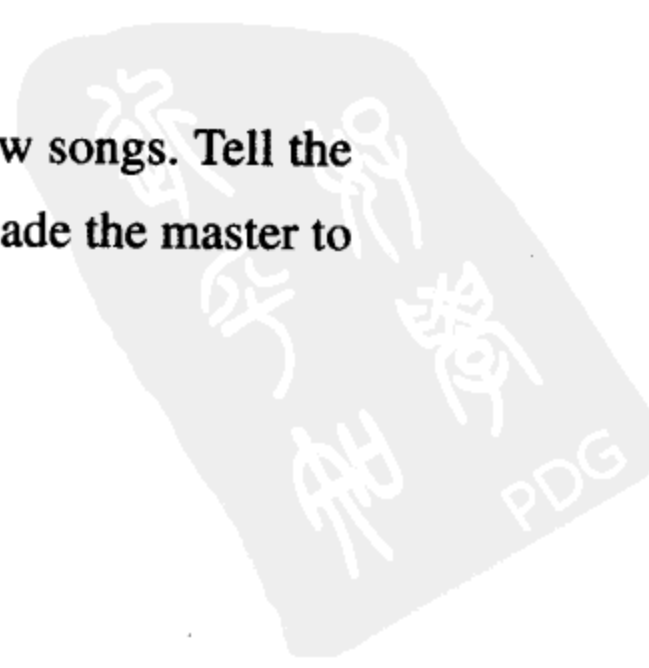
(Smiles)

That won't do. According to *The Book of Rites*, Never neglect the gifts from the king. That is what we mean by the paradox "To reject is to imply disrespect while to accept is to feel ashamed."

MISS CUI:

Master, as I listen to your preaching, I've missed a few songs. Tell the female singers and dancers to come forward and persuade the master to drink.

(The female singers and dancers kowtow)



〔生〕你们都是奉旨来的，请起，请起。唱的唱，舞的舞。

【北上小楼】

〔乐〕我则望仙楼排下这内家妆，
步寒宫出落的紫霓裳，
一个个清歌妙舞世上无双。
把红牙儿撒朗，
羯鼓儿崩邦。
间的是吉铮铮的银雁儿打的冰弦响，
吸乌乌洞箫声悠漾。
把我这截云霄不住的歌喉放，
虽一个残梦到黄梁。

〔生〕怎说起黄梁？

〔众〕不是，

唱一个残韵绕虹梁。

【南泣颜回】

〔生〕轩昂，
气色满华堂，
立宫花济楚珠佩琳琅。
谢夫人贤达，
许金钗十二成行。
插花筵畔捧莲杯，
笑立娇模样。
早餐他凤髓龙肝，
却沾承黛绿蛾黄。



LU SHENG:

You've come here by imperial edict. Rise to your feet, rise to your feet.
You just sing and dance.

SINGERS:

(To the tune of Northern Shangxiaolou)

Like fairies dressed in court manner,
As if walking on the moon palace in purple dress,
We sing and dance in the best style.
We sound hardwood clappers
And beat exotic drums.
The zither chords ring aloud
And flute music spreads afar.
We sing in full-throated ease
Till yellow millets awake the dreams.

LU SHENG:

Why do you mention golden millet?

ALL:

No. Till music resounds around the beams.

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Southern Qiyanhui)

Dignified
And splendid in the magnificent hall,
Stand the court beauties, tinkling with jade.
I thank my wife for her kind heart,
Who tolerates the dozen of beauties.
The flowery girls hold cups at the table,
In coy smile.
I've eaten all kinds of delicacies
And shall taste the beauties as well.



〔旦〕启相公得知：还有酒在翠华楼，为今夜暖楼之宴。

〔生〕贤德夫人也。淡月笼云，玉阶之上可以玩赏。侍女们燃百十枝绛纱灯，细乐导引，我与夫人缓步游赏一回。

〔贴众灯笼细乐行介〕

【北黄龙袞犯】

踢荡荡的蹬道三条，
滴溜溜的平川一掌。
蔼溶溶的淡月长空，
高簇簇的纱笼翠晃。
抵多少银烛朝天紫陌长。

〔笑跌介〕待不笑啊，
不是他红生生翠袖双扶，
把我脆设设的肝肠一趟。

〔内奏乐笑声响道介〕

〔生〕前面几十对纱灯响道，问是谁家？

〔贴、众问介〕

〔内应介〕便是我家四位官儿宴归私宅。



MISS CUI:

May I remind you that we can also wine and dine in the Emerald Pavilion to warm up the new house.

LU SHENG:

What a virtue of a wife! Under moon and cloud, we can enjoy the scenery on the steps. Maidservants, light a hundred sash-lanterns and play some soft music to lead the way. Madam and I shall stroll for a while.

(Meixiang and servants walk with lanterns amid light music)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Northern Huanglonggunfan)

Flat and wide are the three step-ways;

Smooth and even is the stretch of plain.

Misty and foggy is the moon-lit sky;

High and bright shine the sash-lanterns,

Which likewise light up the suburb ways.

(Laughs and stumbles)

I'd better stop laughing.

But for the support of these tender hands,

I would have stumbled my bowels out.

(Music, laughter and hailing the way within)

LU SHENG:

Who are they that are hailing the way with dozens of sash-lanterns?

(Meixiang and servants ask about it)

VOICE WITHIN:

(Responds)

The four young masters are returning to their private residences from banquets.



〔生笑介〕好人家也。前面翠华楼了。

【南扑灯蛾犯】

霭青青烟袅袖炉香，
厮琅琅落花御沟漾。
唧喳喳晚风飘细乐，
齐恁恁千步廊回向。
高艳艳的金牌玉榜，
软幽幽粉楼下垂杨。
密札札雕檐画戟，
雄赳赳有笑天狮，
门外滚球场。

〔到介〕

〔旦〕公相，你看翠华楼前面，钦赐碧莲湖三十六景。

〔生〕真乃神仙景致。女乐们扶我与夫人上楼去。

〔上介〕

〔生〕大觥洒酒来，与夫人痛饮。

【北上小楼犯】

展鬼鬼登了阁，
砌臻臻游了房。
真乃是倚着红云，
踏着红莲，
逗着红妆。





LU SHENG:

What a prosperous family! The Emerald Pavilion is right ahead.

(To the tune of Southern Pudeng'efan)

Smoke coils from incense-burners in my sleeves;

Fallen petals float on the royal moats.

Gentle music is sounding in the night breeze;

Zigzag goes the lengthy winding corridor.

High hangs the jade and golden tablet;

Supple dangle the willow twigs.

Densely-lined are the painted eaves;

Valiant stand the statues of roaring lions,

Staring at the ball-game field outside the gate.

(All arrive)

MISS CUI:

Master, look at the thirty-six sights in front of the Emerald Pavilion bestowed by His Majesty.

LU SHENG:

They are indeed scenes in the immortal land! Singing-girls, help me and Madam upstairs.

(All climb upstairs)

LU SHENG:

Bring wine in goblets and I'll drink with my wife.

(To the tune of Northern Shangxiaoloufan)

I've climbed the pavilion

And visited the chambers.

I lean against the red cloud,

Step on red lotuses of feet

And play with the flushing faces.



〔旦〕老爷请酒。

〔做酒翻湿袖介〕

〔生〕笑的来酒影花枝，
酒摇灯晕，
酒生袍浪，
越显的这风清也似月朗。

〔旦〕高楼良夜，相公可以尽怀。

〔乐争持生介〕

〔生〕听我分付：今夜便在楼中派定，此楼分为二十四房，每房门上挂一盏绛纱灯为号，待我游歇一处，本房收了纱灯，余房以次收灯就寝。倘有高兴，两人三人临期听用。

〔乐笑应介〕

【南叠字犯】

拍拍红喧翠嚷，
匝匝情深意广。
沈沈的玉漏稀，
娟娟的风露凉。
悉的悉喇宿鸟儿湖上，
闪闪开红纱绣窗。
一个个待枕席生香，
落落滔滔取情儿玩赏。
笑笑笑人生几百岁，
醉煞锦云乡。



MISS CUI:

A toast to you, Master.

LU SHENG:

(The wine spills and soaks his sleeve)

I laugh and see flowers in the wine

And lamps swirl with the wine.

When wine spills on my sleeves,

The moon seems brighter and breeze gentler.

MISS CUI:

In the tall pavilion at such a wonderful night, you may enjoy yourself to the full, Master.

(The female singers and dancers vie to grab at Lu Sheng)

LU SHENG:

Now listen to me. You will be allotted in separate rooms. A sash-lantern is hung at the door of each of the twenty-four rooms as a signal. Whenever I stay over the night in any of these rooms, the lantern for that room is withdrawn and the others may withdraw the lanterns and go to bed. If I am in a good mood, I may tell two or three of you to wait on me.

(The female singers and dancers laugh and respond)

(To the tune of Southern Diezifan)

The girls roar aloud

With passions profound.

The time is running out

In cool breeze and dews.

With a view of birds on the lake,

The red sash-windows are left open.

With fragrance on the pillows,

The girls are eager to please.

As life lasts hundreds of years at the most,

I'd better get drunk and dream a pleasant dream.



〔旦〕夜阑了，相公将息贵体。

〔生〕夫人，吾今可谓得意之极矣。

【尾声】

论功名，
为将相，
也是六十载擎天架海梁。
夫人，向后啊，
则把这富贵荣华和咱慢慢的享。

美景天将锦绣开，
升平元老醉金杯。
夜夜笙歌归院落，
朝朝灯火下楼台。





MISS CUI:

The night is growing deep. It's time to go to bed, Master.

LU SHENG:

I've enjoyed the best of life today, Madam.

(To the tune of Coda)

For my official career,

I've been Marshal and Premier

In these sixty years of grand feat.

Madam, from now on,

Let's fully enjoy our wealth and distinction.

When heavenly guards open a splendid way,

The senior minister wines and dines every day.

Song and dance goes on night by night;

I visit the pavilion when the lamps are bright.



第二十八出 友叹

【挂真儿】

〔萧上〕生意尽凭黄阁下，
叹元僚病染霜华。
紫禁烟花，
玉堂风月，
长好是精神如画。

故交君独在，又欲与君离。我有新愁泪，非关秋气悲。

下官萧嵩，忝同平章事。有首相卢老先生，乃同年至交，年今八十有余，忽然一病三月，重大事机，诏就床前请决。皇上恩礼异常，至遣礼部官各宫观建醮禳保。那礼部堂上是裴年兄，上香而回，必然到此。

Scene Twenty-Eight **Friends' Lamentations**

(Enter Xiao Song)

XIAO SONG:

(To the tune of Guazhen'er)

When the Prime Minister lingers in his life,

I lament over his illness.

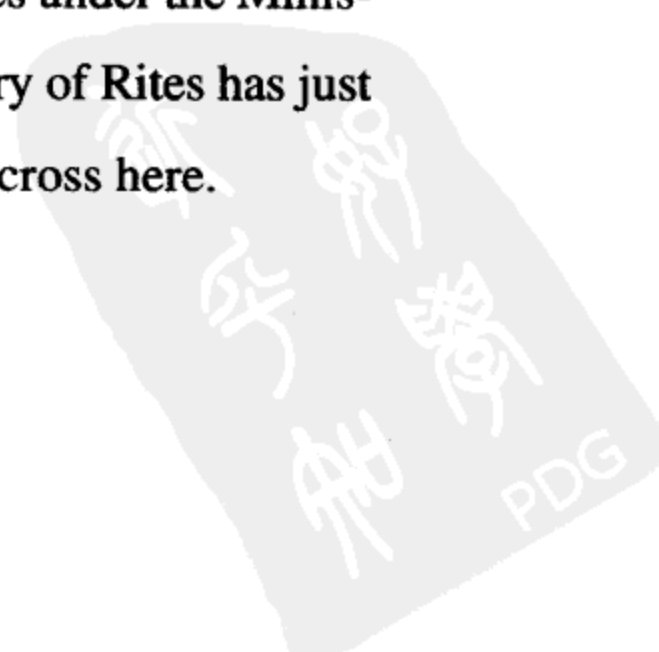
The singing girls in the palace

And dancing girls at court

Are ever in high spirits.

*You survive all my old friends,/ But now your life is drawing to
an end./ My face is stained with new tears,/ Not because of the sad
autumn days.*

I am Xiao Song, Honorary Prime Minister at court. Prime Minister Lu is a close colleague of mine. He is over eighty years old now. As he has been ill for three months, he has to do his duties on bed. His Majesty bestows extraordinary grace by requiring all the temples under the Ministry of Rites to pray for him. Minister Pei in the Ministry of Rites has just offered incense in the temples and will surely come across here.



〔裴上〕

【番卜算】

元老病能瘥，
圣主心萦挂。

〔见介〕

〔萧〕年兄，
这一番祈祷是如何？
要作从长话。

年兄，卢老先生平日精神甚好，因何一病缠绵？

【风入松】

〔裴〕略知元老病根芽，
说起一场新话。

〔萧〕是阁中机务所劳？

〔裴〕非关阁下伤劳杂，
是房中有些儿兜荅。

〔萧〕呀，难道卢老先生此时还有余话？

〔裴〕好采战说长生事大，
皇恩赐女娇娃。

〔萧〕有这等的事，老夫人怎不阻他？

(Enter Pei Guangting)

PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of *Fanbusuan*)

As to whether Lu can recover,
His Majesty is anxious.

(Greets Xiao Song)

XIAO SONG:

Minister Pei,

What's the result of this praying?

His illness will certainly take a long time.

Minister Pei, as Prime Minister Lu used to be in good health, how is it that he suddenly fell ill?

PEI GUANGTING:

(To the tune of *Fengrusong*)

I know something about his illness,
Which is a new story.

XIAO SONG:

Is it because he's too busy in his official duties?

PEI GUANGTING:

It's not because he's too busy in office
But because he's too busy in his chamber.

XIAO SONG:

Alas, is there any more story about him?

PEI GUANGTING:

As he thinks that sex will prolong his life,
His Majesty has bestowed him some girls.

XIAO SONG:

Is that true? Hasn't Madam Lu tried to stop him?



〔裴〕都道彭祖年高八百，也用采女之术。

【前腔】

〔萧〕老年人似纸烘残蜡，
能禁几阵风花。
千年彭祖今亡化，
颠倒着折本生涯。

〔裴〕卢年兄富贵已极，止想长生一路了。

〔萧〕便是，
论吾侪都是八旬上下，
迟和早几争差？
卢老先既有此失，势必踉蹌。且喜年兄大拜在即了。
〔裴〕不敢。

病到调元老，
朝家少国医。
惟余一枝树，
留与后来栖。

PEI GUANGTING:

It is said that Peng Zu in the ancient times had sex to prolong his life when he was eight hundred years old.

XIAO SONG:

(To the previous tune)

Old men are like dried paper or remnant of candles;

How can they bear all the troubles?

The Peng Zu of longevity is dead and gone;

Minister Lu took the trouble at a loss.

PEI GUANGTING:

As Prime Minister Lu has enjoyed extreme luxuries, the only thing he thinks is longevity.

XIAO SONG:

That's right.

Both of us are approaching eighty now;

What's the difference as to age?

Now that he's taken a wrong step, he can hardly survive. Congratulations on you for your coming promotion.

PEI GUANGTING:

I dare not assume that.

To cure the minister of his disease,

There is no master-hand in court.

The tree stands alone in the breeze;

To its heirs it can offer support.



第二十九出 生寤

【金蕉叶】

〔旦愁容上〕愁长恨长，
天样大门庭怎放？
就其间有话难详。
天，天，天，
怎的我老相公一时无恙？

事不三思，终有后悔。

我老相公夫妇齐眉，极富极贵，年过八十，五子十孙；此亦人间至乐矣。以前止是几个丫鬟劝酒，老身时时照管，不致疏虞。近因皇帝老儿，没缘没故送下几个教坊中人，歌舞吹弹，则道他老人家饮酒作乐而已。谁想听了个官儿，他希求进用，献了个采战之术。三月以前，偶然一失，因而一病跷蹊。所仗圣眷转深，分遣礼部官于各宫观



Scene Twenty-Nine **Revelations**

(Enter Miss Cui, with a worried look)

MISS CUI:

(To the tune of Jinjiaoye)

My woe and sorrow is so great
That it won't go away from my gate.
It is difficult for me to talk about it.

Oh heavens, heavens, heavens!

How can you cure my man for a while?

If you don't think well, sooner or later you'll repent. My man and I have lived to an old age in great wealth and distinction. Now that we are over eighty years old with five sons and ten grandsons, we have enjoyed extreme happiness in the human world. He used to drink with a few maidservants waiting on him and with me taking care of him. Some time ago, the emperor gave him some female singers and dancers who sang, danced and played music for his entertainment when he drank. However, he followed the advice of an official, who wanted to be promoted, to have sex with the girls. Since there was something wrong with him three months ago, he has been seriously ill all these days. Thanks to the consideration of His Majesty, the officials in the Ministry of Rites are required to pray for him in different temples and relatives of the royal house are required

建醮祈祷，王公国戚以次上香，可谓得君之至矣。只恐福过灾生，未肯天从人愿。天啊，不敢望他百岁，活到九十九也罢了。

〔儿子走上报介〕老夫人，老夫人，老爷不好了！分付请他出堂而坐。

〔儿子、梅香扶生病上〕

【小蓬莱】

八十身为将相，
如今几刻时光。
猛然惆怅，
丹青易老，
舟楫难藏。

【集唐】将相兼权似武侯，谁人肯向死前休？临阶一盞悲春酒，野草闲花满地愁。

夫人，我病势沉沉，精魂散乱，多应罢了。思想当初，孤苦一身，与夫人相遇。登科及第，掌握丝纶。出典大州，入参机务。一窜岭表，再登台辅。出入中外，回旋台阁，五十余年。前后恩赐，子孙官荫，甲第田园，佳人名马，不可胜数。贵盛赫然，举朝无比。圣恩未报，一病郎当。夫人，我和你以前历过酸辛，儿子都不知道。岂知我八十而终，皆天赐也。





to burn incense for him. We have won extreme favour from His Majesty. I'm afraid that misfortune will follow bliss and the heavens will not be so merciful. Oh heavens, I won't expect him to live a hundred years, but ninety-nine years will do for him.

(Enter Lu Sheng, seriously ill, supported by his sons and Meixiang)

LU SHENG:

(To the tune of Xiaopenglai)

As Prime Minister at the age of eighty,

How much time do I have with me?

I feel so sad in a flash

To think of the swift passage of life

And the hardship of Prime Minister.

(In the pattern of Collected Tang Poems)

*With the power of Prime Minister,/ Who'd like to give up to death?/
When I drink to lament spring,/ Wild grass and blooms seem to be so
sad.*

Madam, as I'm seriously ill and feel dizzy all the time, I'm afraid I'm at the end of my life. When I first met you, I was all by myself. After I passed the imperial examinations, I became an official at court. I served in large prefectures and consulted in state affairs. When I returned from exile in the south, I resumed my official career. For the past fifty years I've toured at home and abroad, dealing with people of high ranks. The grace of His Majesty has been extended to my sons and grandsons. I have countless mansions and farms, beauties and steeds. There is no equal to my power and distinction. Before I can requite the grace of His Majesty, I've fallen ill. Madam, our sons do not know the hardships we experienced. It is predestined that I have to die at the age of eighty.

【胜如花】

寒窗苦滞选场，
瘦田中蹇驴来往。
猛然间撞入卿门，
平白地天门看榜。
命直着簸箕无状，
手爬沙去开河运粮，
手提刀去胡沙战场。
险些儿剑死云阳，
贬炎方受瘴。
又富贵八旬之上。

〔合〕算从前劳役惊伤，
到如今疾病灾殃。

〔旦〕老相公，你此病虽然天数，也是自取其然。八十岁老人家，怎生采战那？

〔生恼介〕采战，采战，我也则是图些寿算，看护子孙，难道是瞒着你取乐？

【前腔】

〔旦〕你年过迈自忖量，
说采战混元修养。
为朝廷燮理阴阳，



(To the tune of Shengruhua)

When I studied hard and failed in the examinations,
I rode my lean donkey in the arid farmland.
After I entered your residence by chance,
I passed the examinations and rose high in positions.
It's my fate to experience the vicissitude of life,
Digging canals
And fighting on battlefields.
I had a narrow escape from the execution ground
And went on exile to a land of miasma.
Later I enjoyed fame and wealth until I am over eighty.

ALL:

He used to suffer from toil and terror,
And now he's suffering from illness.

MISS CUI:

Master, predestined as it is, your illness is also your own bitter fruit. How can you hope to gain vital energy by having sex with the girls at the age of eighty?

LU SHENG:

(Annoyed)

Sex, sex, I'm having sex in order to obtain longevity for the benefit of our future generations. Do you think that I have done all this behind your back?

MISS CUI:

(To the previous tune)

You should think for yourself at this age,
Instead of having sex with the girls.
You've done all this for the court,



自体上不知消长，
这一病可能停当？

老相公，平安罢了，有些差池，就要那二十四个丫头偿命。

〔生恼介〕少道，少道。

〔众子〕老夫人言词太抢，
老相公尊性儿厮强。

俺孝顺儿郎，
爹爹拣口儿咱尽情供养。

〔生〕不想吃啊。

〔众子〕这等有汤药在此。〔跪进药介〕尝了药进些无恙。

〔生恼介〕还吃甚药！

〔合前〕

〔内报介〕报，报，报，阁下裴老爷萧老爷问安到堂。





But you do not care for your health,
Not knowing whether you can ever recover.

Master, I'll say nothing if you are safe and sound. Should there be something wrong with you, I'll make these twenty-four girls pay for your life.

LU SHENG:

(Annoyed)

None of your nonsense! None of your nonsense!

SONS:

Mom's words are too harsh
While Dad's temper is too hot.
We shall be filial enough
To provide the best food for you.

LU SHENG:

I don't want to eat anything.

SONS:

Here's the liquid medicine.

(On their knees to present the medicine)

You'll be able to eat after you've taken the medicine.

LU SHENG:

(Annoyed)

I want none of your medicine.

ALL:

He used to suffer from toil and terror,
And now he's suffering from illness.

VOICE WITHIN:

(Announces)

Report, report, report! Ministers Pei and Xiao have arrived to enquire about Master's health.



[旦] 怎好相待?

[生] 长儿子答应去。你说有劳萧叔叔裴叔叔，晚些下朝，请来有话。

[长子应下]

[内介] 公侯驸马伯各位老皇亲问安到堂。

[生] 次儿子答应去。这都是四门亲家。说有劳了，容病起叩谢。

[次应下]

[内介] 五府六部都通大堂上官共八十员名，禀帖问安到堂。

[生] 三的儿答应去。你说有劳了。

[三子应下]

[内介] 小九卿堂上官共一百八十员名脚色，问安到堂。

[生] 第四的答应去。你说知道了。

[小应下]





MISS CUI:

Who will receive them?

LU SHENG:

Eldest son, you go and receive them in my stead. You just thank Uncle Pei and Uncle Xiao, saying that they are welcome to have a chat here when the court is over.

(Exit the eldest son with a response)

VOICE WITHIN:

The dukes, marquises, royal sons-in-law and royal relatives have arrived to enquire about Master's health.

LU SHENG:

Second son, you go and receive them in my stead. These are all our relatives. You just thank them, saying that I'll thank them by myself when I've recovered.

(Exit the second son with a response)

VOICE WITHIN:

Eighty high officials from different ministries have arrived and present their cards to enquire about Master's health.

LU SHENG:

Third son, you go and receive them in my stead. You just thank them all.

(Exit the third son with a response)

VOICE WITHIN:

One hundred and eighty chief officials from different sections have arrived to enquire about Master's health.

LU SHENG:

Fourth son, you go and receive them in my stead. You just say that I know.

(Exit the fourth son with a response)



〔内介〕合京大小各衙门官三千七百员名，连名手本问安，门外伺候。

〔生〕堂候官，分付都知道了。

〔官应下〕

〔内介〕报，报，报，万岁爷钦差高公公，领了御医来到。

〔旦慌介〕

〔生〕快取冠带加身，夫人接旨。

〔高领御医上〕

【滴溜子】

骠骑的，
骠骑的，
驾前排当。
领圣旨，
御医前往。
直到平章宅上，
他病患有干系，
无虚逛。
俺比他富贵无聊，
他百寮之上。

〔到介〕圣旨到，跪听宣读。诏曰：卿以俊德，作朕元辅。出镇番服，入赞缉熙。升平二纪，实卿是赖。比因疾累，日谓痊除。岂遽





VOICE WITHIN:

Three thousand and seven hundred minor officials have arrived and presented their letters to enquire about Master's health.

LU SHENG:

Butler, tell them that I know all about it.

(Exit the butler with a response)

VOICE WITHIN:

Report, report, report! At His Majesty's decree, Eunuch Gao has arrived with the court doctor.

(Miss Cui is in a flurry)

LU SHENG:

Madam, get fully dressed and prepare to receive the imperial edict.

(Enter Eunuch Gao, followed by the court doctor)

EUNUCH GAO:

(To the tune of Diliuzi)

The horsemen,

The horsemen

Lead the procession.

By imperial edict,

By imperial edict,

I bring the court doctor along.

I'll meet Minister Lu in his house,

Who is indeed ill,

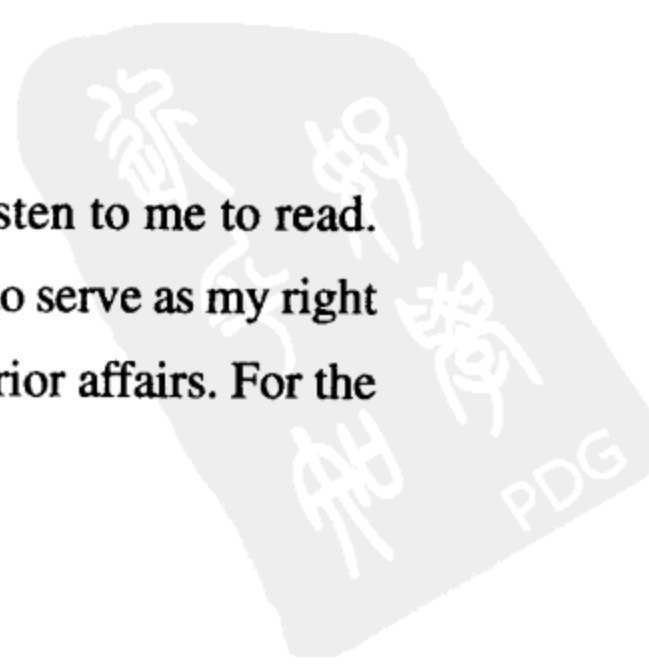
Without question.

I am cosier than he,

But he's above all other ministers.

(Arrives at Lu's residence)

Here comes the imperial edict. On your knees and listen to me to read. The imperial edict says: You have exerted your virtue to serve as my right hand. You subdued the Tubo troops and managed interior affairs. For the



沉顿，良深悯默。今遣骠骑大将军高力士就第省候，卿其勉加调养，为朕自爱。深冀无妄，期于有喜，谢恩！

〔旦谢恩起介〕

〔生〕老公公，学生多蒙圣恩，有劳贵步，何以为报！

〔高〕宫监事烦，不得频来看望老先生。万岁爷甚是悬挂，以前虽遣中使时常问安，还不放心，以此特差本监，领这御医视药调膳。叫你千万宽养，以副眷怀。且着御医诊视。

〔诊脉介〕

【榴花泣】

〔御〕贵人抬手指下细端详，
手背上汗亡阳。

呀，

鱼游雀啄去佯佯，
喜心经有脉弦长。

老爷，下官太素最精，老爷心脉洪大，眼下有加官荫子之喜，下官不胜欣贺！





past two decades, I have relied on you. Since you fell ill, I've been expecting that you will soon recover. However, I'm sorry to hear that your illness is becoming more serious. Now I decree that Cavalry General Eunuch Gao visit you in your residence. I hope you will take good care of yourself and do it for me. I hope that you will be all right and I'm expecting good tidings from you. So much for my edict!

(Miss Cui kowtows and rises to her feet)

LU SHENG:

Your Highness, I'm gratified to His Majesty's grace and thank you for your coming to my house. I don't know how to requite you.

EUNUCH GAO:

I haven't called on you often enough because I have been occupied with palace management. His Majesty is quite worried about your health. Although he has often sent a minister to enquire about it, he does not feel assured enough. Therefore, he has decreed that I bring a court doctor to make prescriptions for you. He hopes that you will take good care of yourself and live up to his expectations. Court doctor, come forward and see the patient.

COURT DOCTOR:

(Feels Lu Sheng's pulse)

(To the tune of Liuhuaqi)

Raise your hand and I'll look at your fingers;

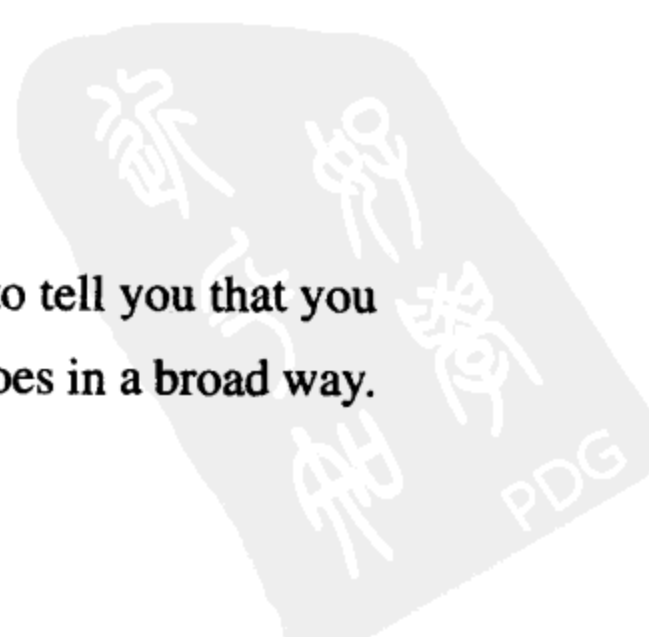
There is sweat on the back of your hand.

Well,

Like fish and sparrows on the move,

You have a long thread of life.

Minister Lu, I'm good at feeling the pulse. I'm glad to tell you that you and your sons will be promoted again as your pulse goes in a broad way.



〔生笑介〕难道，难道。

〔御背高介〕卢老爷脉息欠好了，
魂飞散扬，
争些儿要得身亡丧。

〔高哭介〕可怜卢老先，
几十载里外同心，
霎儿间形影分张。

〔御〕老爷，容下官处方呈上，可怜医国手，空费药笼心。
〔下〕

〔生〕老公公，俺高年重病，医疗多难。顶戴皇恩，没身无报。

【前腔】

书生何德毫发圣恩光，
垂老病赐仙方。
微臣要挣挫做姜公望，
八旬外恁的郎当。

老公公，老臣不能下床，只在枕头上叩首谢恩了。





LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

Inconceivable! Inconceivable!

COURT DOCTOR:

(Aside to Eunuch Gao)

Prime Minister Lu's pulse is turning for the worse.

His soul will rise to the sky

And he is about to die.

EUNUCH GAO:

(Weeps)

Oh, deplorable Prime Minister Lu, for several dozens of years,

You've thought and acted in the same way,

But now your form and shadow will separate.

COURT DOCTOR:

Prime Minister Lu, here's your prescription.

*It is a pity for the court doctor/ That he cannot save a life with
medicine.*

(Exit)

LU SHENG:

Your Highness, as I'm seriously ill in my old age, medicine is not of much use. I can hardly requite the grace from His Majesty.

(To the previous tune)

What virtue do I have that I receive royal grace

And prescriptions for the immortals?

I'll learn from Jiang Gongwang in ancient days,

Who served the king when he was over eighty.

Your Highness, as I cannot rise from the bed, I have to kowtow on my pillow.



〔三叩首介〕万岁万岁万万岁。

天恩敢忘，

愿来生做鬼也向丹墀傍。

老公公，萧、裴二公虽系同年同官，还仗老公公青目。

〔高〕这是交情在前了。

〔生〕要紧一事，俺六十年勤劳功绩，老公公所知。怕身后萧、裴二公总裁国史，编载不全。

〔高〕这个朝家自有功劳簿，逐一比对，谁敢遗漏？

〔生〕保家门全仗高公，

纪功劳借重同堂。

〔生〕请问老公公：身后加官赠谥何如？

〔高〕自有圣眷，不必挂心。咱去也。

〔生哭介〕哎哟，还有话：老夫有个孽生之子卢倚年小，叫来拜了公公。



(*Kowtows three times*)

Long live the Emperor!

I'll never forget the heavenly grace

And requite His Majesty in next life.

Your Highness, Minister Xiao and Minister Pei passed the imperial examinations in the same year as I and we've served His Majesty together for many years. I hope you will give them due help.

EUNUCH GAO:

I've also formed a long friendship with them.

LU SHENG:

I have something important to say. You are aware of my grand feats in the past sixty years. I'm afraid that something might be missing when Minister Xiao and Minister Pei compile the national chronology.

EUNUCH GAO:

Since your grand feats are all recorded in the *Book of Meritorious Deeds* and have been checked one item after another, who dares to miss anything?

LU SHENG:

I rely on Your Highness to help my family

And rely on colleagues to keep my record.

May I ask what title I will get when I am dead?

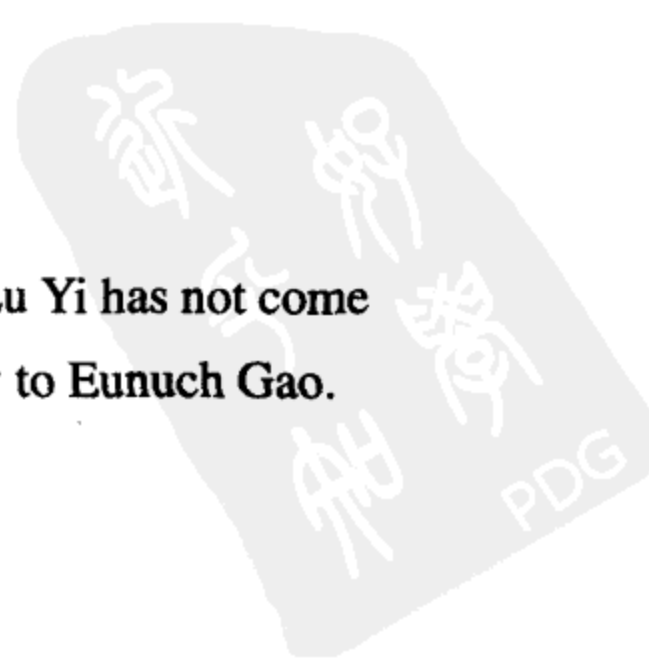
EUNUCH GAO:

His Majesty will take care of it. You don't have to worry about it. I'm off now.

LU SHENG:

(*Weeps*)

Alas, I have something else to say. My youngest son Lu Yi has not come of age yet. Bring him here and tell him to make a bow to Eunuch Gao.



〔扮小公子出拜介〕好个公公，公公青目你孙子些儿。

〔生笑介〕孩子到贼哩。

〔高〕小哥注选尚宝中书了。

〔生〕本爵止叙边功，还有河功未叙，意欲和这小的儿再讨个小应袭，望公公主持。

〔高〕谨记在心，不敢久停了。

〔生叩头哭介〕千万奏知圣上，老臣再不能够瞻天仰圣了。〔哭介〕

〔高〕要知忍死求恩泽，且尽余生答圣明。〔下〕

〔生〕哎哟，哎哟，我汗珠儿滚下来了。丝筋寸骨都是疼的，好冷，好冷哩。是了，这叫做风刀解体，谁替的我啊？叫大儿子，将文



(Enter Lu Yi)

LU YI:

(Bows to Eunuch Gao)

My dear granduncle, please do take care of your grandnephew!

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

You are smart enough, sonny.

EUNUCH GAO:

He's been assigned Secretary to the Seals Department.

LU SHENG:

I've written about my military feats on the border, but have not written about my feats in digging the canal. I'd like to ask for another position for this youngest son. I hope you will offer some help on this matter.

EUNUCH GAO:

I'll keep it in mind. I must be leaving now.

LU SHENG:

(Kowtows in tears)

Do bring my words to His Majesty, saying that I cannot have another look at his heavenly features.

(Weeps)

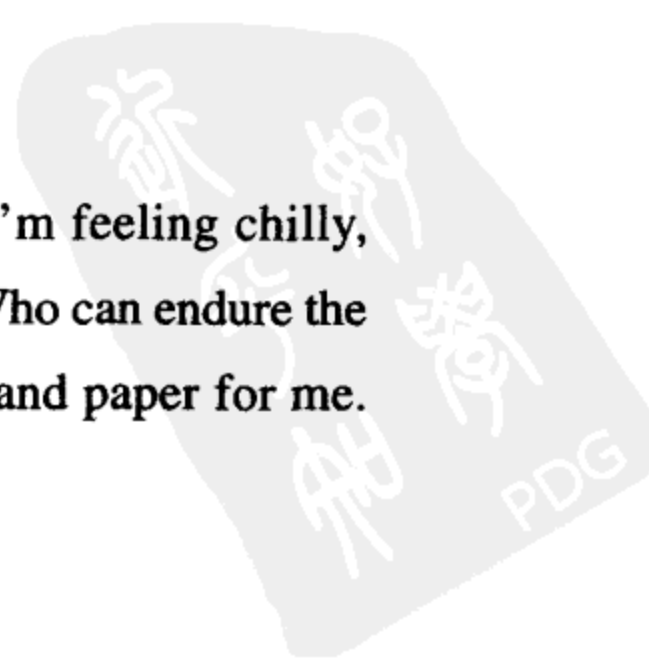
EUNUCH GAO:

Rather than ask favour from His Majesty,/ Better requite Him before you die.

(Exit)

LU SHENG:

Alas, alas! I'm sweating now. I feel pain all over. I'm feeling chilly, chilly! Yes, the knife of wind is cutting at my bones. Who can endure the pain in my place? Tell the eldest son to prepare ink and paper for me.



房四宝，扫席焚香，待我写下遗表，谢了朝廷，便死瞑目矣。

〔旦〕公相不烦自写。

〔生〕你不知，俺的字是钟繇法帖，皇上最所爱重。俺写下一通，也留与大唐家作镇世之宝。

〔长儿上〕老得文园病，还留封禅书。焚香在此，老爷草表。

〔生叩头，旦扶头正衣冠，写介〕

【急板令】

尽余生丹心注香，

盼阶前斜阳寸光。

呀，手战写不得。罢了，起个草，儿子代书。

待亲题奏章，

待亲题奏章，

俺战战兢兢，

写不成行。





Sweep the mat and burn joss-sticks so that I can write my last memorial to His Majesty. When I have expressed my gratitude to His Majesty, I will die at ease.

MISS CUI:

Master, you don't have to write by yourself.

LU SHENG:

You don't know that my calligraphy is of the Zhong Yao style, of which His Majesty is most fond. The memorial by my own hand will pass down through the generations as a valuable historic relic for the Tang Dynasty.

(Enter the eldest son)

ELDEST SON:

With a disease of thirst in old age, / He left a Letter on Sacrificial Rites.

Here's the incense. Dad, will you please draft the memorial?

(Lu Sheng kowtows; Miss Cui arranges her hair and dress)

LU SHENG:

(Writes)

(To the tune of Jibanling)

At the end of my life,

I inject my devotion into the incense;

I strive to emit the last ray of my life

Before His Majesty.

Alas, my hand shakes so much that I cannot write any more. Well, I'll make the draft and you will write for me, son.

I'd like to write the memorial by myself,

I'd like to write the memorial by myself,

But my hands shake so much

That I cannot write a complete line.



你整整齐齐，
记了休忘。

〔长叹落笔介〕

〔合〕从今后大古里分张，
穷富贵在何方？

〔生短气介〕不要聒噪，大儿子念表文俺听。

〔长念介〕臣本山东书生，以田圃为娱。偶逢圣运，得列官序。过蒙荣奖，特受鸿私。出拥旄钺入升鼎辅。周旋中外，绵历岁年。有忝恩造，无裨圣化。负乘致寇，履薄临兢。日极一日，不知老之将至。今年八十余，位历三公。钟漏并歇，筋骸俱敝。弥留沈困，永辞圣代。臣无任感恋之至！谨奉表称谢以闻。

〔生〕是了，俺气尽之后，端正写了奏上。夫人，你和俺解了朝衣朝冠，收在容堂之上，永远与子孙观看。



You must write in good calligraphy
And remember what I say.
(*Heaves a long sigh and writes*)

ALL:

To make a distinction from the very beginning,
What's the difference between rich and poor?

LU SHENG:

(*Short of breath*)

Don't make a roar. Eldest son, read the memorial aloud.

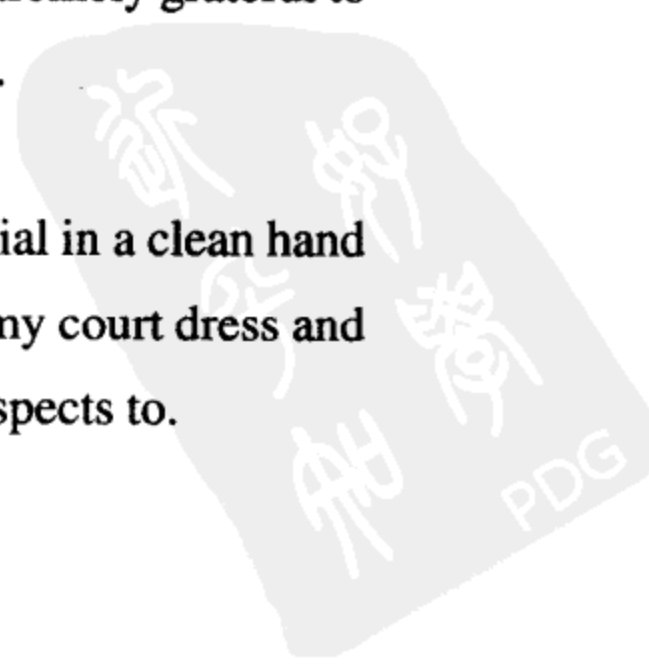
ELDEST SON:

(*Reads*)

I used to be a scholar from the north of Mount Taihang, enjoying my life on the farmland. I was so fortunate to have won favour from Your Majesty that I entered my official career. I have been over-rewarded and received too much grace. I have been Military Commander and Prime Minister. For years I have been working at home and abroad. I'm embarrassed to have received so much grace from Your Majesty but have not done enough for Your Majesty. I've been prudent enough all the time because I may not live up to your expectations and may entice misfortune. I have not been aware that I am growing old day by day. I have risen to the top of positions now that I am over eighty years old. As time goes on, I have become weak in body and in soul. At the last moment of my life, I have to say farewell to Your Majesty. I am extremely grateful to you. The above is a memorial to express my gratitude.

LU SHENG:

That's it. After I draw my last breath, copy this memorial in a clean hand and present it to His Majesty. Madam, please take off my court dress and keep it in my mourning hall for our posterity to pay respects to.



〔换旧衣巾叹介〕人生到此足矣。呀，怎生俺眼光都落了？俺去了也。〔死向旧睡处倒介〕

〔众哭介〕

【前腔】

老天天把相公命亡，
老爷爷俺天公寿丧。
且立起容堂，
且立起容堂，
把一品夫人，
哭在中央。
列位官生，
哭在边傍。

〔合前〕

〔众哭介〕

〔旦暗去生须，拍生背，哭介〕卢郎好醒啊。〔下〕

〔生作惊醒看介〕哎哟，好一身冷汗。夫人哪里？



(Changes into his old clothes)

I am fully contented with my life. Well, I'm losing my eyesight. I shall be dead and gone.

(Dies and falls to his former sleeping place)

ALL:

(Weep and sob)

(To the previous tune)

Heaven has ended the husband's life;

The grandfather has passed away.

Set up a mourning hall,

Set up a mourning hall

Where the First-Rank Lady

Weeps and sobs in the centre

And the filial sons

Weep and sob on both sides.

ALL:

To make a distinction from the very beginning,

What's the difference between rich and poor?

(Weep and sob)

MISS CUI:

(Removes Lu Sheng's beard covertly, pats Lu Sheng on the back and weeps)

Wake up, Master Lu!

(Exit)

LU SHENG:

(Wakes up in surprise)

Alas! What a cold sweat! Where are you, Madam?



〔丑扮前店主上〕甚么夫人？

〔生叫介〕卢傅、卢侗、卢俭、卢位、小的卢倚呢？咳，都在哪里去了？

〔丑〕叫谁哪？

〔生〕我的儿子。

〔丑〕你有几个儿子那？

〔生〕五个哩。咳，都往前面勅书阁宝翰楼耍子。

〔丑〕便只是小店。

〔内驴鸣介〕

〔生〕三十疋御赐的名马，可喂些料？

〔丑〕只一个蹇驴在放屁。

〔生〕啊，我脱下了朝衣朝冠。

〔丑〕破羊裘在身上。

(Enter Innkeeper)

INNKEEPER:

What madam?

LU SHENG:

(Calls aloud)

Where are Lu Zun, Lu Ti, Lu Jian, Lu Wei and my youngest son Lu Yi?

Where are they?

INNKEEPER:

Whom are you calling?

LU SHENG:

I'm calling my sons.

INNKEEPER:

How many sons do you have?

LU SHENG:

Five. Well, they are playing around the Royal Studio and Treasure Mansion in front.

INNKEEPER:

This is a small inn.

(The donkey neighs within)

LU SHENG:

Have you fed the thirty horses of good breed bestowed by His Majesty?

INNKEEPER:

There is only a lame donkey farting outside.

LU SHENG:

Well, I have taken off my court costume.

INNKEEPER:

You are wearing a worn sheepskin.



〔生〕 嘎！好怪，好怪，连我白须胡子哪里去了？

〔看介〕 你是谁？不是崔家院公公？

〔丑〕 甚么崔家院公。赵州桥店小二，煮黄梁饭你吃哩。

〔生想介〕 是哩，饭熟了么？

〔丑〕 还饶一把火儿。

〔生起介〕 有这等事！

【二郎神】

难酬想，

眼根前不尽的繁华相。

当初是打从这枕儿里去。

〔提枕介〕

枕儿内有路分明留去向，

向其间打滚，

影儿历历端详。

难道这一星星都是谎？

怎教人不护着这枕儿心快？

〔叹介〕

忽突帐，

六十年光景，

熟不的半箸黄梁。

LU SHENG:

Oh, how strange, how strange! Where is my white beard?

(Looks)

Who are you? Are you Miss Cui's butler?

INNKEEPER:

What do you mean by Cui's butler? I am an innkeeper near Zhaozhou Bridge. I'm cooking yellow millet for you.

LU SHENG:

(Thinks hard)

Yes, is the millet done?

INNKEEPER:

I have to add one more bundle of firewood.

LU SHENG:

(Rises to his feet)

Can it be true?

(To the tune of Erlangshen)

It is inconceivable

About the luxuries before my eyes.

I made my way into the pillow some time ago.

(Takes up the pillow)

There is a way into the pillow.

The scenes are vivid

As to how I rolled there.

Are these all lies?

I cannot but be puzzled, holding the pillow.

(Sighs)

As if in a flash,

In sixty years

The meal of millet is not done yet.



〔吕上笑介〕山静似太古，日长如小年。

卢生，睡的可得意么？

〔生〕老翁，太奇，太奇。俺一径的抢中了唐家状元，替唐天子开了三百里河路，打过了一千里边关哩。

〔吕笑介〕咦，多少功劳！

〔生〕老翁不知，小生也不敢诉闻。恁大功劳，还听个谗臣宇文丞相之言，赐斩咸阳都市。喜得妻儿哭救，远窜岭南，直走到崖州鬼门关外。

〔吕〕侥幸，侥幸。后来？

〔生〕后来有得萧、裴二位年兄辩救，钦取还朝，依旧拜为首相。金屋名园，歌儿舞女，不记其数。亲戚俱是王侯，子孙无非恩荫。仕宦五十余年，整整的活到八十多岁。

〔吕〕你说大丈夫当建功树名，出将入相，列鼎而食，选声





(Enter Lü Dongbin in laughter)

LÜ DONGBIN:

The mountain is as silent as in ancient times;/ The day is as long as a year.

Have you had a nice sleep, Lu Sheng?

LU SHENG:

Old man, it's fantastic, fantastic! I became the Number-One Scholar in the Tang Dynasty, dug three hundred miles of canal and swept across a thousand miles of border regions for the Tang Emperor!

LÜ DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

What grand feats!

LU SHENG:

You don't know and I dare not tell. With such grand feats, I was to be put to death on the execution ground as a result of the slanders of a vicious minister Yuwen Rong. Thanks to the rescue of my wife and sons, I went on exile to the south of Guangdong, as far as the Ghost Gate Pass in Yazhou.

LÜ DONGBIN:

How lucky you are! How lucky you are! And then?

LU SHENG:

With the help of Minister Xiao and Minister Pei, I was rehabilitated and resumed my position of Prime Minister. I obtained countless mansions and gardens, female singers and dancers. My relatives were all of blue blood while my sons and grandsons were promoted. I was in office for over fifty years and I lived till I was over eighty years old.

LÜ DONGBIN:

You said, "A gentleman must do merits to build a fame, be a high-ranking official or officer, have sumptuous meals, listen to choice music, have a

Handan Dream
PDG

而听，使宗族茂盛而家用肥饶，然后可言得意。如子所遇，岂不然乎？此际寻思，得意何在？

〔生想介〕便是呢，黄粱饭好香也。

〔吕〕子方列鼎而食，稀罕此黄粱饭乎？

【玉莺啼】

你堂餐多饱，
鼻尖头还新厨饭香。

〔生〕黄粱恁般难熟。

〔吕〕这黄粱是水火勾当，
好枕儿边问你那崔氏糟糠。
可还挑黄粱半箸，
与你那儿郎豢养。

〔生想介〕好多时候哩。

〔吕笑介〕终不然水米无交，
早滚熟了山河半饷。
你希迷想，
怎不把来时路玉真重访？



big family and live a luxurious life. Only in this way can he be in a happy mood.” Weren’t you in a happy mood when you went through all this? If you reconsider it now, where is your happy mood?

LU SHENG:

There’s some truth in it. How sweet is the meal of yellow millet!

Lü DONGBIN:

Since you have just “had sumptuous meals”, would you care for a meal of yellow millet?

(To the tune of Yuyingti)

How delicious your court meals are!

The fragrance still remains on the tip of your nose.

LU SHENG:

It’s so difficult to cook the yellow millet!

Lü DONGBIN:

The millet is cooked with fire and water;

You may ask your wife against the pillow

Whether she’d like to get some millet

To feed your sons.

LU SHENG:

(Thinks)

It indeed takes time.

Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

If millet and water do not meet,

The hills and rills are well cooked by now.

Why don’t you hope

To enter and visit the pillow again?



〔生笑介〕老翁，教我把玉真重访，难道来时路还在这枕眼里？

〔再看枕叹介〕咳，枕儿，枕儿，你把我卢生有家难奔，有国难投。别的罢了，则可惜俺那几个官生儿子啊！

〔吕笑介〕你那儿子，难道是你养的？

〔生〕谁养的？

〔吕〕是那店中鸡儿狗儿变的。

〔生〕咳，明明的有妻，清河崔氏，坐堂招夫。

〔吕〕便是崔氏也是你那胯下青驴变的，卢配马为驴。

〔生想介〕这等，一辈儿君王臣宰，从何而来？

〔吕〕都是妄想游魂，参成世界。



LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

Old man, you tell me to visit the pillow again. Is the way by which I went still there?

(Looks at the pillow again)

Well, pillow, pillow, it is because of you that I have a home where I cannot go, I have a country where I cannot stay. Leave everything else aside, but I feel pity for my sons!

Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

Are these sons you begot?

LU SHENG:

Who begot them then?

Lü DONGBIN:

They were transformed from the chickens in the inn.

LU SHENG:

Well, I indeed had a wife, Miss Cui from Qinghe, who married me in her residence.

Lü DONGBIN:

Your wife Miss Cui was transformed from the donkey you ride. It's a hybrid of you and the horse.

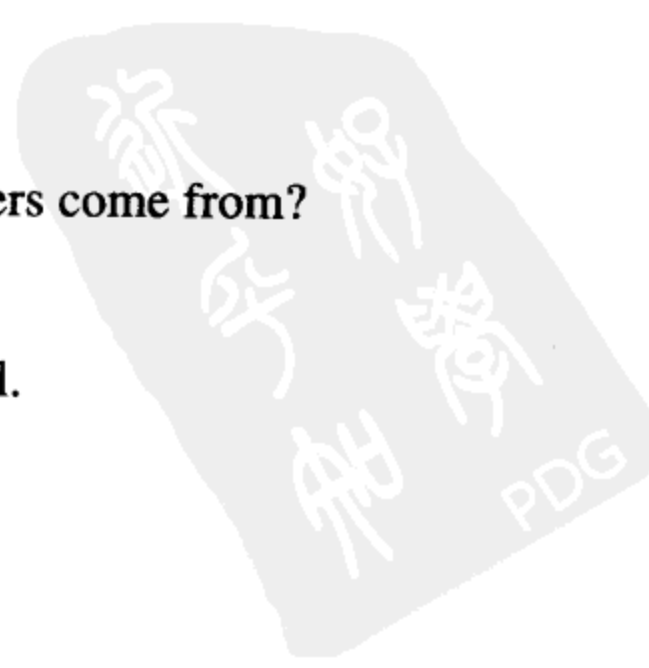
LU SHENG:

(Meditates)

If that is the case, where did the emperor and ministers come from?

Lü DONGBIN:

They were sheer imaginations of your wandering soul.



〔生叹介〕老翁，老翁，卢生如今醒悟了。人生眷属，亦犹是耳。岂有真实相乎？其间宠辱之数，得丧之理，生死之情，尽知之矣。

【簇御林】

风流帐，
难算场。
死生情，
空跳浪，
埋头午梦人胡撞。
刚等得花阴过窗，
鸡声过墙，
说甚么张灯吃饭才停当？

罢了，功名身外事，俺都不去料理他，只拜了师父罢。

〔拜介〕

似黄粱，
浮生稊米，
都付与滚锅汤。

【啄木儿】

〔吕〕成惊恍，
忒遽忙，
敲破了枕函我也无伎俩。
你拜了我，便要跟我云游了。





LU SHENG:

(Sighs)

Old man, old man, now I come to understand. Human life with all its belongings is like this. Is there anything substantial in human life? All the graces and disgraces, gains and losses, life and death—now I understand everything.

(To the tune of Cuyulin)

All the romantic encounters

Hardly exist;

Affections of life and death

Are illusions—

Man is simply daydreaming.

When flower-shadows go by

And cockcrows die out,

What is the use of lighting the lamps and having supper?

Let it be. As fame and fortune are just external things, I'll forget about them. I'll become your disciple and follow your way.

(Bows)

Like the yellow millet,

Worldly life is but a grain,

To be cast away and boiled in pot.

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Zhuomu'er)

As to all the horrors

And haste of life,

I have no way to deal with them

When the pillow is broken.

Now that you've become my disciple, you'll follow me in my wanderings.

LU SHENG:

I'll follow you in your wanderings.



〔生〕便跟师父云游去。

〔吕〕求道之人，草衣木食，露宿风餐，你做功臣的人怎生享用的？

〔生〕师父又取笑了。

〔吕〕还一件，徒弟有参差的所在，师父当头拄杖，就打死了，眉也不许皱一皱。

〔生〕弟子云阳市上都不曾瞧个眉，怎怕的师父打？

〔吕笑介〕你虽然是寐语星星，
怕猛然间旧梦游扬。

〔生〕白日青天，还做甚么梦也？师父。

〔吕〕你果然比黄齏苦辣能供养，
比餐刀痛涩能回向，
也还要请个盟证先生和你议久长。

〔生〕便随师父寻个证盟师去。

【滴溜子】

跟师父，
跟师父，
山悠水长。
那证明的，

Lü DONGBIN:

A follower of Tao lives on grass and wood, stays amid dew and wind.
How can you enjoy these things as a meritorious minister?

LU SHENG:

You're teasing me again.

Lü DONGBIN:

I've something else to remind you of. If you as a disciple commit a mistake, the master will hit you on the head with his stick. Even if you are beaten to death, you should not even make a frown.

LU SHENG:

Since I did not make a frown on the execution ground, how can I dread your beating?

Lü DONGBIN:

Although you're uttering a somniloquy,
I'm afraid your old dream has revived.

LU SHENG:

How can I dream in the broad daylight, Master?

Lü DONGBIN:

Even though you can live on pickled vegetables
And won't change your mind in face of torments,
I have to find a witness to talk with you.

LU SHENG:

I'll follow you and look for a witness.

(To the tune of Diliuzi)

I'll follow my master,
Follow my master
Wandering in hills and rills.
The witness,



证明的，
他何人那方？
不离了邯郸道上，
一匝眼煮黄粱，
锅未响。
六十载光阴，
唱好是忙。

【尾声】

〔生〕俺识破了去求仙日夜忙。

师父，证盟师在哪里？

〔吕〕有个小庵儿唤做蓬莱方丈。

〔生〕这等快行，快行。

〔丑〕黄粱饭熟，可吃了去。

〔生〕罢了，罢了，

待你熟黄粱又把俺那一枕游仙耽误的广。〔下〕

〔丑〕好笑，好笑，一个活神仙度了卢秀才去了。



The witness,
Where is the witness?
On the road to Handan,
To cook a meal of millet,
The pot is not boiling yet,
While sixty years of life in dream
Keeps me busy.

LU SHENG:

(to the tune of Coda)

Awakened, I'll keep busy following Tao.

Where's the witness, Master?

Lü DONGBIN:

In a small place called Penglai Temple.

LU SHENG:

So let's hurry, let's hurry.

Lü DONGBIN:

As the meal of yellow millet is ready now, we'll go after dinner.

LU SHENG:

Forget about it, forget about it!

If I wait for the yellow millet,

My immortal dream will be delayed.

(Exit)

INNKEEPER:

Funny, funny indeed! A living immortal has converted the scholar Lu Sheng
and is gone with him.



生死长安道，
邯郸正午炊。
早知灯是火，
饭熟几多时。



Life and death upon the road to Chang'an
Is the time to cook dinner in Handan.
If he knew that lamp was fire,
The meal would be done before the dream began.



第三十出 合仙

【清江引】

〔钟离上〕汉钟离半世有神仙分，
道貌生来全。

〔曹舅上〕那虽然国舅亲，
富贵做寻常论。

〔合〕世上人，
不学仙真是蠢。

【前腔】

〔铁拐上〕这拐儿是我出海撩云棍，
一步步把蓬莱寸。

〔采和上〕高歌踏踏春，
爨弄的随时诨。

Scene Thirty
Gathering with the Immortals

(Enter Zhongli Quan)

ZHONGLI QUAN:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

Zhongli Quan, an immortal for half of his life,
Is deformed in features.

(Enter Cao Guojiu)

CAO GUOJIU:

A brother-in-law to the Emperor,
I ignore fame and fortune.

ALL:

People are fools
If they do not follow the immortals!

(Enter Tieguai Li)

TIEGUAI LI:

(To the previous tune)

I use my crutch to stir the cloud
And cripple my way to the Penglai Island.

(Enter Lan Caihe)

LAN CAIHE:

I sing aloud in my spring tour
And play my role in a joking manner.





[合前]

【前腔】

[韩湘上] 小韩湘会造逡巡酝，
把顷刻花题韵。

[何姑上] 我箬篱儿漏泄春，
捞不上的闲愁闷。

[合前]

[众仙起手介]

[何笑介] 钟离公，着你高徒洞宾子奉东华道旨，下界度引真仙，还不见到，好闷人也。

[拐打何介] 啐，做仙姑还有的想，我一拐打断你箬篱根。



ALL:

People are fools
If they do not follow the immortals!

(Enter Han Xiangzi)

HAN XIANGZI:

(To the previous tune)

Han Xiangzi can brew immortal wine
And make the buds blossom at once.

(Enter He Xianggu)

HE XIANGU:

My strainer leaks the spring
And catches no worries.

ALL:

People are fools
If they do not follow the immortals!

(The immortals greet each other)

HE XIANGU:

(Smiles)

Venerable Zhongli, you've ordered your disciple Lü Dongbin to implement Emperor Donghua's decree and convert true immortals in the human world. He has not returned yet. How depressed I am!

TIEGUAI LI:

(Strikes at He Xianggu)

Oops, you are an immortal lady giving way to foolish fancies. I'll break your strainer with my crutch.

〔汉笑介〕大家蟠桃花下走跳去。汉钟离到老梳丫髻，曹国舅带醉舞朝衣。李孔目拄着拐打磕睡，何仙姑拈针补箬篱。蓝采和海山充乐探，韩湘子风雪弃前妻。兀那张果老五星轮的稳，算定着吕纯阳三醉岳阳回。

〔众下〕

〔吕引生上〕

【北仙吕·点绛唇】

一片红尘，
百年销尽，
闲营运。
梦醒逡巡，
早过了茶时分。

〔生〕师父，前面一簇高山流水是那里？

〔吕〕此乃蓬莱沧海，大修行之处也。

〔生〕那里有甚么景致？

【混江龙】

〔吕〕这里望前征进，
明写着碧桃花下海仙门。
到时节三光不夜，
那其间四季长春。



ZHONGLI QUAN:

(Smiles)

Let's dance under the peach-blossoms.

Zhongli Quan wears his hair in a girl's bun; Cao Guojiu is drunk and waves his court costume. Tieguai Li dozes off on his crutch; He Xiangmends her strainer with needles. Lan Caihe sings over hills and rills; Han Xiangzi gives up his wife in wind and snow. Zhang Guolao is good at fortune-telling; Lü Dongbin gets drunk thrice on Yueyang Pavilion.

(Exeunt all)

(Enter Lü Dongbin, followed by Lu Sheng)

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Northern Xianlü Dianjiangchun)

The worldly dusts

Vanish in a hundred years,

Slow and steady.

When he awakes from his dream,

The tea time has long passed.

LU SHENG:

Master, what are the high mountains and flowing rivers in front?

Lü DONGBIN:

It's the Penglai Island surrounded by the sea, a place to cultivate your virtue.

LU SHENG:

What kind of scenery is there?

Lü DONGBIN:

(To the tune of Hunjianglong)

When you look forward,

The Sea-Immortal Gate stands under peach-blossoms.

There the light always shines

And spring always reigns.



〔生〕呀，望见大海那蓬莱方丈了。那山上敢也有虎？便是这海子又有鲸鳌。

〔吕笑介〕就里这海涛中，
有三番十五众鳌鱼转眼。
到的那山岛上，
止一斤十六两白虎腾身。

〔生〕海船那里？

〔吕〕你背着师父去。

〔生怕介〕

〔吕〕你合着眼过去。

〔生背介〕一匝眼过了海也。〔望介〕喜的没有飓风。赫赫海子外没个州郡，凄凉人也！

〔吕〕你道是仙人岛有三万丈清凉界全无州郡，
比你那鬼门关八千里烟瘴地远恶州军。





LU SHENG:

Oh, I can see the Penglai Temple over the sea. Are there tigers on the mountains? You know, there are whales and turtles in the sea.

Lü DONGBIN:

(Smiles)

Amid the sea waves,
There are numerous whales and turtles;
Upon the mountain island,
There is only one tiger.

LU SHENG:

Where's the ferry boat?

Lü DONGBIN:

You'll shoulder me across the sea.

(Lu Sheng is frightened)

Lü DONGBIN:

You just cross the sea with your eyes closed.

LU SHENG:

(Carries Lü Dongbin on his shoulders)

The sea is crossed in a flash.

(Looks)

We are lucky that there is no hurricane. There is neither prefecture nor county here. How desolate it is!

Lü DONGBIN:

You say that the immortal's island
Of thirty thousand feet is desolate
With neither prefecture nor county,
But it's much better than the Ghost Gate Pass
Of eight thousand miles of miasma
Where you were on exile.





〔生〕可有翦径的？

〔吕〕翦径的无过是走傍门，
提外事贪天小品。

〔生〕也有跳鬼的？

〔吕〕跳鬼的有得那出阳神，
抛伎子散地全真。

〔生望介〕呀，云端之下，是有人家。怎生穿红穿绿，跣的跛
的，老的小的？是怎的岂有这等一班人物？

〔吕〕都是你的证盟师了。数你听：

有一个汉钟离双丫髻，

苍颜道扮；

一个曹国舅八采眉，

象简朝绅；

一个韩湘子弃举业，

儒门子弟；

一个蓝采和他是打院本，

乐户官身；



LU SHENG:

Are there highwaymen here?

Lü DONGBIN:

The highwaymen without crimes
May enter by the side gate;
If you mention external affairs,
You're simply talking nonsense.

LU SHENG:

Are there ghost-hunters?

Lü DONGBIN:

As to ghost-hunters,
There is the righteous immortal
Who can transform those who go astray.

LU SHENG:

(Looks)

Well, there is a house under the clouds. How is it that there are such people here: in red dress or in green dress, scarred or crippled, old or young? How is it possible that there are people like these?

Lü DONGBIN:

They are all your witnesses. I'll tell you one by one:

Zhongli Quan wears his hair in a girl's bun,
Of pale complexion and in Taoist dress;
Cao Guojiu has slant eyebrows,
Like an official with a court tablet;
Han Xiangzi gives up his positions,
A Confucian disciple;
Lan Caihe plays music,
A musician at court;





一个拄铁拐的李孔目，
带些残疾；

一个荷饭策何仙姑，
挫过了残春。

〔生〕他们日夜在这所在贵干？

〔吕〕他们无日夜演禽星看卦气，
抽添水火。

有时节点残棋斟寿酒，
笑傲乾坤。

〔生〕这都是生成的神仙，怕修行的不能勾？

〔吕〕虽则是受生门，
绿眼睛红脑子，
仙风道骨。

也恰向修行路，
按尾闾通夹脊，
换髓移筋。

〔生〕弟子小可能到此？

〔吕〕你可也有福力开了头崔氏宅夫荣妻贵，
无业障撮了脚唐家地荫子遗孙。



Tieguai Li carries a crutch,
Somewhat crippled;
He Xiang uses a rice-strainer,
Past the prime of her life.

LU SHENG:

What are they doing here day and night?

Lü DONGBIN:

Day and night they watch the horoscope
And tell fortunes,
Sitting erect for self-cultivation.
Sometimes they play chess and drink wine,
Facing the universe in smiles.

LU SHENG:

They are born immortals. Can men attain this by cultivation?

Lü DONGBIN:

Although they were born human,
They have green eyes and red brains,
With an air of immortals.
They have all undergone cultivations,
Transplanting their backbones and spines,
Changing their pith and tendons.

LU SHENG:

Can I do so as well?

Lü DONGBIN:

You were fortunate enough
To marry Miss Cui and live a happy life
And to prosper on the land of Tang,
Giving birth to sons and grandsons.



可是你三转身单注着邯郸道禄尽衣绝，
一眨眼猛守的清河店米沸汤浑。

〔生笑介〕弟子一生耽阁了个情字。

〔吕〕早则是火传薪半灶的烧残情楫桡，
却怎生风鼓鞦一锅儿吹醒睡馄饨？
也因你有半仙之分能消受，
遇着我大道其间细讲论。

〔望介〕

〔生〕兀那来的老者眉毛多长。

〔吕〕眼睁睁着张果老，
把眉毛褪。
虽不是开山作祖，
仙分里为尊。

【清江引】

〔果老上〕看蟠花两度唐尧运，
甲子何劳问。
蓬山好看春，
只要有神仙分。





Yet, when you turn round the road to Handan,
Your fortune ends and your costume is gone,
The millet is boiling and water swirling
In the inn in Qinghe.

LU SHENG:

(Smiles)

I have been hindered by affection all my life.

Lü DONGBIN:

Like the burnt wood in the stove,
Your affection is nearing its end;
How is it that the bellows
Awaken the sleeping dumplings in the pot?
As you are fated to be a half immortal,
You meet me to instruct you on the great Tao.

LU SHENG:

(Looks)

How can the coming old man have such long eyebrows?

Lü DONGBIN:

I've seen Zhang Guolao
With longer eyebrows.
Although he is not the founder of Taoism,
He ranks high among the immortals.

(Enter Zhang Guolao)

ZHANG GUOLAO:

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

The peach-blossoms have bloomed twice,
But I don't have to ask about the year.
The Penglai Mountain looks beautiful in spring,
If only you are an immortal.





[合] 世上人，
不学仙真是蠢。

[吕稽首叫生后，跪迎介]

[吕] 张仙翁，吕岩稽首。

[张] 后面跪的何人？

[生] 前唐朝状元丞相赵国公卢生叩参。

[张笑介] 请起，老国公，老丞相，这等寒酸了。

[生] 做梦哩。

[张笑介] 可是梦哩？也亏你奈烦了五十年人我是非。诧异，
诧异。

[生] 是也。

[张] 卢生前来。

[生跪介]

[张] 你虽然到了荒山，看你痴情未尽，我请众仙出来提醒你一番，你一桩桩忏悔者。





ALL:

People are fools
If they do not follow the immortals!

Lü DONGBIN:

(Nods to Lu Sheng and greets Zhang Guolao, with Lu Sheng kneeling behind him)

Immortal Zhang, Lü Dongbin bows to greet you.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Who is kneeling behind you?

LU SHENG:

Lu Sheng, the former Tang Number-One Scholar, Prime Minister, Duke of Zhao, kowtows to you.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Stand up, please. Old Duke, old Prime Minister, you look shabby now.

LU SHENG:

I was dreaming.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Were you really dreaming? I'm surprised that you were patient enough to endure fifty years of man-to-man disputes. Surprising, surprising!

LU SHENG:

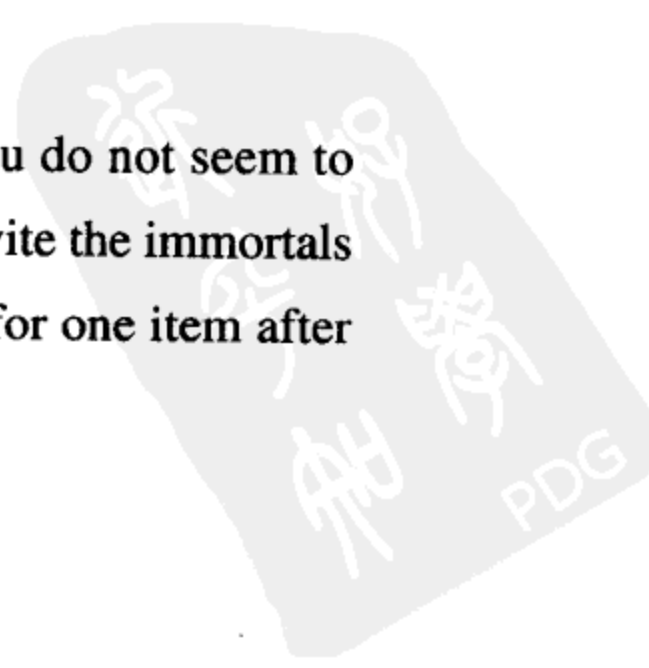
That's true.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Come forward, Lu Sheng.

(Lu Sheng kowtows)

Although you've reached the desolate mountains, you do not seem to have been severed from your foolish affections. I'll invite the immortals to remind you of your past experience. You'll repent for one item after another.





〔生应介〕

〔众仙渔鼓筒子唱上介〕上鹊桥，下鹊桥。天应星，地应潮。响
崩崩渔鼓闹云樵，酒暖金花探着药苗。青童笑来玉女娇，火候伤丹细
细的调。转河关撒手正逍遥，莫把海山春耽误了。

〔见介〕张翁稽首了。

〔何见介〕洞宾先生引的这痴答汉来了。

〔吕〕仙姑，恰好蟠桃宴时节哩。

〔生〕师父，只说你是回道人，原来便是吕洞宾活神仙，我拜的
着也。

〔张〕众仙真，可将他梦中之境，逐位点醒他，证盟一番，方好
收度。

〔众〕仙翁主见极明，痴人跪下。

〔六仙依次责问〕

〔生跪介〕





(Lu Sheng agrees)

(Enter the immortals, singing with drums and clappers)

IMMORTALS:

*Up the magpie bridge,/ Down the magpie bridge,/ We respond to
the stars in the sky/ And respond to the tides on earth./ We beat the
drums to tell tales/ And make herb medicine with wine./ The boys
smile and the girls are coy;/ They make the herb medicine with care./
They enjoy themselves in the open,/ Not to miss the thriving spring
scene.*

(Greet Zhang Guolao)

We bow to greet you, Zhang Guolao.

HE XIANGU:

(Greets Zhang Guolao)

The obsessed man Lü Dongbin has been converted is here.

LÜ DONGBIN:

It's just the time for the Peach Banquet, He Xiang.

LU SHENG:

Master, you have been called a converting Taoist priest, but in fact you
are the living immortal Lü Dongbin. I've found the right master.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

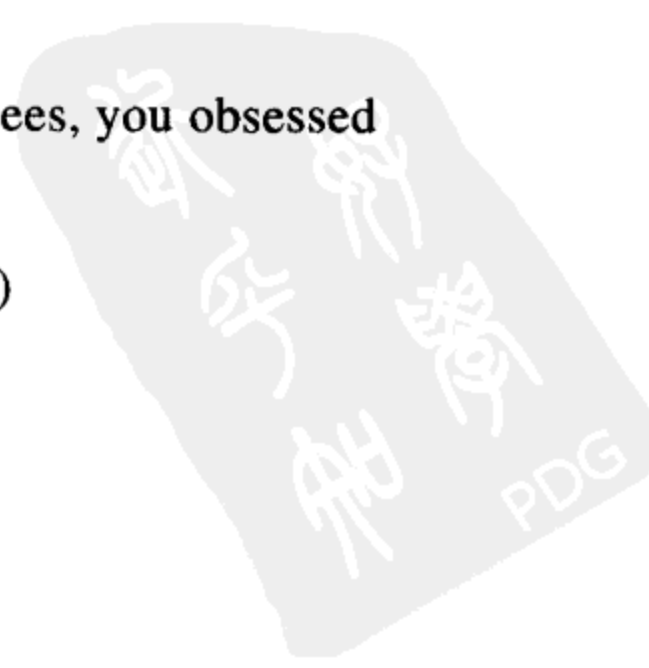
Immortals, please explain the stories in his dream one by one and serve as
the witness so that I can convert him.

IMMORTALS:

Zhang Guolao gives a good suggestion. On your knees, you obsessed
man.

(The six immortals raise questions one by one)

(Lu Sheng falls on his knees)



【浪淘沙】

〔汉〕甚么大姻亲？
太岁花神，
粉骷髅门户一时新。
那崔氏的人儿何处也？
你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕

〔合〕我是个痴人。

【前腔】

〔曹〕甚么大关津？
使着钱神，
插宫花御酒笑生春。
夺取的状元何处也？
你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕

〔合前〕

【前腔】

〔李〕甚么大功臣？
掘断河津，
为开疆展土害了人民。
勒石的功名何处也？
你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕





ZHONGLI QUAN:

(To the tune of Langtaosha)

What is your grand marriage?

The flower god

Renovated the house of a female skeleton.

Where is your Miss Cui?

You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)

ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

CAO GUOJIU:

(To the previous tune)

What is your grand learning?

You spent money

To buy your distinction in the palace.

Where is the Number-One Scholar?

You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)

ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

TIEGUAI LI:

(To the previous tune)

What is your grand meritorious minister?

You dug the canal and broadened the territories

But you did harm to the people.

Where is the fame and name inscribed on the rock?

You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)



〔合前〕

【前腔】

〔蓝〕甚么大冤亲？
窜贬在烟尘，
云阳市斩首泼鲜新。
受过的凄惶何处也？
你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕

〔合前〕

【前腔】

〔韩〕甚么大阶勋？
宾客填门，
猛金钗十二醉楼春。
受用过家园何处也？
你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕

〔合前〕

【前腔】

〔何〕甚么大恩亲？
缠到八旬，
还乞恩忍死护儿孙。
闹喳喳孝堂何处也？





ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

LAN CAIHE:

(To the previous tune)

What is your grand enemy?

You went on exile in a region of miasma

And might be beheaded on the execution ground.

Where are your sufferings?

You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)

ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

HAN XIANGZI:

(To the previous tune)

What is your grand rank of office?

Guests flocked into your residence;

Charming girls made you drunk in the pavilion.

Where is the residence you stayed?

You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)

ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

HE XIANGU:

(To the previous tune)

What are your grand kith and kin?

You lived to the age of eighty,

Still exerting yourself to protect your heirs.

Where is the noisy mourning hall?



你个痴人。

〔生叩头答介〕

〔合前〕

〔张〕且住，卢生被众仙真数落，这一会他敢醒也？

〔生〕弟子老实醒也。

〔张〕卢生听吾法旨：你本是邯郸道儒生未遇，为功名想得成痴。幸直着小二店干坤逆旅，过去了八十载人我是非。挣醒来端人一梦，道人间饭熟多时。谁信道赵州桥半夜水涨，刚打到丞相府白日鬼迷。你和那崔氏女抛残午梦，亏了洞宾子撺弄天机。黄粱饭难消一粒，葫芦药到用的刀圭。垂目睡加工水汞，自心息把东金炼齐。心生性吾心自悟，一二三主人拄持。饥时节和你安垆作灶，醒了后又怕你苦眼铺眉。叫铁拐子把思凡枕葫芦提柱碎，请仙姑女把那残花帚橛柄子传题，直扫得无花无地非为罕，这期间忘帚忘箕不是痴。那时节骑



You obsessed man!

(Lu Sheng kowtows and responds)

ALL:

I am an obsessed man.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Wait, Lu Sheng has been reprimanded by the immortals. Has he been awakened and come to understand?

LU SHENG:

Yes, indeed I have.

ZHANG GUOLAO:

Lu Sheng, now listen to my Taoist decree: You were an unsuccessful Confucian scholar on the road to Handan, obsessed with fame and name. You were lucky to stop at the inn where you experienced eighty years of worldly intrigues. When you woke up from your dream, the meal of millet was ready in the human world. Who knows that tides rose near the Zhaozhou Bridge at midnight, but only reached the residence of a prime minister who was daydreaming. You and Miss Cui were obsessed in the daydream when Lü Dongbin revealed the heavenly secret to you. He did not use a single grain of yellow millet, but applied the medicine in his gourd at the right time. He processed mercury with his eyes closed and tempered gold with his very heart. When your heart conforms to nature, you will become aware by yourself and several witnesses will be on your side. You will build a hut and a stove when you are hungry, but we are afraid that you will be perplexed again when you wake up. Tiegai Li, just break the enticing pillow to pieces; He Xiang, please hand over to Lu Sheng the broom to sweep the petals. He will sweep until the petals are all gone, the earth is gone and even the broom itself is gone and then he will no longer be obsessed. By that time, you will be able to pay respects

鸾鹤朝元证圣，才是你跨驴驹入梦便宜。

〔吕〕卢生领了帚，拜谢仙翁。

〔生领帚拜介〕

【沉醉东风】

再不想烟花故人，

再不想金玉拖身。

〔吕〕你三生配马驴，

一世行官运，

碑记上到头难认。

〔汉、曹〕富贵场中走一尘，

只落得高人笑哂。

【前腔】

〔生〕云阳市餐刀吓人，

鬼门关挣脱了这残生。

〔吕〕这等惊惶你还未醒，

苦恋着三台印，

那其间多少冤亲？

〔拐、蓝〕日未殒西早欠申，





to the Taoist Emperor by riding on a crane and reap the genuine fruit of your entering a dream by riding on a donkey.

Lü DONGBIN:

Lu Sheng, accept the broom and thank the immortal!

LU SHENG:

(Accepts the broom and bows)

*(To the tune of **Chenzuidongfeng**)*

I will no longer be my worldly self

And be burdened by wealth and sex.

Lü DONGBIN:

For three lives,

You're a hybrid with the horse or donkey;

For one life,

You rose high in office,

But the records are vague on the tablet.

ZHONGLI QUAN, CAO GUOJIU:

You went through the vanity fair

And at last became a laughing-stock.

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

I was scared on the execution ground

And had a narrow escape at the Ghost Gate Pass.

Lü DONGBIN:

You still linger in your dream

And stick to your official stamp;

How many friends and foes did you meet?

TIEGUAI LI, LAN CAIHE:

As the sun has not set in the west yet,



有甚么商量要紧？

【前腔】

〔生〕做神仙半是齐天福人，
海山深躲脱了闲身。

〔吕〕你掀开肉吊窗，
蘸破花营运，
卖花声唤醒迷魂。

〔韩、何〕眼见桃花又一春，
人世上行眠立盹。

〔生扫花介〕

【前腔】

〔生〕除了籍看菜黍邯郸县人，
着了役扫桃花阆苑童身。

老师父，你弟子痴愚，还怕今日遇仙也是梦哩。

虽然妄早醒，
还怕真难认。

〔众〕你怎生只弄精魂？
便做的痴人说梦两难分，
毕竟是游仙梦稳。





What are you going to consult?

LU SHENG:

(To the previous tune)

To be an immortal is to be blessed;
I've escaped into the mountains in the sea.

Lü DONGBIN:

When you open the window of flesh
And know the fate of flowers,
The flower-girls will surely awaken you.

HAN XIANGZI, HE XIANGU:

The peach-blossoms bloom another spring
While the human world is still asleep.

LU SHENG:

(Sweeps the petals)

(To the previous tune)

As an outsider,

I'm looking at the Handan people with their millet;

As my duty,

I sweep petals on the land of immortals.

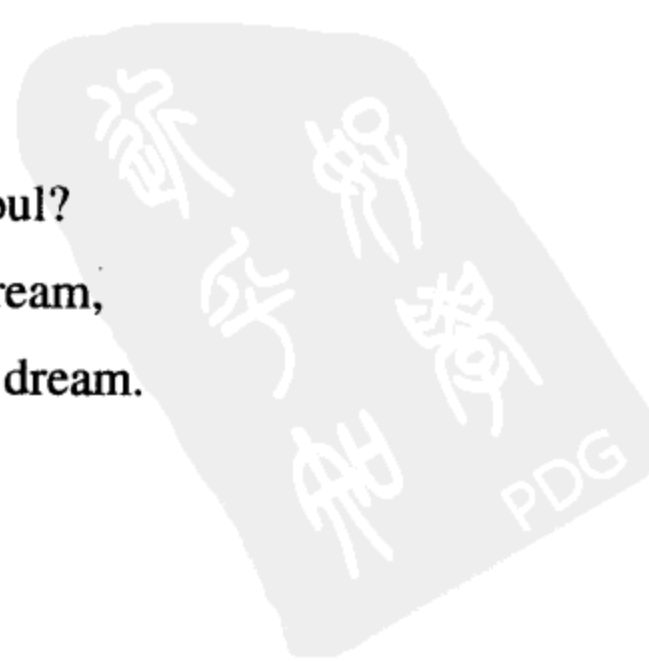
Old master, I was so obsessed that I would still be dreaming if I had not met you.

Although I'm awakened from illusions,

I'm afraid it's hard to know the truth.

IMMORTALS:

Why won't you tear yourself away from your soul?
Even if you're too obsessed to part from your dream,
You are now comfortably dreaming an immortal dream.



〔张〕朝东华帝君去。

〔众鼓板行介〕

【清江引】

尽荣华扫尽前生分，
枉把痴人困。
蟠桃瘦作薪，
海水干成晕。
那时节一翻身，
敢黄粱锅待滚？

【北尾】

度却卢生这一人，
把人情世故都高谈尽，
则要你世上人梦回时心自忖。

莫醉笙歌掩画堂，
暮年初信梦中长。
如今暗与心相约，
静对高斋一炷香。





ZHANG GUOLAO:

Let's pay tribute to the Donghua Emperor.

ALL:

(Walk on while beating drums and sounding clappers)

(To the tune of Qingjiangyin)

To sweep away the fame and fortune of previous life,

Will perplex an obsessed man.

The peach will be as dry as faggot

And the sea will be as arid as a halo.

When you toss and turn by then,

Will you be waiting for the meal of yellow millet?

(To the tune of Northern Coda)

To covert the single person of Lu Sheng,

We've exhausted the topic of worldly affairs,

So that people will think it over

When they wake from their dream.

Do not be intoxicated in worldly strife,

Only to awake in the last days of your life.

Make a contract with your heart right now,

Burn incense in your room and make a bow.



主要参考文献

- 曹其敏. 戏剧美学. 北京: 东方出版社, 1991
- 陈多等. 中国历代剧论选注. 长沙: 湖南文艺出版社, 1987
- 陈竹. 中国古代剧作学史. 武汉: 武汉出版社, 1999
- 方伟华. 至尊岳阳楼. 海口: 海南出版社, 1997
- 顾春芳. 戏剧交响. 上海: 复旦大学出版社, 1998
- 郭英德. 明清传奇史. 南京: 江苏古籍出版社, 1999
- 何福林. 岳阳楼史话. 广州: 广州出版社, 2000
- 华玮等主编. 明清戏曲国际研讨会论文集. 台北: 中央研究院中国文哲研究所, 1998
- 黄鸣奋. 英语世界中国古典文学之传播. 上海: 学林出版社, 1997
- 纪勤. 汤显祖传. 北京: 国际文化出版公司, 2001
- 蒋伯潜. 小说与戏剧. 上海: 上海书店出版社, 1997
- 李昌集. 中国古代曲学史. 上海: 华东师范大学出版社, 1997
- 李渔. 闲情偶记. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 2000
- 梁辰等选注. 黄粱梦诗词精选. 北京: 中国文联出版社, 1999
- 廖奔等. 中国戏曲发展史. 太原: 山西教育出版社, 2000
- 刘句等. 旧唐书. 长春: 吉林人民出版社, 1995
- 刘彦君. 图说中国戏曲史. 杭州: 浙江教育出版社, 2001
- 吕薇芬选编. 名家解读元曲. 济南: 山东人民出版社, 1999
- 罗竹风. 汉语大辞典. 上海: 汉语大辞典出版社, 1994
- 麻文琦. 中国戏曲史. 北京: 文化艺术出版社, 1998
- 马祖毅等. 汉籍外译史. 武汉: 湖北教育出版社, 1997
- 欧阳修等. 新唐书. 长春: 吉林人民出版社, 1995
- 戚世隽. 明代杂剧研究. 广州: 广东高等教育出版社, 2001
- 钱南扬校点. 汤显祖集. 北京: 中华书局, 1962
- 石衣编注. 玉茗堂尺牍. 上海: 上海远东出版社, 1996

- 孙崇涛. 南戏论丛. 北京: 中华书局, 2001
- 汤显祖. 邯郸记. 北京: 中华书局, 1960
- 王度等. 唐宋传奇. 北京: 华夏出版社, 1997
- 王国维. 宋元戏曲史. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 1998
- 王季思等. 元杂剧选注. 北京: 北京出版社, 1980
- 王季思主编. 全元戏曲. 北京: 人民文学出版社, 1990
- 王起. 中国戏曲选(中集). 北京: 人民文学出版社, 1985
- 王卓校释. 曲品. 哈尔滨: 北方文艺出版社, 2000
- 隗芾. 中国喜剧史. 汕头: 汕头大学出版社, 1998
- 吴敢等. 古代戏曲论坛. 南京: 南京出版社, 2001
- 吴梅. 顾曲尘谈. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 2000
- 夏康达等. 二十世纪国外中国文学研究. 天津: 天津人民出版社, 2000
- 夏写时. 中国戏剧批评的产生和发展. 北京: 中国戏剧出版社, 1982
- 徐城北. 京剧与中国文化. 北京: 人民出版社, 1999
- 徐扶明. 牡丹亭研究资料考释. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 1987
- 徐扶明等. 五大名剧评述. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 1997
- 徐朔方. 汤显祖评传. 南京: 南京大学出版社, 1993
- 徐朔方. 徐朔方说戏曲. 上海: 上海古籍出版社, 2000
- 徐朔方笺校. 汤显祖全集. 北京: 北京古籍出版社, 1999
- 徐振贵. 中国古代戏剧统论. 济南: 山东教育出版社, 1997
- 许金榜. 中国戏曲文学史. 北京: 中国文学出版社, 1994
- 杨建文. 戏剧概要. 武汉: 华中师范大学出版社, 1999
- 杨建文. 中国古典悲剧史. 武汉: 武汉出版社, 1994
- 杨振良. 牡丹亭研究. 台北: 台湾学生书局, 1992
- 叶长海. 曲学与戏剧学. 上海: 学林出版社, 1999
- 余从等. 中国戏曲史略. 北京: 人民音乐出版社, 1993
- 余秋雨. 戏剧理论史稿. 上海: 上海文艺出版社, 1983
- 臧晋叔. 元曲选. 北京: 中华书局, 1960
- 张庚. 中国戏曲通史. 北京: 中国戏剧出版社, 1992
- 张兴发. 道教神仙信仰. 北京: 中国社会科学出版社, 2001
- 章培恒. 中国文学史. 上海: 复旦大学出版社, 1996
- 赵德兴等. 中国历代官称辞典. 北京: 团结出版社, 1999

- 赵景琛等. 明清传奇选. 北京: 中国青年出版社, 1957
- 赵山林. 中国古典戏剧论稿. 合肥: 安徽文艺出版社, 1998
- 赵山林. 中国戏剧学通论. 合肥: 安徽教育出版社, 1995
- 郑传寅. 中国吸取文化概论. 武汉: 武汉大学出版社, 1993
- 郑振铎. 古本戏曲丛刊. 北京: 中华书局, 1954
- 周传家. 中国古代戏曲. 北京: 商务印书馆, 1996
- 周明初. 晚明士人心态及文学个案. 北京: 东方出版社, 1997
- 周维白. 曲谱研究. 南京: 江苏古籍出版社, 1999
- 周贻白. 中国戏剧史讲座. 北京: 中国戏剧出版社, 1958
- 周育德. 汤显祖论稿. 北京: 文化艺术出版社, 1991
- 周育德. 中国戏曲文化. 北京: 中国友谊出版公司, 1995
- 朱继萍等. 汤显祖研究资料目录索引. 南昌: 江西省艺术研究所, 2000
- 邹元江. 汤显祖的情与梦. 南京: 南京出版社, 1998
- 邹自振. 汤显祖综论. 成都: 巴蜀书社, 2001



译者简介

汪榕培，英语教授，博士生导师。1942年6月28日出生于上海，1964年本科毕业于上海外国语学院，1967年研究生毕业于复旦大学。他在英语教育、英语词汇学研究、中国古籍的研究和英译方面均有突出贡献。他的英译作品主要有《老子》、《庄子》、《易经》、《诗经》、《汉魏六朝诗300首》、《陶渊明诗歌》、《牡丹亭》、《邯郸记》等。

About the Translator

Wang Rongpei, professor of English and PhD supervisor, was born in Shanghai on June 28, 1942. He received his BA from Shanghai University of Foreign Languages in 1964 and MA from Fudan University in 1967. He has made great achievements in English education, English lexicology, and the research and translation of Chinese classics. His major translations include *Laozi*, *Zhuangzi*, *The Book of Change*, *The Book of Poetry*, *300 Early Chinese Poems*, *The Complete Poems of Tao Yuanming*, *The Peony Pavilion* and *The Handan Dream*.

